

**A CRITICAL ANALYSIS OF COMMUNITY-DRIVEN  
DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS AIMED AT POVERTY  
ALLEVIATION IN EVATON WEST**

by

**TEMEKI DANIEL MOKOENA**

Submitted in accordance with the requirements for the  
degree of  
**PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR**  
in Economics at the  
**NORTH-WEST UNIVERSITY**

Promoter: Prof. T.J.C. Slabbert

Vanderbijlpark

2004

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This thesis is dedicated to the people of Evaton West, the Evaton West Community Development Forum, CoLtAPIA<sup>®</sup>, the Eindhoven municipality and SOLID (a Canadian NGO). I also wish to acknowledge the willingness of all these people and bodies to share information and data and their assistance throughout.

I wish to thank my promoter, Professor TJC Slabbert, for his constant guidance and encouragement, without whom this work would not have reached fruition. Thanks to Dr Jerry Berlin (from the DBSA) for editorial (including language editing) and other advice on the thesis. I also wish to acknowledge the support of family and friends. The assistance of Mrs Manini Kganakga and Ms Nicola McAntagart with the typing of this thesis is also acknowledged.

Finally, I thank the Vaal University of Technology for providing funding for this research. Above all, I thank God for strength to endure.



TD Mokoena  
2004

## DECLARATION

I declare that

A CRITICAL ANALYSIS OF COMMUNITY-DRIVEN DEVELOPMENT  
PROJECTS AIMED AT POVERTY ALLEVIATION IN EVATON WEST

is my own work, that all the sources used or quoted have been duly  
acknowledged by means of complete references, and that I have not previously  
submitted the thesis for a degree at another university.



Temeki Daniel Mokoena

# **A CRITICAL ANALYSIS OF COMMUNITY-DRIVEN DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS AIMED AT POVERTY ALLEVIATION IN EVATON WEST**

by

Temeki Daniel Mokoena

Degree: Philosophiae Doctor (PhD)

Department: Economics

Promoter: Professor T.J.C. Slabbert

## **SUMMARY**

This thesis studies the effects of specific community-driven development programmes run in Evaton West over the past three years (2000/1 to 2003/4) on poverty in the area. These programmes were targeted at poverty reduction and community development in Evaton West, driven by the Eindhoven municipality and CoLtAPiA®.

The relationship between the Eindhoven Municipality and the Emfuleni Municipality started as a result of the twinning of Tilburg and Eindhoven cities in the Netherlands with the erstwhile Lekoa/Vaal Local Metropolitan Council. Evaton West was chosen as a pilot site for Eindhoven to run practical IDP programmes at, as an example of what can be achieved from properly run community-based programmes. CoLtAPiA® was introduced to Evaton West by the Vaal University of Technology's Community Service department. Its programmes were aimed at poverty alleviation through small-scale business initiatives coupled with leadership training in the area.

The approach in the thesis is to define poverty, measure it and determine the profile of the poor. This is done firstly employing household-level indicators and secondly employing community-level indicators. At household level, some of the following tools are used: the poverty line (HSL), headcount index, the poverty gap, dependency ratio, the Lorenz curve and the Gini coefficient. Unemployment



is also used to determine poverty levels. At community level, the thesis employs tools such as community characteristics, community assets, principal services, education, health and environmental issues. The thesis ends with specific recommendations. In particular, formation of co-operatives and the introduction of the basic income grant (BIG) are proposed.

The thesis shows that compared to Bophelong, which is approximately similar to Evaton West in terms of age and composition of residents (especially based on age analysis), Evaton West is worse-off judging by poverty and welfare at household level. It proposes that one of the problems is Evaton West's geographical displacement.

The thesis also shows that compared to three years ago, Evaton West is marginally better-off judging from the community indicators applied. It ascribed such improvement to the application of the above-stated community-driven development projects in Evaton West.

Finally, the thesis suggests that one of the major solutions in dealing with poverty is to consider small-scale, home-based industries that allow for easy entry. Such projects can only succeed if they are approached in an integrated manner in which local authorities are fully involved. Labour absorption capacity of large industries is declining. This forces policy-making to be redirected to alternative sources of employment. The thesis contributes ways in which community-driven development programmes may be assessed at household and community levels.

### **Key terms**

Poverty, Community-Driven Development (CDD), Evaton West, Bophelong, unemployment, poverty measurement, poverty definition, headcount index, poverty gap, profiles of the poor, Lorenz curve, Gini coefficient, poverty indices, Eindhoven Municipality, CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup> (Centres of Learning to Alleviate Poverty in Africa), SOLID (Saltspring Organization for Life Improvement and Development).



**'N KRITIESE ANALISE VAN 'N GEMEENSKAPSGEDREWE  
ONTWIKKELINGSPROGRAM WAT OP ARMOEDEVERLIGTING IN EVATON-  
WES GEMIK IS**

deur

Temeki Daniel Mokoena

Graad: Philosophiae Doctor (PhD)  
Departement: Ekonomie  
Studieleier: Professor T.J.C. Slabbert

**OPSOMMING**

Hierdie tesis bestudeer die effek van spesifieke gemeenskapsgedrewe ontwikkelingsprogramme wat gedurende die afgelope drie jaar (2000/1 tot 2003/4) op armoede in die Evaton-Wes gebied gerig is. Die ontwikkelingsprogramme is deur die Eindhoven Munisipaliteit en CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup> bestuur.

Die verhouding tussen die Eindhoven en Emfuleni Munisipaliteite het hul ontstaan te danke aan die samevoeging van die stede Tilburg en Eindhoven met die eertydse Lekoa/Vaal Plaaslike Metropolitaanse Raad. Evaton-Wes was aangewys as 'n proefferrein vir Eindhoven wat praktiese IDP programme wou loods. Hierdie programme moes as voorbeeld dien vir ander gebiede in die Vaaldriehoek ten opsigte van dit wat bereik kan word indien ontwikkelingsprogramme effektief bestuur word. Coltapia is deur die Vaal Universiteit van Tegnologie se Departement Gemeenskapsdiens aan Evaton-Wes voorgestel. Die programme wat geloods sou word was op armoedeverligting gemik. Dit geskied deur middel van kleinskaalse inisiatiewe wat met leiersopleiding in die area gekoppel is.

Die benadering wat in hierdie studie gevolg is, soek eers na 'n definisie en 'n meting van armoede waarvolgens 'n armoedeprofiel gevorm word. Laasgenoemde is gedoen deur die gebruik van huishoudelikevlak indikators en die gebruik van gemeenskapsvlak indikators. Op huishoudelike vlak is sommige van die volgende instrumente gebruik: die armoede lyn (HSL), "headcount"

indeks, die armoede gaping, afhanklikheidsratio, die Lorenz kurwe en die Gini koëffisiënt. Werkloosheid word ook gebruik om armoedevlakke vas te stel. Op gemeenskapsvlak is die volgende instrumente gebruik: gemeenskapskaraktertrekke, gemeenskapsbates, die vernaamste dienste, opvoeding, gesondheid en omgewingsake. Die studie sluit met spesifieke aanbevelings af. In besonder word die samestelling van koöperatiewes en die bekendstelling van die basiese inkomste voorsiening ("grant") voorgestel.

Die studie dui daarop dat, in vergelyking met Bophelong, wat omtrent dieselfde as Evaton-Wes is in terme van ouderdom en samestelling van inwoners (spesifiek ouderdomsanalise), Evaton-Wes in werklikheid slegter daaraan toe is ten opsigte van armoede en welvaart op huishoudelike vlak. Die studie stel voor dat een van die probleme Evaton-Wes se geografiese verskuiwing is.

Die studie dui ook daarop dat in vergelyking met drie jaar gelede, Evaton-Wes marginaal beter daaraan toe is wat betref die gemeenskapsindikatore wat toegepas is. Die studie skryf hierdie verbetering aan die aanwending van bogenoemde gemeenskapsgedrewe ontwikkelingsprojekte in Evaton-Wes toe.

Ten slotte stel die studie voor dat een van die hoofoplossings vir armoede die oorweging van kleinskaalse, tuisbasis industrieë is wat maklike toegang tot gevolg het. Hierdie projekte kan slegs suksesvol wees as hulle in 'n geïntegreerde manier benader word waar plaaslike owerhede ten volle betrokke is. Arbeidsabsorpsie kapasiteit van groot industrieë toon 'n afname. Dit dwing beleidmaking om alternatiewe bronne van werksverskaffing te benut.

### **Sleutelsterme**

Armoede, Gemeenskapsgedrewe Ontwikkeling (GGO), Evaton-Wes, Bophelong, werkloosheid, armoede maatstawwe, armoede definisie, 'headcount' indeks, armoedegaping, profiel van die arme, Lorenz kurwe, Gini koëffisiënt, armoede indekse, Eindhoven Munisipaliteit, Coltapia, SOLID (Saltspring Organization for Life Improvement and Development)

**A CRITICAL ANALYSIS OF COMMUNITY-DRIVEN DEVELOPMENT  
PROJECTS AIMED AT POVERTY ALLEVIATION IN EVATON WEST**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b><u>CONTENTS</u></b>	<b><u>PAGE #</u></b>
Acknowledgements	i
Declaration	ii
Summary	iii
Opsomming	v
Table of contents	vii
List of Abbreviations	xiii
List of diagrams, figures and maps	xvi
List of tables	xxi
<b>Chapter 1 - The problem and its setting</b>	
1.1 Introduction	1
1.2 Research problem	2
1.3 Purpose and objective of the study	3
1.4 Motivation for the study	4
1.5 Hypothesis	4
1.6 Research methodology	5
1.7 Outline of the study	6
1.8 Explanation of terms	8
1.9 Summary	12

## **Chapter 2 - Definitions and explanations of underlying concepts (poverty, inequality, community-driven development and unemployment)**

2.1	Introduction	13
2.2	The rationale for poverty alleviation	14
2.2.1	Definition of poverty	14
2.2.2	Subsistence, inequality or externality	16
2.2.3	Social exclusion	18
2.2.4	Human Scale Development	20
2.2.5	Objective and subjective approaches	22
2.2.6	Urban poverty/Rural poverty	22
2.2.7	Vulnerability	23
2.2.8	Poverty issues – a recap	26
2.3	Measurements of poverty and inequality	27
2.3.1	Measuring poverty	28
2.3.1.1	Poverty lines	28
2.3.1.2	Minimum income question (MIQ)	31
2.3.1.3	Poverty indices	33
2.3.1.4	The headcount index	34
2.3.1.5	The poverty gap and the squared poverty gap indices	35
2.3.1.6	Examples of other poverty indices	36
2.3.1.6.1	Sen's index	36
2.3.1.6.2	Foster, Greer and Thorbecke (FGT) (1984) poverty index	37
2.3.1.6.3	Costa's index of deprivation	38
2.3.1.6.4	Sen-Shorrocks-Thon (SST) index	39
2.3.1.6.5	Watts index	39
2.3.1.6.6	Atkinson class of indices	39
2.3.2	Measures of inequality	40
2.3.2.1	The Lorenz curve and the Gini coefficient	41
2.3.2.2	Other generalized entropy measures	42
2.3.2.3	Stochastic dominance	44

2.3.2.3.1	First order stochastic dominance (FSD)	45
2.3.2.3.2	Second order stochastic dominance	46
2.3.3	Poverty profiles	46
2.3.3.1	Demographic characteristics	47
2.3.3.2	Economic characteristics	48
2.3.3.4	Social characteristics	49
2.3.3.5	Access to services	50
2.3.4	Poverty in Africa	51
2.3.5	Poverty and inequality in South Africa	56
2.4	Community-driven development	59
2.4.1	Concept of Community Driven Development	60
2.4.2	Problems arising from Community Driven Development	64
2.4.3	Process of CDD	65
2.5	Employment and unemployment	67
2.6	Summary	68

### **Chapter 3 - Background of Evaton West and the community development initiatives in the area**

3.1	Introduction	70
3.2	Background to Evaton West	71
3.2.1	Location of Evaton West	71
3.2.2	Profile of Evaton West from Census 2001 data	77
3.3	Community-driven development initiatives	88
3.3.1	CoLtAPiA®	89
3.3.1.1	Project outline	89
3.3.1.1.1	Poverty alleviation training	90
3.3.1.1.2	Leadership development within the context of poverty alleviation	91
3.3.1.2	The process of community development as outlined by CoLtAPiA®	91
3.3.1.3	Focus areas of the project	92

3.3.1.3.1	The roles of the various partners	93
3.3.1.4	Evaluation of the project by the focus group	93
3.3.2	Eindhoven Municipality	94
3.3.2.1	Evaluation of the project by the focus group	96
3.4	Summary	97

#### **Chapter 4 - Analysis of household indicators in Evaton West compared to Bophelong**

4.1	Introduction	99
4.2	Demographic and employment profiling	100
4.2.1	Demographic profile	100
4.2.2	Labour force	103
4.2.3	The employed and the unemployed	105
4.3	Poverty and inequality	109
4.3.1	Inequality	113
4.3.2	Profile of the poor	114
4.3.2.1	Age analysis	114
4.3.2.2	Education levels	115
4.3.2.3	Employed poor	116
4.3.2.4	Unemployed poor	118
4.3.2.4.1	Age	119
4.4	Income and expenditure	121
4.5	Environmental issues	125
4.5.1	Littering	125
4.5.2	Air and noise pollution	127
4.5.3	Social cost of pollution	130
4.5.4	Heating and cooking technologies	131
4.6	Crime	132
4.7	Narrower focus on Evaton West	135
4.8	Quality of life	135

4.8.1	Satisfaction survey	136
4.8.2	Asset ownership	139
4.8.3	Indebtedness	141
4.8.4	Housing adequacy	142
4.9	Snapshot of indicators	144
4.10	Summary	146

## **Chapter 5 - Analysis of community indicators in Evaton West in 2003/4 compared to 2000/1**

5.1	Introduction	147
5.2	Community characteristics	149
5.2.1	Population	150
5.2.2	Employment activities	152
5.2.3	Roads	154
5.2.4	Income	155
5.2.5	Public transport	157
5.2.6	Housing adequacy	158
5.2.7	Quality of life	161
5.2.8	Trust and conflict in the community	162
5.3	Principal services	163
5.3.1	Electricity	164
5.3.2	Public lighting	165
5.3.3	Drinking water	165
5.3.4	Home telephone service	166
5.3.5	Communication service	167
5.3.5.1	Public telephone services	167
5.3.5.2	Postal/mail service	167
5.3.5.3	Internet service	168
5.3.6	Sewage	168
5.3.7	Refuse collection	169



5.4	Recreation	170
5.5	Safety and security	171
5.6	Labour migration	173
5.7	Education	174
5.7.1	Preschool	174
5.7.2	Primary school	174
5.7.3	Secondary school	175
5.7.4	Adult education	176
5.8	Health	177
5.9	Environmental issues	181
5.10	Small, micro and medium enterprises (SMME's)	181
5.11	Community support	187
5.12	Snapshot of indicators in this chapter	190
5.13	Summary	192

## **Chapter 6 – Summary, conclusions and recommendations**

6.1	Introduction	193
6.2	Summary of thesis	193
6.3	Conclusions	197
6.4	Recommendations	198

## **Chapter 6 – Addendum: The basic income grant (BIG) and its effect on poverty in Evaton West**

6A.1	Introduction	209
6A.2	The proposed BIG	210
6A.3	BIG in Evaton West	211
6A.4	BIG summary	212
	Bibliography	213

Annexure 1 - Survey design and application	231
Annexure 2 - Household questionnaire	234
Annexure 3 - Community questionnaire	241
Annexure 4 - Respondents to the community questionnaire	260
Annexure 5 - Methodologies	261
Annexure 6 - Transcript of the focus group interview (FGI)	266

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

AIDS	Acquired Immune-Deficiency Syndrome
ANC	African National Congress
CEAS	Central Economic Advisory Service
CoLTAPIA®	Centres of Learning to Alleviate Poverty in Africa
CPF	Community Policing Forum
CPS	Current Population Survey
CROP	Comparative Research Programme on Poverty
DoA	Department of Agriculture
DoE	Department of Education
DoL	Department of Labour
DTI	Department of Trade and Industry
ELM	Emfuleni Local Municipality
EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme
ERU	Employment Research Unit
EWCDF	Evaton West Community Development Forum
FAO	Food and Agriculture Organization
FBT	Former Black Townships
FGI	Focus Group Interview
FGT	Forster-Greer-Thorbecke
FSD	First Order Stochastic Dominance
FWT	Former White Towns
GDP	Gross Domestic Product
GTZ	The Deutsche Gesellschaft für Technische Zusammenarbeit
HDI	Human Development Index
HEL	Household Effective Level
HIPC	Heavily Indebted Poor Country
HIV	Human Immune-Deficiency Virus
HSD	Human Scale Development
HSL	Household Subsistence Level
ICT	Information and Communications Technology
IDC	Industrial Development Corporation

IDGs	International Development Goals
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
IDT	Independent Development Trust
ILO	International Labour Office
IMF	International Monetary Fund
IRDC	International Development Research Centre
LDC	Less Developed Country
LED	Local Economic Development
LLM	Lesedi Local Municipality
LM	Local Municipalities
MDG	Millennium Development Goals
MHSL	Minimum Humane Standard of Living
MLL	Minimum Living Level
MLM	Midvaal Local Municipality
MPCC	Multi-Purpose Community Centre
MSL	Minimum Standard of Living
NGO	Non-Governmental Organization
OECD	Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development
PDL	Poverty Datum Line
PHP	People's Housing Programme
PUA	Peri-Urban Agriculture
PUMF	Peri-Urban Mini Farm
PWV	Pretoria-Witwatersrand-Vereeniging
RDP	Reconstruction and Development Programme
RSA (also SA)	Republic of South Africa
SALDRU	Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit
SBDC	Small Business Development Corporation
SDA	Skills Development Act
SDM	Sedibeng District Municipality
SMME	Small, Medium and Micro Enterprises
SOLID®	Saltspring Organization for Life Improvement and Development
SST	Sen-Shorocks-Thorn
STATSSA	Statistics South Africa
UA	Urban Agriculture

UAC	Urban Agricultural Co-operatives
UN	United Nations
UNDP	United Nations Development Programme
VCCI	Vaal Chamber of Commerce and Industries
VTA	Vaal Triangle Area
VTT	Vaal Triangle Technikon
VUT	Vaal University of Technology
VUTCS	Vaal University of Tehcnology Community Service



## LIST OF DIAGRAMS, FIGURES & MAPS

	<i>PAGE #</i>
 <b>CHAPTER 1</b>	
DIAGRAM 1.1: STUDY PLAN	5
DIAGRAM 1.2: PLAN OF THE STUDY	8
 <b>CHAPTER 2</b>	
BOX 2.1: CHARACTERISTICS OF THE URBAN POOR	23
FIGURE 2.1: DIMENSIONS OF RISK	25
MAP 2.1: POPULATION BELOW THE POVERTY LINE (%): LESS THAN US\$1 A DAY	29
MAP 2.2: POPULATION BELOW THE POVERTY LINE (%): LESS THAN US\$2 A DAY	30
FIGURE 2.2: SUBJECTIVE MINIMUM INCOME AND ACTUAL INCOME	33
FIGURE 2.3: EFFECTS OF THE VALUES OF $\alpha$	38
FIGURE 2.4: THE LORENZ CURVE	41
FIGURE 2.5: FIRST ORDER STOCHASTIC DOMINANCE	45
FIGURE 2.6: SHARE OF PEOPLE LIVING ON LESS THAN US\$1 AND US\$2 PER DAY	53
FIGURE 2.7: CONTINUOUS DISTRIBUTION FUNCTIONS OF PER CAPITA REAL INCOMES	58
MAP 2.3: POVERTY DISTRIBUTION BASED ON MONTHLY EXPENDITURE, BY MAGISTERIAL DISTRICT	59
FIGURE 2.8: PHASES OF THE COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT PROCESS	65
FIGURE 2.9: OUTCOMES OF POPULAR PARTICIPATION AND STATE PROVISION	66
BOX 2.2: OFFICIAL AND EXPANDED UNEMPLOYMENT RATES	67
 <b>CHAPTER 3</b>	
MAP 3.1: REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA	72
FIGURE 3.0: POPULATION DISTRIBUTION -1999	74
MAP 3.2: EVATON WEST WITH NEIGHBOURING TOWNS	75

MAP 3.3:	EVATON WEST	76
FIGURE 3.1:	POPULATION GROUP OF EVATON WEST	77
FIGURE 3.2:	GENDER BY AGE	78
FIGURE 3.3:	AGE DISTRIBUTION	78
FIGURE 3.4:	HIGHEST EDUCATION LEVELS ATTAINED BY OVER 20 YEAR OLDS	79
FIGURE 3.5:	LABOUR FORCE	79
FIGURE 3.6:	INDUSTRY AND SECTOR OF EMPLOYMENT	80
FIGURE 3.7:	OCCUPATION	80
FIGURE 3.8:	INDIVIDUAL MONTHLY INCOME	81
FIGURE 3.9:	LANGUAGE DISTRIBUTION	82
FIGURE 3.10:	DISABILITY	82
FIGURE 3.11:	MODE OF TRAVEL TO WORK OR SCHOOL	83
FIGURE 3.12:	DWELLING TYPE	83
FIGURE 3.13:	HOUSEHOLD SIZE	84
FIGURE 3.14:	NUMBER OF ROOMS	84
FIGURE 3.15:	SOURCE OF ENERGY FOR LIGHTING	85
FIGURE 3.16:	REFUSE	85
FIGURE 3.17:	SANITATION	86
FIGURE 3.18:	TELEPHONE	86
FIGURE 3.19:	WATER	87
FIGURE 3.20:	ANNUAL HOUSEHOLD INCOME	87
FIGURE 3.21:	MARITAL STATUS	88

#### **CHAPTER 4**

FIGURE 4.1:	GENDER DISTRIBUTION OF THE EVATON WEST POPULATION IN 2003	100
FIGURE 4.2:	TOTAL POPULATION: PERCENTAGE IN AGE CATEGORIES - 2003	101
FIGURE 4.3:	QUALIFICATIONS: POPULATION OUT OF SCHOOL – 2003	102
FIGURE 4.4:	REASONS FOR MOVING TO THE VAAL – 2003	103
FIGURE 4.5:	LABOUR FORCE - 2003	104
FIGURE 4.6:	UNEMPLOYMENT RATE BY PROVINCE - 2003	104
FIGURE 4.7:	SECTORS OF EMPLOYMENT FOR THE EMPLOYED - 2003	106

FIGURE 4.8:	EMPLOYMENT BY SECTOR IN GAUTENG	107
FIGURE 4.9:	DURATION OF UNEMPLOYMENT: EVATON WEST – 2003	107
FIGURE 4.10:	PERCENTAGE OF UNEMPLOYED IN DIFFERENT AGE CATEGORIES - 2003	108
FIGURE 4.11:	EDUCATIONAL LEVELS OF THE UNEMPLOYED - 2003	109
FIGURE 4.12:	POVERTY MAP OF GAUTENG - 2003	111
FIGURE 4.13:	HOUSEHOLDS AND THEIR HSL RATIOS - 2003	112
FIGURE 4.14:	LORENZ CURVES: 2001 & 2003 – EVATON WEST	113
FIGURE 4.15:	AGE CATEGORIES – POOR POPULATION - 2003	115
FIGURE 4.16:	QUALIFICATIONS OF THE POOR NOT IN SCHOOL - 2003	116
FIGURE 4.17:	THE COMPOSITION OF THE POOR LABOUR FORCE - 2003	117
FIGURE 4.18:	SECTOR OF EMPLOYMENT FOR EMPLOYED POOR - 2003	118
FIGURE 4.19:	CATEGORIES OF THE UNEMPLOYED POOR POPULATION IN EVATON WEST - 2003	119
FIGURE 4.20:	POOR UNEMPLOYED: DURATION OF UNEMPLOYMENT – 2003	120
FIGURE 4.21:	QUALIFICATION OF POOR UNEMPLOYED - 2003	121
FIGURE 4.22:	AVERAGE HOUSEHOLD INCOME: % CONTRIBUTION OF DIFFERENT SOURCES - 2003	122
FIGURE 4.23:	PLACE WHERE HOUSEHOLD PRODUCTS ARE BOUGHT	123
FIGURE 4.24:	HOUSEHOLD EXPENDITURE - 2003	124
FIGURE 4.25:	OPINIONS ABOUT THE ENVIRONMENT – LITTERING - 2003	125
FIGURE 4.26:	INITIATIVE AND RESPONSIBILITY FOR DEALING WITH LITTER - 2003	126
FIGURE 4.26a:	OPINIONS ON POLLUTION: NOISE AND AIR POLLUTION – 2003	127
FIGURE 4.27:	HOUSEHOLDS AFFECTED BY AIR POLLUTION - 2003	128
FIGURE 4.28:	NOISE POLLUTION – HOUSEHOLDS AFFECTED - 2003	128
FIGURE 4.29:	OPINIONS: RESPONSIBILITY TO CONTROL NOISE POLLUTION - 2003	129
FIGURE 4.30:	ANNUAL SOCIAL COST OF POLLUTION - 2003	130
FIGURE 4.31:	COOKING AND HEATING TECHNOLOGIES - 2003	131
FIGURE 4.32:	INTEREST IN COOKING AND HEATING TECHNOLOGIES - 2003	132



FIGURE 4.33:	HOUSEHOLDS AFFECTED BY CRIME IN THE PAST 12 MONTHS - 2003	134
FIGURE 4.34:	TYPES OF CRIME: HOUSEHOLDS AFFECTED - 2003	134
FIGURE 4.35:	PHYSICAL SAFETY - 2003	135
FIGURE 4.36:	SATISFACTION WITH WAY HOUSEHOLD LIVES - 2003	136
FIGURE 4.37:	SITUATION COMPARED TO THAT OF PARENTS - 2003	137
FIGURE 4.38:	ITEMS GOVERNMENT SHOULD FOCUS ON TO IMPROVE LIVING STANDARDS - 2003	138
FIGURE 4.39:	SATISFACTION WITH SERVICES OFFERED BY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY - 2003	139
FIGURE 4.40:	AVERAGE NUMBER OF ITEMS OWNED PER HOUSEHOLD - 2003	140
FIGURE 4.41:	PERCENTAGE AMOUNTS OWED – PER HOUSEHOLD AND PER BORROWER - 2003	141

## **CHAPTER 5**

FIGURE 5.1:	PERCEPTIONS REGARDING ROADS AND STORMWATER DRAINAGE – 2001	154
FIGURE 5.2:	INDIVIDUAL INCOMES – 2001 & 2003	156
FIGURE 5.3:	PERCEPTIONS REGARDING TRANSPORT-2001	157
FIGURE 5.4:	PERCEPTIONS REGARDING HOUSING-2001	160
FIGURE 5.5:	PERCEPTIONS OF COMMUNITY CONFLICT	163
FIGURE 5.6:	PERCEPTIONS REGARDING ELECTRICITY PROVISION – 2001	165
FIGURE 5.7:	PERCEPTIONS REGARDING WATER DELIVERY – 2001	166
FIGURE 5.8:	PERCEPTIONS REGARDING REFUSE REMOVAL – 2001	170
FIGURE 5.9:	PERCEPTIONS REGARDING SPORT AND RECREATION – 2001	171
FIGURE 5.10:	PERCEPTIONS REGARDING SAFETY AND SECURITY – 2001	172
FIGURE 5.11:	PERCEPTIONS REGARDING EDUCATION - 2001	177
FIGURE 5.12:	PERCEPTIONS REGARDING PUBLIC HEALTH – 2001	180
FIGURE 5.13:	UNEMPLOYED'S PREFERRED SECTORS TO GET SKILLS TRAINING IN	186

## LIST OF TABLES

	<i><b>PAGE #</b></i>
 <b>CHAPTER 2</b>	
TABLE 2.1: FUNDAMENTAL HUMAN NEEDS	21
TABLE 2.2: RISK FACTORS	26
TABLE 2.3: MEASURES OF TOTAL INEQUALITY AND BETWEEN AND WITHIN RACIAL GROUP IN EQUALITY IN SOUTH AFRICA: 1995 & 2000	44
TABLE 2.4: EXCERPT FROM SOUTH AFRICA: HOUSEHOLD WELFARE INDICATORS	51
TABLE 2.5: UN INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT GOALS (IGDs)	55
TABLE 2.6: COMMUNITY ASSETS AND CAPABILITIES	62
 <b>CHAPTER 3</b>	
TABLE 3.1: SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC CHARACTERISTICS AND SERVICE DELIVERY LOAD BY PROVINCE	73
 <b>CHAPTER 4</b>	
TABLE 4.1: GINI COEFFICIENTS BY RACE IN SOUTH AFRICA – 1975 -1996	114
TABLE 4.2: SOCIAL COST OF POLLUTION	130
TABLE 4.3: INCIDENCES OF DIFFERENT TYPES OF CRIMES BY PROVINCE	133
TABLE 4.4: CHARACTERISTIC OF HOUSING UNITS	142
 <b>CHAPTER 5</b>	
TABLE 5.0: COMPARISONS BETWEEN CHAPTERS 4 AND 5	147
TABLE 5.1: REASONS FOR AN INCREASE IN THE POPULATION	151
TABLE 5.2: ECONOMIC ACTIVITIES FOR MEN AND WOMEN	152
TABLE 5.3: REASONS FOR IMPROVED QUALITY OF HOUSING	158
TABLE 5.4: REASONS FOR IMPROVED QUALITY OF LIFE	161
TABLE 5.5: PROBLEMS WITH ELECTRICITY IN 2003	163
TABLE 5.6: PROBLEMS WITH PUBLIC TELEPHONES IN 2003	167

TABLE 5.7: PROBLEMS WITH THE MAIL SERVICE IN 2003	168
TABLE 5.8: PROBLEMS WITH THE SEWAGE SERVICE IN 2003	169
TABLE 5.9: PRINCIPAL JOBS MEN AND WOMEN LIVE FOR (2003)	176
TABLE 5.10: REASONS FOR LOW ATTENDANCE RATES AT SCHOOLS IN 2003	171
TABLE 5.11: HEALTH PROBLEMS IN EVATON WEST	178
TABLE 5.12: SUFFICIENCY OF VARIOUS ITEMS IN 2003	179
TABLE 5.13: MAIN ACTIONS TO IMPROVE THE ENVIRONMENT	181
TABLE 5.14: CONTRIBUTIONS OF THE DIFFERENT TOWNS AND TOWNSHIPS TO THE ECONOMY OF THE VAAL	183
TABLE 5.15: PRINCIPAL SMME ACTIVITIES IN 2003	184
TABLE 5.16: MAIN PROBLEMS IN GETTING PRODUCTS TO MARKETS IN 2003	184
TABLE 5.17: VOCATIONAL PREFERENCES – 2001	185
TABLE 5.18: MAIN PROBLEMS IN THE COMMUNITY IN 2003	188
TABLE 5.19: PROBLEMS IN THE COMMUNITY AND THE GROUPS MOST AFFECTED BY THIS PROBLEMS	189
 <b>CHAPTER 6</b>	
TABLE 6.1: SUMMARY OF FINDINGS – CHAPTER 4	195
TABLE 6.2: SUMMARY OF FINDINGS – CHAPTER 5	196
TABLE 6.3: SOCIAL GRANTS DISBURSED IN SOUTH AFRICA (IN NUMBERS)	210

# Chapter 1

## The problem and its setting

### 1.1 Introduction

The World Bank and many institutions measuring poverty and proposing measures to deal with it measure poverty at macro-levels (i.e. country-wide levels). Measurements such as the US\$1 and US\$2 per day methods based on the purchasing power parities among countries are calculated on countrywide data. Even the participatory poverty assessment measures conducted by the World Bank under the banner of "Voices of the Poor" (World Bank, 2000) looked at macro-level issues. Not much research has concentrated on micro-level (such as community-level) assessment and solutions and South Africa is no exception. This thesis concentrates on micro-level (specifically community-level), local indicators of poverty within the Vaal Triangle Area (VTA) in the Gauteng province of South Africa.

Burkey (1996: xvi-xvii) points out that the numbers of the poor in the Third World are increasing and poverty is deepening in spite of all the projects targeted at poverty alleviation. The problem seems to lie in the top-down approach followed in these programmes. Those who have the means dictate what programmes and projects should be followed.

The Vaal Triangle Area VTA itself experiences high levels of poverty, the highest in the Gauteng. This is confirmed by research conducted over time by Slabbert (1997) and Mokoena (2001). Statistics South Africa (StatsSA) (2000) has also found high levels of poverty and inequality in Gauteng and especially in the VTA. This research also suggests high unemployment levels. A number of projects targeted at poverty alleviation in the area have been undertaken.

This thesis describes the notion of participatory, self-help, local initiatives rather than the macro-level countrywide programmes targeted by development agencies and governments. The former seem to prove more successful than the latter (Burkey, 1996: xvii) as the success of community projects lies in their long-

term sustainability. Projects started, run and maintained by the affected individuals seem to have longer life spans (“staying power”) than ‘imposed’ projects. There is, therefore, a move towards participatory approaches in aid and development by for example the World Bank (1999). This study looks at the success of this type of approach at a micro-level (i.e. employing community-level indicators) within one community.

## **1.2 Research problem**

How a researcher defines poverty will influence how poverty will be measured, this, in turn, will influence policy options recommended in fighting poverty (Mokoena, 1994: 11). Much research on poverty in the Vaal area has used the indicators of consumption and income, based mainly on household surveys, to measure it (cf. Slabbert, 1997 & StatsSA, 2000). Well-meaning policy recommendations have, in the past, not been based on participatory methods. These are fairly recent (cf. Chambers, 1999). Not much seems to have been done in understanding poverty from the perspective of the poor through participatory methods. Participatory poverty assessments as proposed by the World Bank (Robb, 1999: xii) have primarily been used in countrywide surveys to propose macro socio-economic solutions. Coupled to this lack of research in micro-level participatory methods is the initiation and support of poverty alleviation programmes in which poor people have fully participated in their envisioning, development and implementation. This raises the following major research question:

- What is the impact of a community-driven development approach in alleviating poverty?

This question further points to the following sub-questions:

- i. What is participatory community development or community-driven development (CDD)?
- ii. Is community-driven development effective in alleviating poverty or increasing the well-being of a community?
- iii. How is poverty defined and measured?

- iv. How can the impact of poverty alleviation projects in a community be measured?

The thesis is aimed at answering these research questions with relation to the community of Evaton West and the poverty alleviation projects applied in the community.

### **1.3 Purpose and objective of the study**

The objective of this study is to assess the impact of typical participatory projects within a given community (Evaton West). The envisaged outcome of the study is to showcase the success or failure of these projects and to recommend further projects. In order to achieve this, the following aspects will, *inter alia*, receive attention in measuring the impact of the projects:

A. Household indicators such as:

- Labour force, employment and unemployment
- Poverty and inequality,
- Income and consumption,
- Quality of life, crime, asset ownership and housing,
- Environmental issues.

B. Community indicators such as:

- Community characteristics: population, employment, income, housing, public roads, quality of life and trust and conflict in the community,
- Principal services (electricity, communication services, sewage, drinking water, public lighting),
- Recreation, safety and security, labour migration,
- Education,
- Health,
- Environmental issues,
- SMME's,
- Community support.

## **1.4 Motivation for the study**

Involvement in poverty research in the VTA both for academic studies and as part of the Vaal Research Group (VRG) has made the researcher aware of an overt need to include the poor in defining their own existence and being proactive in bringing themselves out of the state of poverty. Sustainability of projects depends on their inclusivity of the people affected by poverty in planning, execution and evaluation (Wates, 2000: 2-3). Being part of a poor community helps one understand the reality of poverty much better. Chambers (1997: 13-23) points out the pre-conceived biases of 'outsiders' to poor communities in attempting to define, measure and propose strategies against poverty. 'Insiders' better understand, though not in a formatted or formalised way, what needs to be done. The poor can better articulate their condition and can positively influence policies directed at poverty reduction if they are carefully questioned, led and assisted by those with the means and the articulation, expertise and commitment.

## **1.5 Hypothesis**

This study aims to test the hypothesis that community-driven development projects are effective in reducing levels of poverty in a given community. In this study, the CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup> project and the Eindhoven Municipality projects will be evaluated as applied in Evaton West. The hypothesis will be tested against criteria to be developed this thesis. The hypothesis can be phrased formally as follows:

- H<sub>0</sub>: Poverty levels in Evaton West are the same or higher after the CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup> and the Eindhoven Municipality projects were applied than they were before these projects.
- H<sub>A</sub>: Poverty levels in Evaton West are lower after the CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup> and Eindhoven municipality projects were applied than they were before these projects.

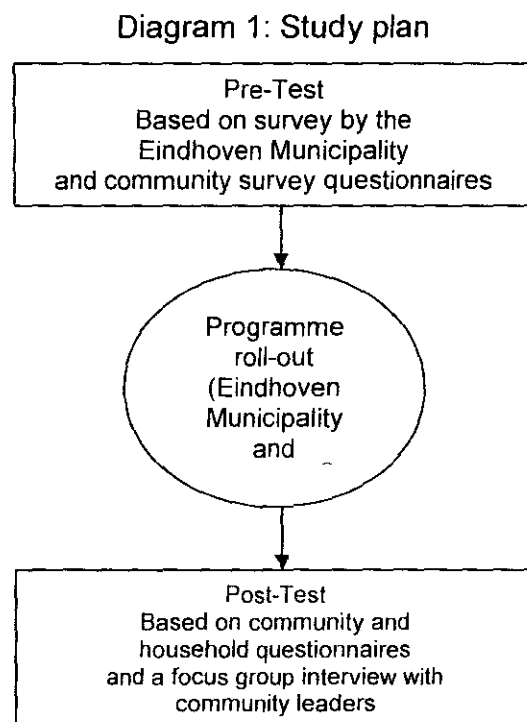
The null hypothesis will be rejected if only one of the following indicators shows improvement, without the others being worse off: that is, if it can be proven that

on aggregate the level of well-being (welfare) has increased or alternatively that the level of ill-being has been reduced. The indicators to be used are:

- Household indicators and
- Community indicators as listed under 1.3 above.

## 1.6 Research methodology

This study will combine qualitative and quantitative methods of research. The outline of the study plan is shown in the following diagram:



Source: Own construction

The Pre-Test stage will be based on a survey conducted during 2000/2001 by the Eindhoven group working with the Evaton West Community. This survey documented a number of aspects regarding this community, including poverty levels.

The Post-Test made use of a focus group to obtain data on other dimensions of poverty apart from income and consumption, as well as questionnaires aimed at establishing material poverty levels after the intervention of the programme. The



programme where the effects are assessed was from the CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup> (Centres of Learning to Alleviate Poverty in Africa) programme run jointly by CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup> and the Emfuleni Municipality, the Vaal University of Technology (formerly the Vaal Triangle Technikon) and CoLtAPiA in combination with projects initiated by the Eindhoven Municipality.

The study employed three broad strategies:

- Define and measure poverty – this will be done quantitatively (employing income and consumption) and qualitatively (employing social indicators and subjective methods) in Evaton West.
- Describe the Programmes (Community-driven development or participatory community development) as employed in Evaton West.
- Evaluate the outcomes of these programmes and propose recommendations with regards to these programmes in Evaton West.

### **1.7 Outline of the study**

In *Chapter 1: The problem and its setting*, the background study focusing on justification of the study and the hypothesis being tested are described. The chapter uses the research proposal as a base.

*Chapter 2: Concepts and explanations* deals with the background theory on poverty and the community-driven development / participatory approach to poverty assessment and definitions. It also deals with the theoretical underpinnings of the study. A literature review of concepts such as poverty definitions and measurement, community development and employment/unemployment form part of this chapter.

In *Chapter 3: Background of Evaton West and the community-driven development initiatives in the area*, the outline of the two main intervention programmes run in Evaton West in the past three years, namely CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup> and the Eindhoven-driven programmes are discussed, both from the initiators' as well as from the recipients' perspective of the programmes. The aims, purpose and

intended benefits, as well as perceived actual outcomes, are discussed. The chapter also offers a brief profile of Evaton West.

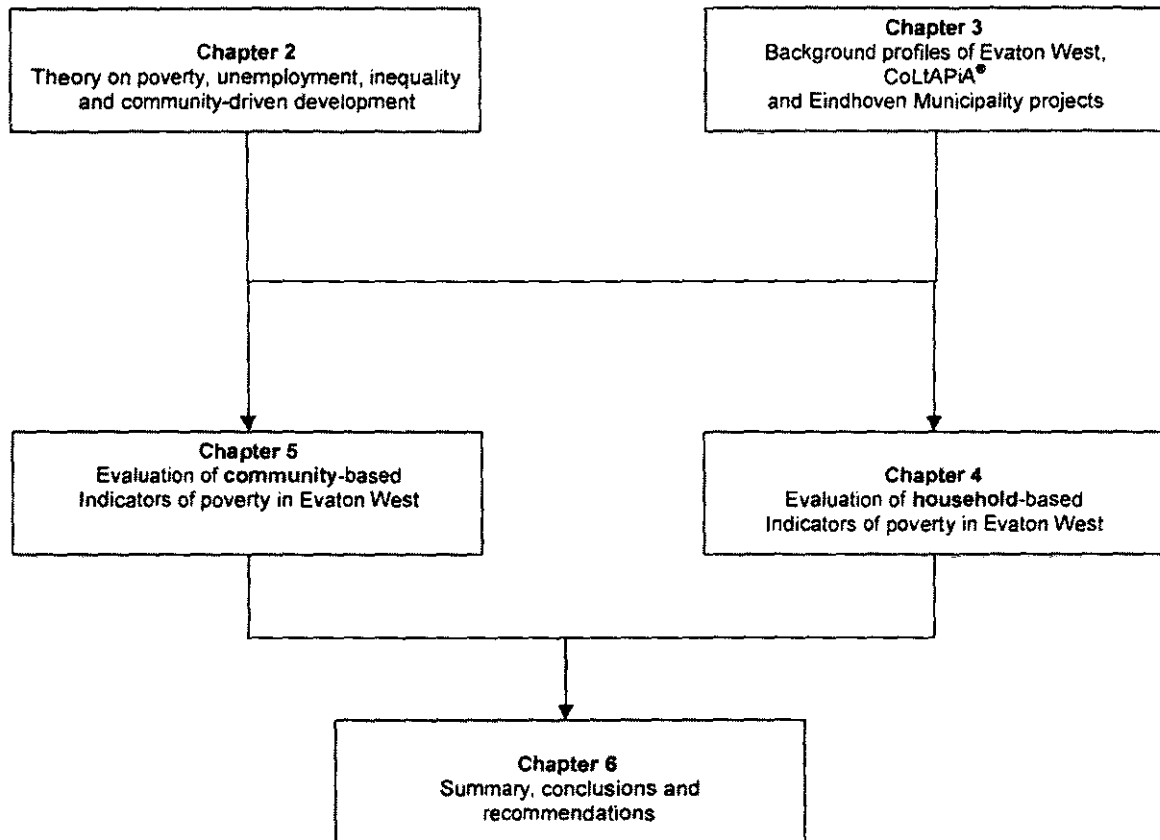
*Chapter 4: Analysis of household indicators in Evaton West (compared to Bophelong)* outlines a cross-sectional comparative evaluation of key household indicators. The chapter compares the results of the current survey conducted in Evaton West with the results of similar surveys conducted in both Bophelong (a similar township) and the greater Emfuleni area. The purpose of the study was to determine whether Evaton West, by receiving aid from the stated programmes, was better off than similar communities in the Vaal, or worse off.

In *Chapter 5: Analysis of community indicators in Evaton West in 2003/4 compared to 2000/1*, a longitudinal comparison of Evaton West indicators is described. The chapter presents the results of the survey assessing the social capital of the Evaton West community. The determination of whether or not the social capital of the community had increased over the three year period was made.

*Chapter 6: Conclusions and recommendations*, presents a summary of findings of the study and evaluates the hypothesis against the findings. Conclusions have been drawn from these outcomes. The chapter contains recommendations of appropriate approaches and projects with regard sustainable community development especially in Evaton West. Policy imperatives, the Integrated Development Plan (IDP) processes and self-help initiatives also form part of the recommendations in this chapter.

A comprehensive plan of the study is presented in Diagram 2. The diagram shows that chapters 2 and 3 deal with that background theory underpinning the rest of the thesis. Chapters 4 and 5 presents the various indicators used in the study as they apply to Evaton West; with Chapter 4 focusing on household indicators and Chapter 5 on community-level indicators. Chapter 6 gives a summary of the thesis as well as conclusions and recommendations.

Diagram 2: Plan of the study



Source: Own construction

## 1.8 Explanation of terms

The following list explains terms and concepts used both in the study and in the annexures to this thesis.

### ***Comparative advantage***

Indicates a regional economy that is able to produce or deliver a good or service relatively better than the aggregate economy or the other regional economies.

### ***Core industrial point (or the Industrial Development Zone [IDZ])***

A major point of industrial growth, for example a metropolitan area, or, in a wider sense, the entire region in which a major industrial development initiative is targeted, such as the Coega Development Project in the Eastern Cape Province of South Africa.

***Density (population)***

The number of people in a given area divided by the geographical size of the region.

***Dependency burden***

Specifically refers to the financial implications of the dependency ratio.

***Dependency ratio***

The number of people supported by a single employed person, excluding him- or herself.

***Deprivation***

Refers to lacking what is needed for well-being. Its dimensions are physical, social, economic, political and psychological/spiritual. It includes forms of disadvantage such as physical weakness, isolation, poverty, vulnerability and powerlessness.

***Economically active population***

All workers in an area, whether employers, employees, self employed or unemployed, including trans-frontier commuters and resting migrant workers, present in their area of origin at the time of a survey.

***Income-poor and income-poverty***

Refers to low per capita income.

***Labour supply***

The economically active population of a region, excluding migrant workers.

***Literacy rate***

The percentage of the population with reading, writing and arithmetic skills. In the study it is taken as the percentage of the population with standard 4 or more of formal education.

***Livelihood***

Refers to the means of gaining a living, including income capabilities, tangible assets and intangible assets. Employment can provide a livelihood, but most livelihoods of the poor are based on multiple activities and sources of food, income and security.

***Metropole***

The metropolitan areas, namely Tshwane and the Greater Johannesburg, the greater Durban/Pinetown area, the Cape Peninsula and the greater Port Elizabeth/Uitenhage area.

***Micro-level***

Pertaining to economic units and entities the analysis of which are performed on a small (micro) scale rather than at a larger (macro) scale. Examples include a single community (e.g. Evaton West) as opposed to multiple, geographically spread communities (e.g. Gauteng or South Africa).

***Non-poor households / individuals***

A non-poor household is defined as a household of which the combined income of all its members is more than the Household Subsistence Level (HSL) calculated for the specific household. Persons belonging to such households are referred to as “the non-poor.”

***Participation rate***

The percentage of people actually available to the labour market, that is, the economically active population as a percentage of the potential economically active population.

***Poor***

Goes beyond being the adjective for poverty, referring to lack of physical necessities, assets and income, to include the broader sense of being deprived, in a bad condition and lacking basic needs.

**Poor households / individuals**

A poor household is defined as a household of which the combined income of all its members is less than the Household Subsistence Level (HSL) calculated for the specific household. Persons belonging to such households are referred to as "the poor."

**Potential labour force**

The number of persons in the age range of 15 to 64 years.

**Poverty**

Refers to lack of physical necessities, assets and income. It includes, but is more than, being income-poor. Poverty can be distinguished from other dimensions of deprivation such as physical weakness, isolation, vulnerability and powerlessness with which it interacts.

**Poverty gap (household)**

The poverty gap for a household is defined as the difference between the income of a poor household and the HSL for that specific household.

**Poverty gap (population)**

The sum of the poverty gaps for individual households. That is the total amount needed to lift all the households below the poverty line to a level equal to their poverty lines.

**Poverty rate**

Number of poor households expressed as a percentage of the total number of households

**Social development**

Means enhanced individual and community well-being and autonomy, within an integrated, equitable and just society.

**Structural poverty**

A state of long-term poverty due to the personal or social circumstances of

individuals. Individuals are, for example, poor because they lack access to land, to employment, or to employment at sufficient level for basic subsistence.

***Sustainable livelihood***

Refers to a living which is adequate for the satisfaction of basic needs, and secure against anticipated shocks and stresses.

***Unemployed persons***

People who are available for and willing to work, who are actively looking for jobs, but are not in any type of paid employment in the formal sector.

***Urbanisation level***

Physical concentration of people and activity in towns and cities and the social dimensions of being urbanised.

***Vulnerability***

Means not lack or want, but exposure and defenselessness. It has two sides: the external side of exposure to shocks, stress and risk; and the internal side of defenselessness, meaning a lack of means to cope without damaging loss.

***Well-being***

It is the experience of good quality of life.

**1.9 Summary**

This chapter presented and justified the writing of the thesis and provided the methodology employed in the thesis. The chapter outlined the research project, the motivation for this project and how the research was undertaken. The hypothesis was presented as well as the chapter outline of the thesis.

The purpose of the study was presented as an assessment of the success of the community-driven development projects as applied in Evaton West. The thesis focuses on the two main programmes applied in Evaton West, namely, the CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup> Programme and the Eindhoven Municipality Programme.

## **Chapter 2**

### **Definitions and explanations of underlying concepts (poverty, inequality, community-driven development and unemployment)**

#### **2.1 Introduction**

This chapter provides the theoretical framework and the literature review on concepts that form the underpinnings of this thesis. It begins with a review of the understanding of poverty, its definitions and measurements. This study focuses on material urban poverty at township-level. Poverty will be reviewed first in a broad macro-economic perspective and then the discussion will be narrowed to a micro-level (localized) view of poverty, the same as township-level.

A review of community-driven development will be given before attention is focused on micro-level development projects driven mainly by the community and for the community. The chapter will provide material for a broad and generic understanding of these concepts without going into any specific detail.

It is important to note right at the outset that there is a large and intensive a body of knowledge that deals with the concepts discussed in this chapter. It is not the aim of this thesis to provide an in-depth review of these concepts and so it is mentioned and discussed only as it relates to and form the basis of this thesis. Furthermore, more attention will be paid to poverty than to other issues, firstly because it forms the key to the entire research premise and, secondly, due to the convoluted nature of the concept.



## **2.2 The rationale for poverty alleviation**

Throughout the ages, mankind has had to deal with poverty, even in Biblical times. In Deuteronomy 28:48 (Bible, 1970: 147), for example, The Bible even makes reference to the concept of dire poverty. The twentieth century saw a great deal of attention paid to the profiling of poverty, especially at city-level. The work of researchers like Charles Booth at the turn of the 20<sup>th</sup> century in London (Scott, 1994: 19-32, and Fisher, 1997), Seebohm Rowntree in York (Scott, 1994: 33-38, and Fisher, 1997) and Mollie Orshansky (Orshansky, 1965) all bear testimony to this. Throughout the ages, such fundamental aspects as the definition of poverty engaged many researchers and policy-makers. Bell (2002: 507) states: "in the final decades of the twentieth century, the analysis of poverty in the countries of the South became a priority of many major institutions located in the North". This seeming obsession with poverty stems from the need to eradicate poverty.

Streeten (1998: 2-3) gives the following reasons for the desire to eliminate poverty from society: Firstly, the elimination of poverty leads to increased productivity. Increases in health, skills, education and mental alertness (which the poor are normally deprived of) make for a healthy workforce. Secondly, the elimination of poverty would lead to desirably lower family sizes. Thirdly, poverty reduction leads to a healthier environment. Lastly, reduced poverty contributes to a healthy civil society, democracy and greater social stability. For these and other reasons, it is desirable that poverty is eradicated or at least alleviated.

This section is aimed at providing a general background on the study of poverty focusing on issues like the definitions of poverty, subsistence, inequality or externality, social exclusion, Human Scale Development, urban poverty, vulnerability and poverty measurement issues.

### **2.2.1 Definition of poverty**

Defining poverty is not an easy task. Scott (1994: 17) points out that poverty is a highly contested term. Many works on the subject become so technical that it is very difficult to draw conclusions from them or to employ them in policy-making

endeavours. The important factor with definitions of poverty is that definitions drive policies. How poverty is defined and measured tends to determine the types and direction of policies aimed at reducing it. Alcock (1997: 1-2) concurs that underlying the discussions on poverty is the assumption that identifying the problem provides a basis for action upon which all will agree.

Many definitions of poverty are based on income or material-based poverty [cf. Atkinson and Bourguignon (1999: 1, 5-7)]. This then militates in favour of income-based policies in poverty reduction. There are other dimensions to poverty, though, as pointed out by Max-Neef, Elizalde and Hopenhayn (1989). A few illustrative definitions of poverty proposed in some of the prominent works on the subject appear below.

Kanbur and Squire (1999:1) stated that: "Any reasonable definition of poverty implies that significant numbers of people are living in intolerable circumstances where starvation is a constant threat, sickness is a familiar companion, and oppression is a fact of life." This approach raises some very fundamental issues with regard to poverty, *namely* lack of command over resources, vulnerability, insecurity, social exclusion and lack of participation. Most definitions of poverty contain these issues.

The World Bank (2001: 1-2) defined poverty as being a lack of command over commodities in general deemed essential to constitute a reasonable standard of living in a society, or lack of ability to function in a society. This definition also emphasises command over resources as well as the lack of participation or "voice" in governance and civil matters.

May (1998: 3) defined poverty as the inability to attain a minimal standard of living, measured in terms of basic consumption needs or the income required to satisfy them. This definition runs in tandem with the measurement of poverty employing the Minimum Living Level (MLL) as the accepted poverty datum line in South Africa.

The examples of definitions given above show that poverty may be defined either based on income or on non-income dimensions. Schiller (1984: 5-10) makes the point that although non-economic aspects are understood, they are not easily quantifiable. It is therefore much more convenient to employ income-based measures for ease of measurement. It has nevertheless become imperative and equally important to attempt the measuring of non-income indicators as well. The World Bank (World Bank 2000) has specifically developed the HDI (Human Development Index) for this purpose.

The following sections outline some of the main issues regarding poverty definitions. Although not all of these issues will not be used in evaluating poverty in Evaton West, they are essential for a complete discussion on poverty as they develop the contextual understanding thereof. Many of these issues are also currently debated issues with regard to poverty and demand reference in a research work such as this thesis.

### **2.2.2 Subsistence, inequality and externality**

Subsistence, inequality and externality are concepts linked to poverty definition by Rein (1971: 46-52). Subsistence has to do with the basic necessities required to provide adequate health and working capacity. This concept correlates with Scott (1994: 54) and others' 'absolute poverty' concept, which has to do with the basic physiological needs of a household. The problem with this approach lies in the definition of basic needs or necessities as well as the determination of the basket of necessities required to enable a family to cross the poverty line to a non-poor state.

Holman (1978: 2) refers to this poverty as subsistence poverty, implying that those who are classified as such live below subsistence level and also refers to the poor (with bare minimal income) and the very poor (who for some reason fall below this standard). George and Lawson (1980: 1) state that this type of poverty does not change much over time or across nations. Brady (2003: 721) says that absolute measures involve a cross-nationally and historically-constant and fixed threshold, which distinguishes poor from non-poor.

At the heart of this type of poverty is the notion of people with less than adequate nutritional provision or access. The immediate and obvious problem with this approach is to define what constitutes 'adequate nutrition'. Furthermore, as pointed out by Sen (1981: 12), it is necessary to determine how are such nutritional requirements translated into food requirements. Schiller (1984: 4-5) points out that there is another problem with regard to the absolute definition, namely the issue of who defines what basic needs are. Is it the poor themselves, policy-makers or researchers who are to determine what constitute basic needs? What criteria should be used? People will tend to define basic needs based on their current socio-economic situations. For these and other problems, it does not seem prudent to define poverty purely in absolute terms.

Inequality refers to stratification of society along wealth, means and income lines or, as Rein (1971: 46) put it, the relative position of income groups to each other. Scott (1994: 54-55) refers to relative poverty: the essence of this approach lies in the fact that the poor are poor in relation to the community to which they belong. Holman (1978: 14-20) stated that the relative approach includes four main elements: Firstly, comparison with other people, secondly, the contemporary environment, thirdly, inequality, and fourthly, value judgement referring to the standard of living society dictates as normal. Desai and Shah (1988: 508) characterised this type of poverty by stating that there is a community to which those who are deprived, and those who are not, belong. The non-deprived set the living pattern, custom and activities which, if practiced, constitute "belonging to the community".

Brady (2003: 721) points out that relative measures generate specific poverty thresholds for each society in each time period from patterns in the income distribution. They reflect the difference in living conditions between the poor and the majority of society, rather than some abstract standard. This approach has also been criticised. Hazlitt (1973:33) pointed out that, if based on the definition that poverty means being worse off than somebody else, then all but one of us are poor. On the question of value judgement and standards which also form part of this approach, Sen (1981: 16-17) contended that the question "what are the

contemporary standards” rather than “what should contemporary standards be” needs to be asked. In other words, descriptive rather than prescriptive research needs to be pursued to ensure objectivity rather than subjectivity in judging value and standards and in setting ill-being and well-being standards.

Razafindrakoto and Roubaud (2003: 4) state that in practice, there is a tendency to favour relative measures in the developed countries, whereas in the developing countries, where many basic needs are not met, the preference goes to measures of absolute poverty. This is nevertheless not conclusive nor really scientific (apples compared with apples) as poverty also has a strong regional dimension, that is, what Alcock and Graig (2000: 58) refer to as the spatial dimensions of the poverty problem. Atkinson and Bourguignon (1999: 30) propose that a relative threshold takes account of the social standing of the individual, and that an absolute threshold makes it possible to rank priorities. There is therefore a strong tendency to combine the two approaches into a complementary whole. Sen (1981: 16-17) pointed out that “the approach of relative deprivation...cannot really be the only basis for the concept of poverty. There is an irreducible core of absolute deprivation in our idea of poverty...Thus the approach of relative deprivation supplements rather than supplants the analysis of poverty in terms of the absolute dispossession”.

Externality, as an adjunct, refers to the social consequences of poverty for the rest of society (Rein, 1971: 46-47). This has more to do with how the rest of society experiences the presence of the poverty problem rather than the effects to the poor themselves. Recent works on the subject see social exclusion, whether based on subjective feeling or objective considerations as the real issue (Razafindrakoto & Roubaud, 2003: 8).

### **2.2.3 Social Exclusion**

A relatively new concept in poverty analysis is the idea of social exclusion. The Poverty Group (2001: 20) led by Martin Ravallion at the World Bank stated that social exclusion refers to social arrangements or structures within a society that systematically exclude disadvantaged groups from economic opportunities for reasons other than their potential productivity. The group further asserts that

social exclusion appears to be an important but under-researched impediment to pro-poor growth, implying that left unattended and excluded from policy imperatives, social exclusion has the potential of emasculating the effect of such policies.

Brady (2003: 723) adjoins that social exclusion is polysemic, having multiple meanings in different contexts and for different purposes. Social exclusion is the antithesis of the concept of solidarity and connotes marginalisation and irrelevance. Within the context of poverty alleviation therefore, social exclusion refers to marginalisation of certain groups in a community from political, social and economic participation. A further evidence of exclusion relates to top-down policy interventions as opposed to participative pro-poor developmental ideologies.

Siddiqui (2003: 7-9) and Saith (2001: 6-10) point out the following issues regarding social exclusion in relation to developing country social policies:

- Inherent within the concept of exclusion is the idea of systemic isolation. Such isolation may not apply in developing countries as it is applied in developed countries for a number of reasons.
- Developing countries do not have as advanced social security and safety nets as developed countries. This is due to a number of factors, not least of which is the socio-economic structures in these countries.
- Exclusion from promotive social security. Promotive social security refers to measures concerned with the promotion and enhancing of normal living conditions. In developing countries, many people are excluded from these, that is, people who do not achieve certain minimal standards of functioning related to health, nutrition and education.
- Exclusion as defined in relation to employment: while it is relatively easy to classify the unemployed in developed countries as socially excluded, it is not so straightforward in developing countries. What may be considered as unemployment in developed countries may be the norm in developing countries, questioning the assertion of social exclusion.

- Concepts paralleling 'social exclusion' – these include exclusion from basic services (e.g. water and electricity), exclusion from employment, human rights and income.

From the issues listed above, it follows that social exclusion is a prominent feature in developing countries' social policies and structures.

#### **2.2.4 Human Scale Development**

The works of Max-Neef (in for example, Max-Neef, Elizalde and Hopenhayn 1989) have led to what is now known as Human Scale Development (HSD) where poverty is seen as being multi-dimensional (i.e. different poverties). HSD thus also refers to the satisfaction of basic human needs. The Sorefeelings website (<http://www.sorefeelings.com>) refers to HSD as "focused and based on the satisfaction of fundamental human needs, on the generation of growing levels of self-reliance, and on the construction of organic articulations of people with nature and technology, of global processes with local activity, of the personal with the social, of planning with autonomy, and of civil society with the state."

Human scale development is focused and based on the satisfaction of fundamental human needs, on the generation of growing levels of self-reliance, and on the construction of organic articulations of people with nature and technology, of global processes with local activity, of the personal with the social, of planning with autonomy, and of civil society with the state (*cf.* Max-Neef, Elizalde and Hopenhayn 1989). The following table lists the Fundamental Human Needs, their qualities, and their explanations.

This approach identifies human needs and their satisfiers. Human needs are seen as few, finite and classifiable and are constant through many human cultures and across historical time periods. What changes over time and between cultures is the way these needs are satisfied. As an example from the Table 2.1, the need for *participation* includes aspects such as receptiveness and dedication. The satisfiers for this need include having rights and obligations which can be achieved by co-operation and openly expressing views and opinions. An enabling framework and institutions for the achievement of such satisfiers include

churches, political parties and associations. The main contribution of this approach is to show that there is no single type of poverty; people may be poor in a number of ways, including spiritual poverty. This thesis will be restricted to material poverty.

Table 2.1: Fundamental human needs

<b>Fundamental Human Needs</b>	<b>Being (qualities)</b>	<b>Having (things)</b>	<b>Doing (actions)</b>	<b>Interacting (settings)</b>
<b>Subsistence</b>	physical and mental health	food, shelter work	feed, clothe, rest, work	living environment, social setting
<b>Protection</b>	care, adaptability autonomy	social security, health systems, work	co-operate, plan, take care of, help	social environment, dwelling
<b>Affection</b>	respect, sense of humour, generosity, sensuality	friendships, family, relationships with nature	share, take care of, make love, express emotions	privacy, intimate spaces of togetherness
<b>Understanding</b>	critical capacity, curiosity, intuition	literature, teachers, policies educational	analyse, study, meditate investigate,	schools, families universities, communities,
<b>Participation</b>	receptiveness, dedication, sense of humour	responsibilities, duties, work, rights	Co-operate, dissent, express opinions	associations, parties, churches, neighbourhoods
<b>Leisure</b>	imagination, tranquillity spontaneity	games, parties, peace of mind	day-dream, remember, relax, have fun	landscapes, intimate spaces, places to be alone
<b>Creation</b>	imagination, boldness, inventiveness, curiosity	abilities, skills, work, techniques	invent, build, design, work, compose, interpret	spaces for expression, workshops, audiences
<b>Identity</b>	sense of belonging, self-esteem, consistency	language, religions, work, customs, values, norms	get to know oneself, grow, commit oneself	places one belongs to, everyday settings
<b>Freedom</b>	autonomy, passion, self-esteem, open-mindedness	equal rights	dissent, choose, run risks, develop awareness	Anywhere

Source: Sorefeelings (<http://www.sorefeelings.com>)



### **2.2.5 Objective and subjective approaches**

The definition and measurement of poverty can be seen in two ways: objectively (by the researcher or policymaker), and subjectively (by those directly affected by poverty). Hagenaars (1986: 13-15) referred to two criteria for identifying the poor, firstly, based on the objective aspects of someone's situation or, secondly, subjectively based on the opinion and feeling of the person concerned. Saunders (1997: 15) suggests similar notions, referring to a definitional sense which focuses on what poverty means to those who study it, as well as an outcome-oriented perspective which explores what poverty means to those who experience it. Although it is tempting to go with the former for ease of quantification, there is more substance in the qualitative nature of the latter. The World Bank (Narayan, Patel, Schafft, Rademacher & Koch-Schulte, 1999) with its "Voices of the Poor" drive sought to qualitatively quantify the experiences of the poor. Since then, participative approaches to poverty assessment have gained popularity. Wilson and Ramphela (1991: 14) emphasize the importance of poverty as defined by those who experience it, who know what it means (to be poor).

### **2.2.6 Urban poverty / Rural poverty**

Urban poverty differs from rural poverty in a number of ways (see for example: Pradhan & Ravallion, 1998; Datt, Jolliffe & Sharma, 2001 and Devereux, 2002). One of these ways is the fact that the poverty line and consumption patterns of rural poor differ markedly from those of the urban poor in most developing countries. A single poverty line for both urban and rural poverty may therefore underestimate poverty in urban areas. In this thesis, urban poverty is specifically considered due to the nature of the area being studied. Jegasothy (1999: 1034) states in respect of urban poverty that the physical manifestations thereof are evident in all cities of developing countries in the form of slums and squatters. In this respect, South Africa is no different, and the same applies to the object area of this study.

The following Box 2.1 represents characteristics of the urban poor suggested by Global Urban Observatory (GUO) (2001: 4-5):

### Box 2.1: Characteristics of the urban poor

- *Illegitimacy of their residences and work:* The majority of urban poor live in informal settlements. Furthermore, urban poor are likely to be engaged in casual and informal sector work. They are not addressed by policy and regulatory frameworks regarding service provision, housing and land, nor labour rights and safety nets.
- *Insufficient channels of information:* Urban poor do not have sufficient access to channels of information on jobs, legal rights to services, etc.
- *Not being treated as "citizens":* The urban poor are not given rights and responsibilities that go with being citizens. They are often assumed to be passive consumers rather than active participants with something to contribute.
- *Negative contact with authorities:* While government policies can have important positive impact on poverty alleviation, many poor people experience the state in negative ways, as an oppressive bureaucracy, which attempts to regulate their activities without understanding their needs.
- *Geographical isolation:* Urban poor have to trade-off between costs of housing and long distances from city centres. Communities at the outskirts of cities are disconnected from job opportunities and urban services.

Source: GUO (2001: 4-5)

### 2.2.7 Vulnerability

Vulnerable groups are those people who are a shock (such as loss of a job) away from poverty. Shocks include a sudden loss of income or safety-net. People at a risk of falling into poverty due to shocks are the vulnerable groups. A number of factors bring about such risks. May (2000: 6-7) for example, refers to the negative outcomes of processes of change (economic, social, environmental or political). Assets may help militate against shocks. The following excerpt shows what vulnerability means:

Poor people are vulnerable to a number of harmful and potentially devastating threats, which they may not have the resources or power to avert. Among such threats are fire (e.g. shack fires, which destroy one's home and possessions); floods (because poorer people often end up erecting their shelters in flood-prone areas); job loss; crime (theft of money

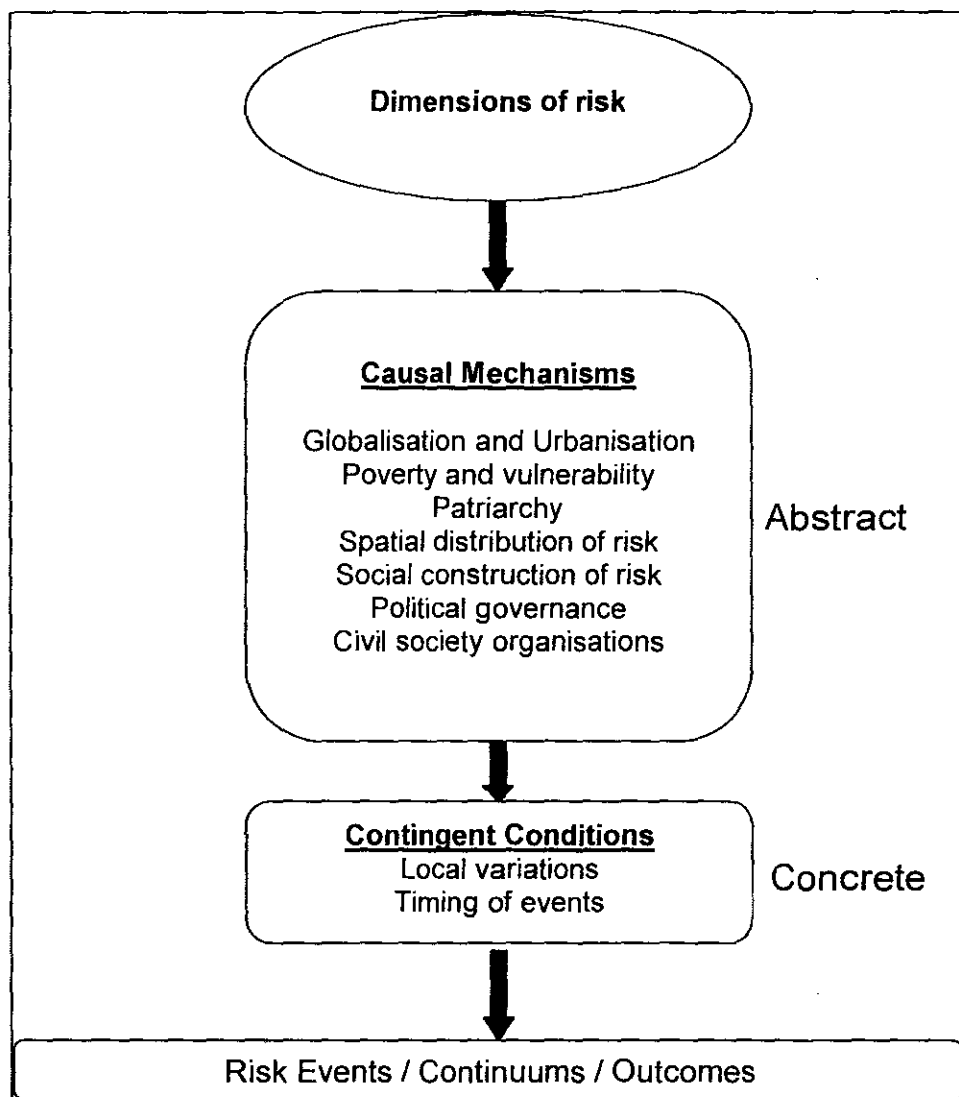
and possessions, and bodily harm); poor agricultural conditions (e.g. for those who rely in part on food production for sustenance); and illness and death in the family (often with no resources to seek medical care) (Aliber 2001: 23).

In urban areas especially, there is a greater dependence on cash income for survival. This renders urban dwellers susceptible to income risks (people are almost always a salary/wage away from poverty). Certain assets may be used to mitigate against shocks (May, 2000: 6). Mostly savings and investments are used as such. GUO (2001: 5) also state that in cities people have to rely on market exchanges to buy basic goods and services such as food, water, electricity and transport.

The ability to earn cash income thus becomes an important determinant of food security and other aspects of human well being. Food expenditures, for example, could form as much as 60 to 80 percent of total income among low-income urban households; transportation, water and sanitation have also been reported to absorb far higher shares of household income than planners have predicted. There is therefore a high reliance on money income as security against risk, yet the high liquidity of cash becomes a risk on its own.

Figure 2.1 shows the dimensions of environmental risk evident within South African townships (Oelofse, 2003: 266). The figure shows that poverty and vulnerability are seen by Oelofse (2003: 266) as some of the causal mechanisms of risk, which include other mechanisms such as: patriarchy and political governance. These causal mechanisms lead to concrete contingent conditions which include local variations and timing of events. These, in turn, manifest themselves in risk events. Poverty and vulnerability are understood here as only two of the many causal events within a broader environmental risk.

Figure 2.1: Dimensions of risk



Source: Oelofse, 2003: 266

Dercon (2001: 3) categorises vulnerability into four quite different, groups:

- the permanently poor – these groups include the penurious groups; groups who would prove very difficult to salvage from poverty and who may perpetually be on welfare,
- those becoming permanently poor in the future due to some trend evolution such as structural changes of economic forces (like planned retrenchments and restructuring),
- those that are likely to become poor due to predictable events (such as seasonality), and
- those likely to become poor due to risk and shocks.

While the focus is mostly on the last group, the other groups, including those facing seasonality, should not be excluded (Dercon, 2001: 3).

Table 2.2: Risk factors

Into poverty	Out of poverty
<p><b><u>Personal</u></b>            Lower wages            Unemployment            On-the-job injury or illness            Rejection            Exploitation            Old age, frailty and dependency</p>	<p>Higher wages            Employment            Restoration of physical wellbeing            Acceptance            Fairness            Youth strength and independence</p>
<p><b><u>Familial</u></b>            Death of breadwinner            Family dissolution            Increased family size            Drop in net worth</p>	<p>Replacement of breadwinner            Family (re-)formation            Decrease in family size            Rise in net worth</p>

Source: O'Boyle (1998: 1413)

Table 2.2 shows some of the risk factors that cause people to fall into poverty and those that assist people out of poverty. The factors have been divided into personal and family groups. Factors like low-wages (due many times to temporary, menial types of jobs), unemployment and exploitation are personal risk-factors likely to force people into poverty, while increase in family size and the death of breadwinners are family-related factors that decrease family-based safety nets and increase the poverty risk.

### 2.2.8 Poverty issues – a recap

The section above presented a few issues normally considered in many studies on poverty. Issues such as objectivity and subjectivity, vulnerability and risk, urban and rural poverty all form part of the study of poverty. The main problem with these issues is the fact that they are mostly considered on their own,

independent of each other. Razafindrakoto and Roubaud (2003: 1) are of the opinion that different concepts and indicators exist alongside each other, without the links between them being clearly set out: monetary poverty, penury of capabilities, social exclusion, absolute and relative poverty, and objective and subjective poverty. This seeming confusion stems from the fact that poverty is a complex and multi-faceted phenomenon, the dimensions of which are neither all obvious nor simplistic. Thornton, Kruska, Henninger, Kristjanson, Reid, Atieno, Odero, and Ndegwa (2002: 34) state that it is now generally agreed that human well-being has many dimensions, and that poverty can be defined as a pronounced deprivation in well-being. In this thesis the issues listed above (such as social exclusion) are taken as latent issues to poverty, underlying and exacerbating it. They are not seen as detached nor are they treated separately. Addressing poverty is seen as simultaneously addressing these issues.

This thesis is based on material poverty that refers to lack of capabilities, including income. The World Bank 's (2001: 1-2) definition, namely that poverty constitutes a lack of command over commodities in general deemed essential to constitute a reasonable standard of living in a society, or lack of ability to function in a society, is used in this thesis.

### **2.3 Measurements of poverty and inequality**

This section focuses discussion on the measurement and the tools for measurement of poverty and inequality. Wright (1996: 3) claims that there is much debate concerning how one measures poverty. To arrive at an estimate of poverty, a series of difficult measurement choices must be made. There seems to be generally no disagreement over the fact that poverty needs to be measured. Twohey (2000: 1216) points out that everyone in social policy and politics recognizes the importance of poverty measurements and their impact has stirred a vigorous debate within the social science community. It is therefore important to measure poverty and inequality. The World Bank (2001: 3) points out that an analysis of poverty is an attempt at addressing the following pertinent questions (also see Lamale (1965: 822) and Kakwani (1993:632)):

- How many people are poor and what is the extent of this poverty? This question calls for the measurement of poverty and its severity. In this thesis the headcount index and the poverty gap index will be used to calculate the number of the poor and severity of poverty in Evaton West.
- Who is poor? This question calls for a development of a poverty profile. Such a profile will be developed for Evaton West using household and community indicators of poverty in Chapter 4.
- Why are the poor poor? This question raises the need for investigation into the determinants and causes of poverty. This question falls beyond the scope of this thesis.
- What happens to poverty if...? This question points to policy implications and alternatives in dealing with poverty. An example of an application of this question will be presented in the Addendum to Chapter 6 dealing with the Basic Income Grant.

### **2.3.1 Measuring poverty**

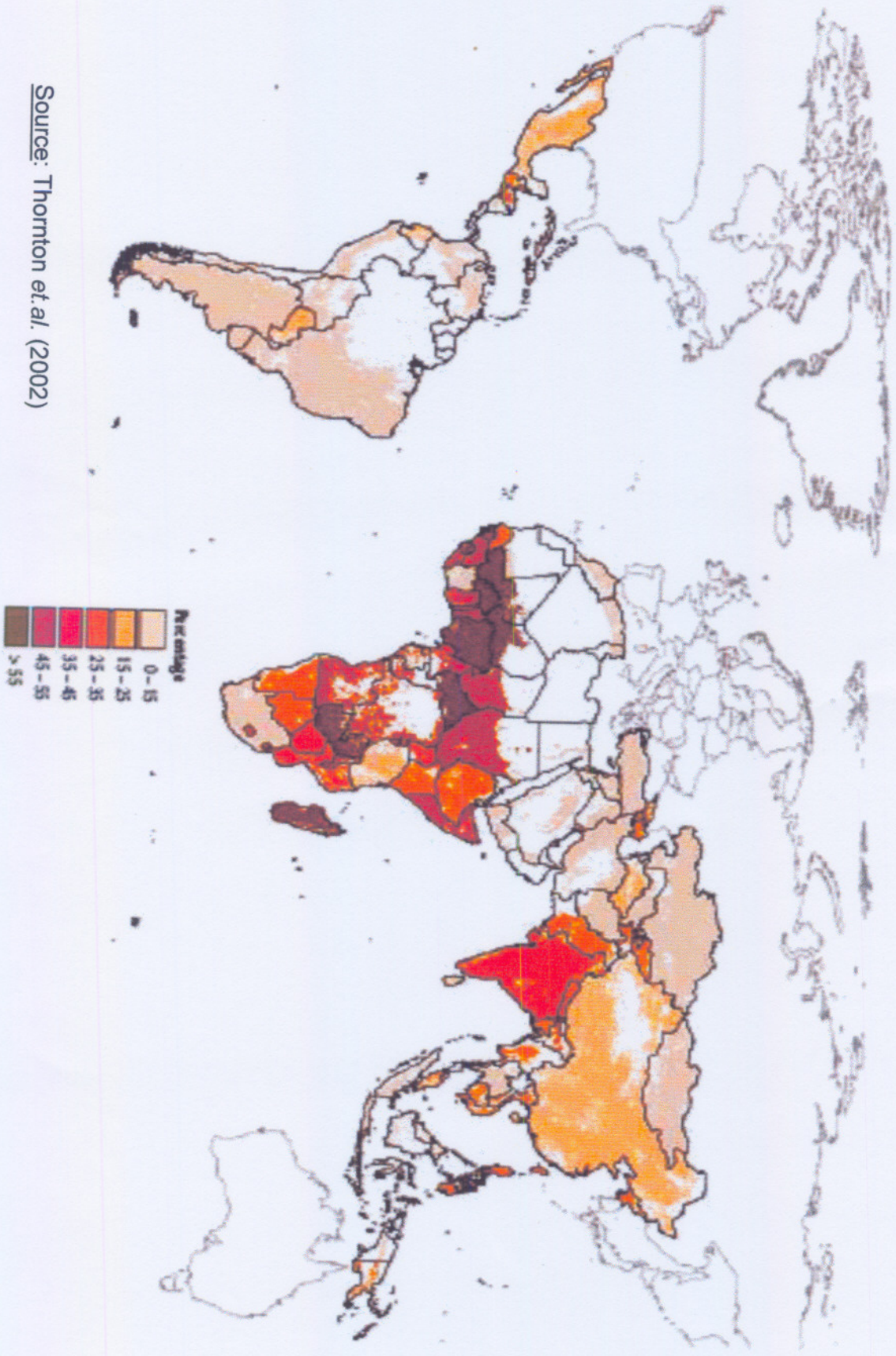
There are many documented measures of poverty available to researchers and policy-makers that require a clear sense of purpose and intent before being implemented. Many works on the subject (for example Sen (1981), Ravallion (1978), Myles & Picot (2000) and Hagenaars (1987)) have developed a plethora of methods each with a specific purpose for measuring poverty. Kakwani (1993: 632) makes the point that to formulate an adequate programme to combat poverty, it is essential to identify the poor and measure the intensity of their poverty. Only a few of the most popular methods are discussed below. *The methods employed in this thesis will be indicated where they are discussed.*

#### **2.3.1.1 Poverty lines**

Poverty lines are probably the best known and most used of all poverty measures. The Economist (1998: 16) stated that "The best-known measure is the "poverty line", the amount of income below which a family is deemed to be in poverty". Many countries have developed contextual poverty lines to assess levels of poverty in each country.



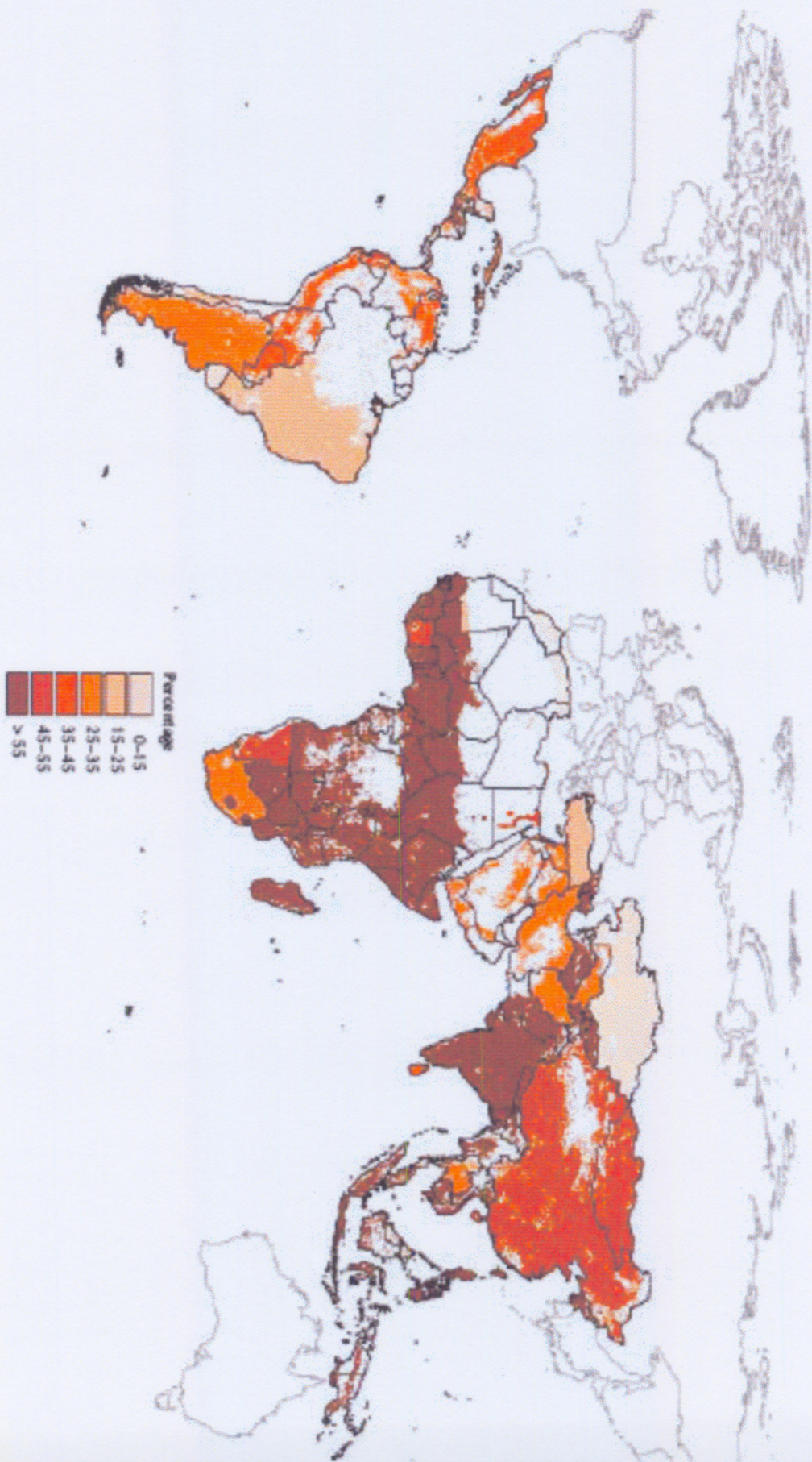
Map 2.1 : Population below the poverty line (%): less than US\$ 1 per day



Source: Thornton et.al. (2002)



Map 2.2: Population below the poverty line (%): less than US\$ 2 per day



Source: Thornton et al. (2002)

Perhaps the best known poverty lines are the US\$1 per day and the US\$2 per day lines used by the World Bank to compare poverty among different countries. Curtain (2002: 6) states that “the original definition of US\$1 a day came from the [1991 work of Martin Ravallion and others] who used “perceptions of poverty” in the poorest countries to place the poverty line at US\$31 per month”. The US\$1 a day line has since been adopted by the World Bank as the “official” definition of ‘absolute poverty’. The lines are based on the purchasing power parities (PPPs) between countries.

The previous two pages contain the poverty maps of the world depicting the ratios of the population living below the two poverty lines (US\$1 and US\$2 per day lines). Map 2.1 shows the global distribution of the population living below US\$1 per day and Map 2.2 shows the distribution of the world population living below US\$2 per day. The maps (sourced from Thornton *et al.* (2002)) show that Sub-Saharan Africa and India are the poorest regions using these two measures. Apart from the concept of an absolute poverty line, there are also several attempts at relative poverty lines.

*This thesis will employ a poverty line for household-level measurement of poverty. The methodology used in the thesis is outlined in Annexure 5.*

### **2.3.1.2 Minimum Income Question (MIQ)**

The so-called Minimum Income Question (MIQ) refers to the question normally posed to the poor, requiring them to estimate the income level at which they would consider themselves non-poor. This question has been refined several times to attempt to receive as accurate information as possible from respondents. The information received is then used to construct a subjective poverty line. Pradhan and Ravallion (1998: 4-6) stated that past empirical work had found that the expected value of the answer to the MIQ conditional on income tends to be an increasing function of income. The MIQ gives a relationship such as that depicted in Figure 2.2, which gives a stylized representation of the regression function on income for answers to the MIQ (Pradhan and Ravallion 1998: 4-6). The point z in the figure represents a poverty

line; people with income above  $z^*$  tend to feel that their income is adequate, while those below  $z^*$  tend to feel that it is not.  $z^*$  is then the "subjective poverty line". Pradhan and Ravallion (1998: 4-6) state:

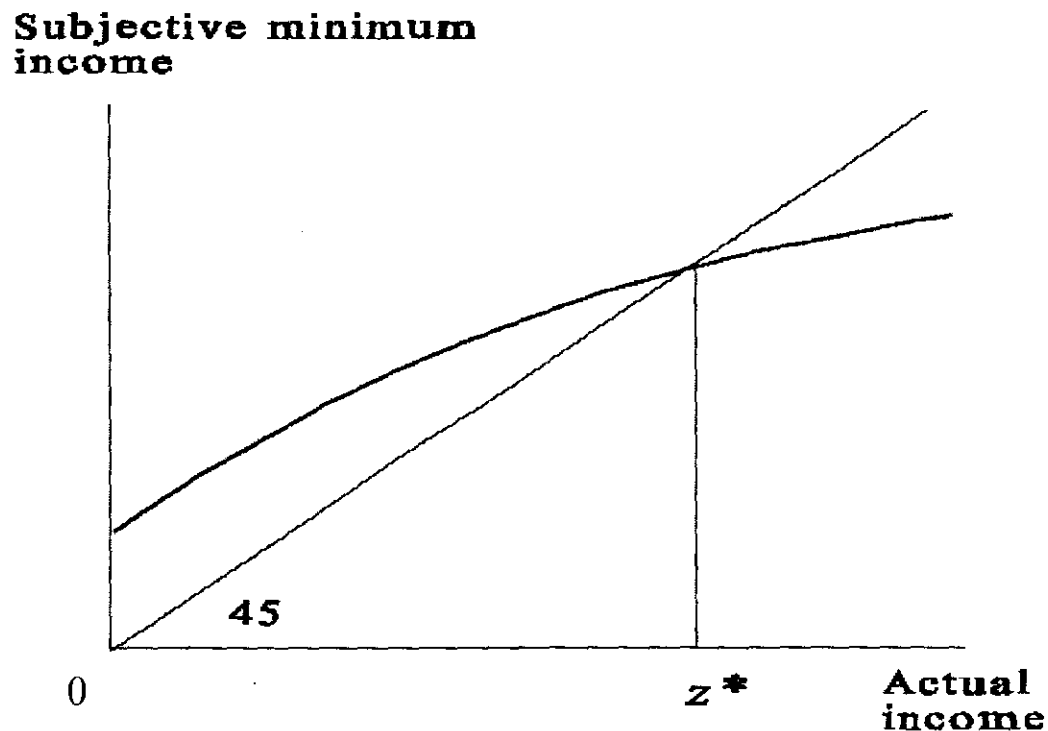
While the MIQ has been applied in a number of OECD countries, we know of no attempts to apply it in a developing country. There are a number of potential pitfalls in doing so. "Income" is not a well-defined concept in most developing countries, particularly (but not only) in rural areas. It is not at all clear whether or not one could get sensible answers to the MIQ. The qualitative idea of the "adequacy" of consumption is a more promising one in a developing country setting.

Razafindrakoto and Roubaud (2003: 6) submit that a subjective poverty line can be calculated on the basis of the minimum income that households regard as necessary to "make ends meet" (Minimum Income Question - MIQ). Normally, the replies to this question are an increasing function of actual income. They give the following equation for such a line:

$$\ln(Y_{min}) = k + a \ln(Y) + bZ + gm + ds + e$$

Where  $Y_{min}$  is the household's reply to the MIQ,  $Z$  are the characteristics of the household (size, age, number of children)  $m$  and  $s$  are the mean and standard deviation of the log incomes in a population used as reference and  $k, a, g, d$  and  $e$  are constant co-efficients of the variables.

Figure 2.2: Subjective minimum income and actual income



Source: Pradhan and Ravallion (1998: 26)

For South Africa, it is usually Minimum Living Level (MLL) that is accepted as the poverty line in many studies on poverty. Landman, Borat, Van Der Berg and Van Aardt (2003: 4) says: "for South African purposes we would take the minimum living level (MLL) as the cut-off point, below which people live in poverty. In March 2003, this was taken as R1 871 for a household of 4,7 people as determined by the Bureau of Marketing Research in March 2003." Adjusted to Rand values for 2000, that would imply an income of R1 489 per month per household of 4,7 people.

*The MIQ is employed in this thesis. It has been used to calculate the subjective (or felt) poverty in Chapter 4.*

### 2.3.1.3 Poverty indices

The measurement of poverty has been revived by works such as Sen (1976), leading to a constant flow of academic interest on the axiomatic foundations and the design of poverty indices (Tsui 2000: 69-70). In developing tools for the



measurement of poverty, Tsui (2000: 69-70) further points out that poverty measurement is conceptualised as consisting of the identification of the poor and the aggregation of the data on poverty into an overall index. The indices listed below have been sourced from the most prominent works on the subject, particularly those of Chaubey (1995), Clark, Hemming and Ulph (1981), Sen (1981), Atkinson (1991), Foster, Greer and Thorbecke (1984) and Duclos and Grégoire (2003). Not all the indices outlined are employed in this study.

#### 2.3.1.4 The headcount index

The headcount index is the most basic measure of poverty. The headcount index is simply the percentage of individuals (or households or families) in a population which is poor (Wright 1996: 3). The formula for the headcount index is given in equation (2.1).

$$H_0 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N b(y_i \leq z) = \frac{N_p}{N} \quad (\text{World Bank, 2000}) \dots \dots \dots (2.1)$$

where  $N$  is the total number of members in the population,  $y_i$  is the income of the  $i$ -th individual (or household),  $z$  is the poverty line and  $N_p$  is the number of the poor members.  $b$  is the indicator function that takes the value 1 if the expression in the bracket is true and 0 if it is false (World Bank 2000). This measure's attraction is its ease of construction and straightforward interpretation. The measure has nevertheless been widely criticized by researchers, notably by Chaubey (1995: 48) for not evaluating the depth of poverty.

The headcount index is employed in the calculation of poverty in this thesis. It is used to calculate the number (percentage) of the poor from a predetermined poverty line. Annexure 5 shows the methodology. The higher the index, the higher the number of the poor in relation to the whole population. The index therefore shows the extent of poverty within a given population.

### 2.3.1.5 The poverty gap and the squared poverty gap indices

The poverty gap index measures the extent to which the poor fall below the given poverty line, i.e. it measures the depth of poverty. It can be given by the following formula (2.2).

$$I_o = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{(z - y_i).b(y_i \leq z)}{z} \dots\dots\dots(2.2)$$

where the variables assume the same meanings as in (2.1) above. The expression:  $(z - y_i).b(y_i \leq z)$  expresses the poverty gap, that is the difference between the poverty line  $z$  and the income of the poor,  $y_i$ . The poverty gap index shows how much would need to be transferred to the poor within a given time period, like a monthly as in the Basic Income Grant (BIG) (in the absence of transaction costs) to get them out of poverty (above the poverty line). The poverty gap index is also not without criticism. The poverty gap and the poverty gap index are used in this thesis to determine the depth of poverty in Evaton West.

A measure related to the poverty gap index is what is termed the squared poverty gap index. The use of this measure is in highlighting the inequality among the poor themselves. It is the weighted poverty gap index, using the poverty gap as the weighting index. It is expressed as follows:

$$I_2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N \left[ \frac{(z - y_i).b(y_i \leq z)}{z} \right]^2 \dots\dots\dots(2.3)$$

This measure is not as widely used as the two above, mainly due to its difficulty of interpretation. It is also not use in this thesis.

### 2.3.1.6 Examples of other poverty indices

Poverty and welfare indices have received much attention, especially with the advent of the work by Sen (1976). This led to Duclos and Makdissi (1999: 2) commenting that the last decades had seen considerable developments of the methods that could be used to make comparisons of welfare distributions more robust to the choice of ethical indices. Earlier works focused on inequality measurement and social welfare, but the more recent literature has also pointed out that similar robustness is desirable for poverty measurement. Only a few of the most prominent indices are discussed in this section.

Sen (in Wright, 1996: 4) described three properties that a good summary index of poverty should possess and be sensitive to, namely, it must be sensitive to:

- (1) the relative number of poor, capturing the incidence of poverty;
- (2) the average level of income of the poor, indicating their average deprivation;
- (3) the distribution of income among the poor, indicating their degree of relative deprivation.

The following indices aimed at achieving these 'ideals'.

#### 2.3.1.6.1 Sen's index

Xu and Osberg (2002: 2) point out that the Sen indices are based on a set of well-justified and commonly-agreed axioms. However, although from a policy point of view it is also desirable to understand the meaning of the Sen indices in terms of social welfare evaluation, the social evaluation function that the Sen indices jointly share has not yet been explicitly summarised in the literature. The Sen index takes the following form:

$$P_s = P_0 \left( 1 - (1 - G^p) \frac{\mu^p}{z} \right) \dots \dots \dots (2.4)$$

Where  $P_0$  represents the headcount index,  $\mu^p$  is the mean income of the poor,  $z$  is the poverty line and  $G^p$  is the Gini co-efficient of inequality of income among the poor. There are other indices within this class which are variations of this basic index. Since this index has desirable ethical properties and is multiplicatively decomposable, it and its decomposed components can be readily used to measure the multi-dimensional impacts of anti-poverty policy actions (Xu & Osberg, 2002: 2). The Sen indices do not lend themselves readily to interpretation and are therefore primarily academic. These are not used in the thesis.

### 2.3.1.6.2 Foster, Greer and Thorbecke (FGT) poverty index

Foster, Greer and Thorbecke (FGT) (1984) present a class of poverty indices which is both practically useful and theoretically appealing (DeFina, 2000: 1). The general FGT class of indices can take the forms as represented by (2.5) (Jha & Sharma, 2003: 3) for a continuous distribution or (2.6) (Wright, 1996: 5) for a discrete distribution of the population income subgroups.

$$P_\alpha = \int_0^q \left( \frac{z-y}{z} \right)^\alpha dy \dots\dots\dots(2.5)$$

and

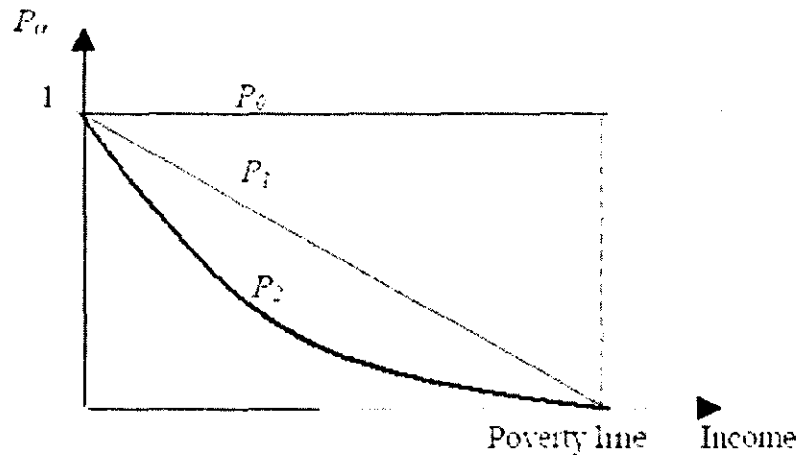
$$P_\alpha = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^q \left[ \frac{(z-y_i)}{z} \right]^\alpha \dots\dots\dots(2.6)$$

where  $\alpha$  is a measure of sensitivity of the index to poverty. The most common values of  $\alpha$  are 0, 1 and 2. The effect of the different values of  $\alpha$  can be shown graphically as in Figure 2.3. The figure depicts the  $P_\alpha$  measure in relation to income for one individual. For  $P_0$ , the relation with income is constant. The measure accords the same weight to the richest of the poor as it does to the poorest of the poor. Thus, the sum of each individual's  $P_0$  is simply the headcount ratio. The second measure,  $P_1$ , has a linear and decreasing relation with income. Since the income gap grows larger, more importance is given to the poorest and less to the richest in the poverty measure. The last measure quantifies the aversion of the society towards poverty; from the figure,  $P_2$  is



strictly convex in income. This implies that the measure attaches greater importance to the poorest and less to the wealthy in a quadratic fashion (Decaluwé, Patry & Savard 1998: 7).

Figure 2.3: Effects of the values of  $\alpha$



Source: Decaluwé, Patry and Savard (1998: 7)

This set of indices is implied but not overtly or explicitly used in this thesis.

### 2.3.1.6.3 Costa's index of deprivation

Costa (2002: 3) developed a measure that should carry appeal due to the fact that it measures not only relative deprivation, but social exclusion as well. The measure is shown by (2.7).

$$\mu_B(a_i) = \frac{\sum_{j=1}^m x_{ij} w_j}{\sum_{j=1}^m w_j} \dots\dots\dots(2.7)$$

The poverty ratio of the *i*-th household  $\mu_B$ , *i.e.*, the degree of membership of the *i*-th household to the fuzzy set *B* is defined as the weighted average of  $x_{ij}$ , where  $w_j$  is the weight attached to the *j*-th attribute. The poverty ratio  $\mu_B$  measures the degree of poverty of the *i*-th household as a weighting function of the *m* attributes. Hence, it measures the relative deprivation, degree of social exclusion,

and insufficient capability of the  $i$ -th household to reach a living standard of the society to which it belongs. (Costa, 2002: 3). This index is not used in the thesis.

#### 2.3.1.6.4 Sen-Shorrocks-Thon (SST) index

The Sen-Shorrocks-Thon (SST) index is a modification of the Sen index. It is the product of the headcount index, the poverty gap index of the poor and a term with the Gini co-efficient of the poverty gap index. It can be shown as in (2.8).

$$P_{SST} = P_0 P_1^p (1 + \hat{G}^p) \dots \dots \dots (2.8)$$

The index is useful for cross-country and provincial comparisons as applied by authors like Xu and Osberg (1999). This index is not employed in this study.

#### 2.3.1.6.5 Watts index

The Watts index is an additive poverty measure that is distribution sensitive and takes the form of (2.9).

$$W = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N \log\left(\frac{z}{y_i}\right) \dots \dots \dots (2.9)$$

The Watts index is not employed in the study.

#### 2.3.1.6.6 Atkinson class of indices

The general class of additive measures encompassing the Watts index, the FGT and other measures can be expressed generally as follows:

$$P = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N p(z, y_i) \dots \dots \dots (2.10)$$

where  $p(z, y_i)$  is zero for the non-poor (i.e. where  $y_i \geq z$ ) and some positive number for the poor, the value of which is a function of both the poverty line and the individual living standard, non-decreasing in the former and non-increasing in the

latter (World Bank, 2000). This class is implied but not explicitly used in the study.

### 2.3.2 Measures of inequality

Measuring income inequality is an important aspect of the evaluation of welfare. The reason is that income or 'equivalent income' is taken as a proxy for welfare and it follows that income inequality is seen as synonymous to welfare inequality, a performance index of society (Ferrer-i-Carbonell & Van Praag, 2001: 2). According to Litchfield (1999: 2), Chaubey (1995: 58-69) and Hagenaars (1987: 584-586), a good inequality index (measure) will contain most of the following axioms:

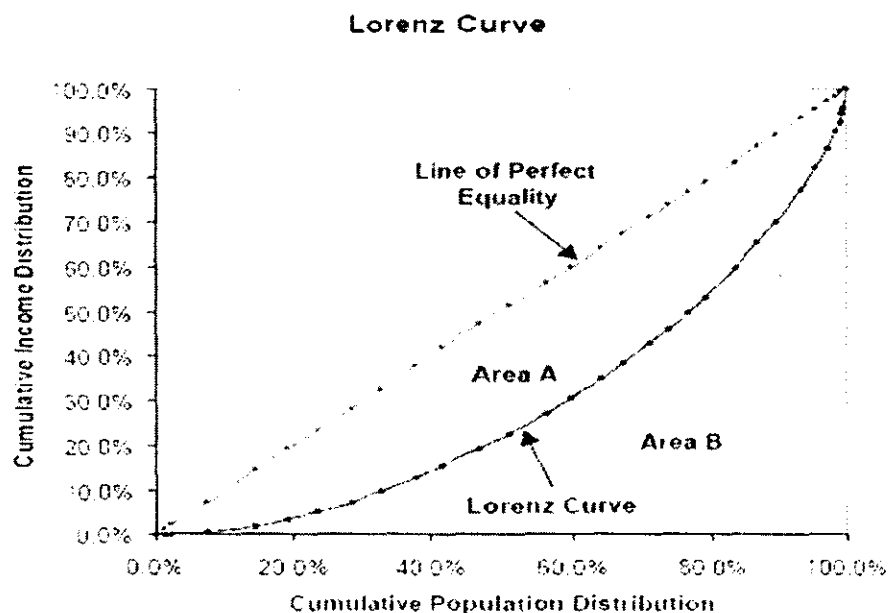
- *The Pigou-Dalton Transfer Principle.* This axiom requires the inequality measure to rise (or at least not fall) in response to a mean-preserving spread; an income transfer from a poorer person to a richer person should register as a rise (or at least not as a fall) in inequality and an income transfer from a richer to a poorer person should register as a fall (or at least not as an increase) in equality. What it points to is that a redistribution of wealth or income from the 'haves' to the 'have-nots' should not leave both poorer, inequality should be reduced and at least one person should be better-off than before.
- *Income Scale Independence.* This requires the inequality measure to be invariant to uniform proportional changes: if each individual's income changes by the same proportion (as happens when changing currency unit) then inequality should not change.
- *Principle of Population.* The population principle requires inequality measures to be invariant to replications of the population: merging two identical distributions should not alter inequality.
- *Anonymity.* The axiom – sometimes also referred to as "Symmetry", requires that the inequality measure be independent of any characteristics of individuals other than their income (or the welfare indicator whose distribution is being measured).

- *Decomposability*. This requires overall inequality to be related consistently to constituent parts of the distribution, such as population sub-groups. For example, if inequality is seen to rise amongst each sub-group of the population then we would expect inequality overall to also increase.

### 2.3.2.1 The Lorenz curve and the Gini co-efficient

The Lorenz curve is a graphical representation of inequality of incomes (or any other measure, e.g. consumption). To construct a Lorenz curve in the context of income inequality, incomes are first ordered from lowest to highest. The Lorenz curve is obtained by plotting cumulative income shares against cumulative percentages of the population. For this purpose, homogeneous grouping of the population (deciles or quintiles) is used. Population deciles (or quintiles) are normally plotted against income deciles (or quintiles). For example, if the 20 percent of the population who have the lowest incomes collectively have a five percent share of the total income, the point (20%,5%) lies on the Lorenz curve. (Lampard 2000: 2). An example of the Lorenz curve is shown in Figure 2.4.

Figure 2.4: The Lorenz curve



Source: Adapted from Xu and Osberg (2001: 82)

The Gini co-efficient is a measure of monetary inequality. It expresses Area A in Figure 2.4 (the area between the Lorenz curve and the diagonal line of perfect equality) as a fraction of the total triangle under the diagonal (Area A + Area B). In a perfectly equal society, there is no area between the curve and the diagonal and the Gini co-efficient is zero. In a perfectly unequal society, where one individual or household has all the income and all the others have nothing, the area between the curve and the diagonal equals the triangle and the Gini co-efficient is equal to one (Budlender 2000: 83 & 87). For all other unequal distributions, the co-efficient will lie between 0 and 1. Litchfield (1999: 5) expresses the Gini co-efficient as in (2.11).

$$Gini = \frac{1}{2n^2\bar{y}} \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n |y_i - y_j| \dots\dots\dots(2.11)$$

Where  $n$  is the size of the population,  $y_i$  is the income of individual  $i$ ,  $i \in (1,2,\dots,n)$ , and  $\bar{y} = (1/n) \sum y_i$ , the arithmetic mean income. The Gini co-efficient, although popular as a measure of comparisons between and within nations, falls short of two of the stated principles or axioms. The first is the principle of decomposability, i.e. the sum of parts (like Gini's of subgroups of the population) adding up to the whole. The Gini co-efficient is not decomposable or additive across groups. The second is statistical testability, that is, testing for significance of changes of the Gini co-efficient over time (World Bank, 2000).

*Both the Lorenz curve and the Gini co-efficient are used in this thesis to measure income inequality in Evaton West.*

**2.3.2.2 Other generalized entropy measures**

The class of inequality measures that satisfies all six axioms above are given by Litchfield (1999: 3) and take the (2.11) general form.

$$GE(a) = \frac{1}{a(a-1)} \left[ \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N \left( \frac{y_i}{\bar{y}} \right)^a - 1 \right] \dots\dots\dots(2.12)$$

Where GE stands for general entropy,  $\frac{1}{n} \sum y_i$   $\bar{y}$  is the mean income. The values of GE vary from 0 to  $\infty$  with zero representing an equal distribution and higher values more inequality. This agrees with Blackburn (1999: 4) stating that there is a continuum of inequality, increasing from zero towards infinity. The limiting point at zero is what is defined as equality, while the rest of the range is inequality.

Litchfield (1999) and the World Bank (2000) point out that the parameter  $a$  represents the weight given to distances between incomes at different parts of the income distribution, and can take any real value. For lower values of  $a$ , GE is more sensitive to changes in the lower tail of the distribution, and for higher values, GE is more sensitive to changes that affect the upper tail. The commonest values of  $a$  used are 0, 1 and 2. Hence a value of  $a=0$  gives more weight to distances between incomes in the lower tail,  $a=1$  applies equal weights across the distribution, while a value of  $a=2$  gives proportionately more weight to gaps in the upper tail.

The GE measures with parameters 0 and 1 become two of Theil's measures of inequality, the mean log deviation (or Theil's T-index) and the Theil index (or Theil's L-index) respectively, as follows (Litchfield 1999: 3):

Theil's T

$$GE(1) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{y_i}{\bar{y}} \ln\left(\frac{y_i}{\bar{y}}\right) \dots\dots\dots(2.13)$$

and Theil's L

$$GE(0) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N \ln\left(\frac{\bar{y}}{y_i}\right) \dots\dots\dots(2.14)$$

The two Theil measures shown above, are shown practically in the example in Table 2.3. The table shows the two indices and the Gini co-efficient for South

Africa in 1995 and compares these with the figures for 2000. The Gini co-efficient shows a slight increase in inequality from 0.64 in 1995 to 0.67 in 2000. Both the other measures also confirm this both for the within - and the between racial groups measurements.

The GE measures are not explicitly calculated for Evaton West in this thesis.

Table 2.3: Measures of total inequality and between and within racial group inequality in South Africa: 1995 & 2000

Inequality type	GE(0) Theil L	GE(1) Theil T	Gini
1995			
Total Inequality	0.81	0.83	0.64
Within Group Inequality	0.53	0.50	
Between Group Inequality	0.28	0.33	
Within Group %	0.65	0.61	
Between Group %	0.35	0.39	
2000			
Total Inequality	0.94	0.93	0.67
Within Group Inequality	0.69	0.61	
Between Group Inequality	0.25	0.32	
Within Group %	0.73	0.65	
Between Group %	0.27	0.35	

Source: Lam and Leibbrandt (2003: 23)

### 2.3.2.3 Stochastic dominance

Stochastic dominance deals with ranking of distributions into cumulative distribution functions (CDF). Quisumbing, Haddad and Peña (1995:10) point out that application of the theory of stochastic dominance to poverty analysis permits a robust comparison by ranking distributions, which would not have been possible simply from the comparison of the mean and variance of the distributions. It also allows poverty comparisons to be made without prior specification of a poverty line. This statistical tool is used widely in a number of fields. Post (2001: 1), for example, states that the theory of stochastic dominance (SD) gives a systematic framework for analysing economic behaviour under uncertainty.

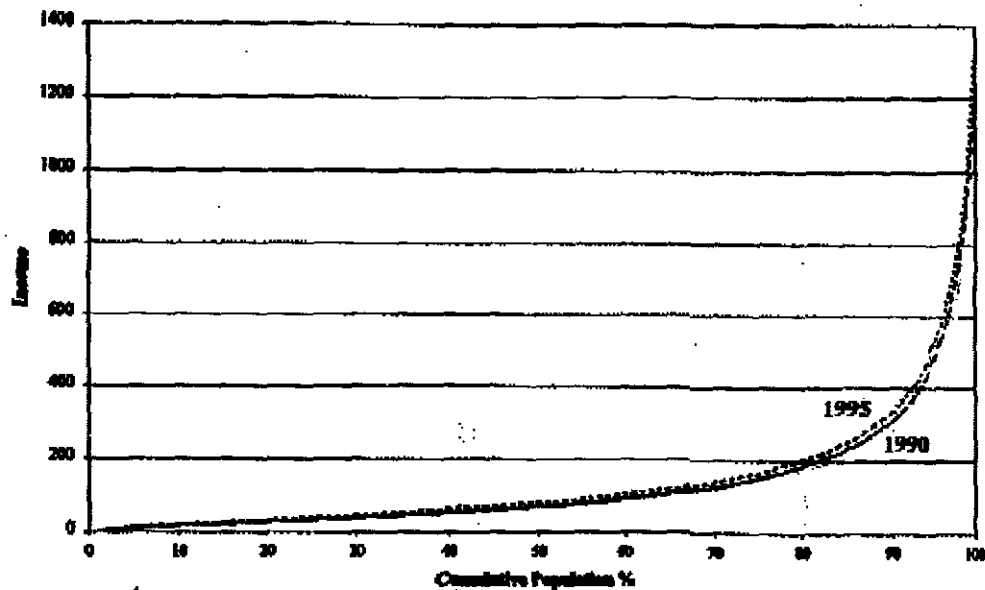
Stochastic dominance (SD) has seen considerable theoretical development and empirical application in the last decades, in various areas of economics, finance and statistics. Post (2001: 1) also states that SD is useful both for positive analysis (where the objective is to analyse the decision rules actually used by decision-makers) as well as in normative analysis (where the objective is to support practical decision making). Deaton (1997: 139) pointed out that in SD, consumers are treated as a continuum, so that instead of dealing with concepts such as the fraction of people whose consumption, for instance, is less than  $x$ , we think of  $x$  as being continuously distributed in the population with CDF  $F(x)$ .

### 2.3.2.3.1 First order stochastic dominance (FSD)

Litchfield (1999: 5-6), the World Bank (2002) and Deaton (1997) present the FSD as follows:

Given two income distributions  $y_1$  and  $y_2$  with cumulative distribution functions  $F(y_1)$  and  $F(y_2)$ . If  $F(y_1)$  lies nowhere above and at least somewhere below  $F(y_2)$  then distribution  $y_1$  displays first order stochastic dominance over distribution  $y_2$ :  $F(y_1) \leq F(y_2)$  for all  $y$ . Hence in distribution  $y_1$  there are no more individuals with income less than a given income level than in distribution  $y_2$ , for all levels of income. An example of FSD is shown in Figure 2.5.

Figure 2.5: First-order stochastic dominance



Source: Litchfield (1999: 5)



### 2.3.2.3.2 Second order stochastic dominance

The deficit functions (the integral of the CDF) of distributions  $y_1$  and  $y_2$  are now considered: If the deficit function of distribution  $y_1$  lies nowhere above and somewhere below that of distribution  $y_2$ , then distribution  $y_1$  displays second order stochastic dominance over distribution  $y_2$ :  $G(y_1, k) \leq G(y_2, k)$  for all  $y_k$ . The dual of the deficit curve is the Generalized Lorenz curve defined as:

$$GL(p) = \int_0^{y_k} y dF(y) \dots\dots\dots(2.15)$$

2.15 plots the cumulative income shares scaled by the mean of the distribution against cumulative population, where the height of the curve at  $p$  is given by the mean of the distribution below  $p$ . Second order dominance of distribution  $y_1$  over distribution  $y_2$  implies that any social welfare function that is increasing and concave in income will record higher levels of welfare in  $y_1$  than in  $y_2$ . It should now be apparent that second order stochastic dominance is therefore implied by first order stochastic dominance, although the reverse is not true. (Litchfield, 1999; World Bank, 2002; Deaton, 1997).

Stochastic dominance is not employed in this study.

### 2.3.3 Poverty profiles

The methods employed above have centred analysis on incomes / consumption. There are other tools of analysis that focus on non-income measurements. Measuring and ameliorating other dimensions of poverty, such as health, nutrition, housing and educational attainment, warrant equal attention (Sahn, 1999: 1). One tool that is used to account for such non-income measures, is the development of profiles of poverty based on countries, regions and households.

A poverty profile is a standard methodology to describe the nature and extent of poverty in a country or a region. As Datt, Jolliffe and Sharma (2001: 203) state, a poverty profile assesses the magnitude of poverty and its distribution across

geographic and socio-economic domains, provides information on the characteristics of the poor, illustrates the heterogeneity among the poor and helps identify the empirical correlates of poverty. Household surveys as well as community surveys are utilised to solicit information used on poverty profiles.

A word of caution need to be mentioned, namely that poverty profiles on their own may not be sufficient for an effective anti-poverty policy framework. There will always be a need to supplement them with other poverty measures. Tarp, Simler, Matusse, Heltberg and Dava (2002: 77) also pointed out that poverty measures and poverty profiles are used increasingly as guides in targeting resources for poverty reduction, but an allocation that is efficient according to one methodology may prove to be ineffectual under another. In order to supplement this, in the following sections some of the factors normally included in a typical poverty profile are discussed to bring balance to the discussion.

*The following indicators are all employed in this thesis to develop a profile for Evaton West.*

### **2.3.3.1 Demographic characteristics**

A number of characteristics may be included under demographic characteristics. The following are a few examples.

#### ***Household characteristics***

Household characteristics such as household size and composition (e.g. gender) are profiled in this section. It is important not to be quick to draw conclusions regarding causality between poverty and any characteristic within the profile, including household characteristics. White and Masset (2003: 106) also warn that misleading results linking household size and poverty thus do indeed affect other aspects of the poverty profile. This only serves to distort results.

There are, nevertheless, research-proven links between household characteristics and poverty, especially with regard to gender. Razavi (1999: 474)

agrees by stating: "... the links between gender and poverty have also been captured through the gender aggregation of well-being outcomes such as child mortality and nutrition, which has served to highlight significant female disadvantage".

### ***Dependency ratios***

Dependency ratios refer to the burden of the unemployed carried by the employed population. A dependency ratio is calculated as a ratio of the number of household members not employed to the number of those members who are employed (World Bank 2000). Higher ratios may be expected in poor than in non-poor households.

### ***Household head***

Works like those of Kossoudji and Mueller (1983) and Quisumbing, Haddad and Peña (1995) show that female-headed households experience more poverty than male-headed households, especially in Sub-Saharan Africa (Kossoudji and Mueller's (1983) research was, in fact, conducted in Botswana). Pressman (2003: 353) also states that it is well-known that women are much more likely to be poor than men in most developed nations, even though the causes of this phenomenon remains a matter of dispute.

### **2.3.3.2 Economic Characteristics**

Garfinkel and Haveman (1976) have shown a link between economic characteristics such as earning capacity and economic status and poverty. It is normally accepted that there *is* a link between employment status and poverty. These characteristics form an important part of most poverty profiles.

### ***Employment and unemployment***

Even though it is true that unemployment is normally taken as an important contributor to poverty, DeFina (2002) questions the link between unemployment and poverty and cautions against over-reliance on the lower unemployment

phenomenon as an anti-poverty strategy. The link between unemployment and poverty should not be assumed in any profiling process, but it should be tested.

### ***Income and expenditure***

Income is the singular most-used indicator of poverty. Garfinkel and Haveman (1976: 49) stated that whether or not a household is counted as poor depends on its annual money income. Most poverty lines are income-based. The link between income and poverty is therefore normally accepted. This link is also acknowledged in this thesis.

#### **2.3.3.4 Social Characteristics**

Social characteristics include such indicators as education, housing and health. Such indicators are also frequently used in poverty profiles.

### ***Education***

Education is one of the indicators of poverty that is almost always included in poverty profiles. De Gregorio and Lee (2002) have developed a measure of the effects of education on income inequality and therefore subsequently on poverty. They state that income distribution is related to the population's average schooling and its dispersion. Income inequality increases with education inequality. The Asian Development Bank (ADB) (2003) states: "The relationship between education and poverty reduction is clear. Education [leads to:] pro-poor sustainable economic growth, social development, and good governance".

### ***Health***

Health and poverty are linked. Health is an important indicator of poverty. Graham, Fitzmaurice, Bell and Cairns (2004: 24) point out that recognition of the synergy between health and poverty is now apparent in the development strategies of many low-income countries. The relationship between income inequality, health and poverty has been comprehensively studied and documented by Judge and Paterson (2001), stating (for example) that poverty

reinforces health-damaging behaviours. It has become evident that successful poverty reduction must include measures that specifically address health needs of the poor, such as through primary health care (Bloom & Lucas 2000: 3). It will therefore be expected that health feature prominently in most poverty profiles.

### ***Housing***

Housing/shelter is also accepted as an important indicator of poverty. In many developing countries, development strategies include housing as an important anti-poverty strategy. A previous Minister of Housing in South Africa, Minister Sankie Mthembu-Mahanyele, addressing the Round-Table on Sustainable African Cities as part of the World Summit on Sustainable Development in 2002, pointed out the importance of housing in development: Housing not only satisfies a basic need for shelter but also plays a critical role in economic development (South Africa, 2002: 7). This has led to the development of strategies like the People's Housing Programme (PHP) in South Africa.

#### **2.3.3.5 Access to services**

Access to social and engineering services has become very important in assessing levels of poverty. Electricity supply, water and reticulation services, communication services and roads are examples of services that have received attention as development indicators. Anas (2003) points out, for example, that poor, inefficient and unreliable states of infrastructure services pose a threat to fulfil targets laid down in the Interim-Poverty Reduction Strategy Paper (I-PRSP) and the Millennium Development Goals (MDG).

Table 2.4 is an example of an excerpt from a profile developed by the World Bank (1994) showing household amenities and services.

Table 2.4: Excerpt from South Africa: household welfare indicators

Indicator	Unit of measure	National total	Expenditure quintile											
			Rural					Urban						
			All	1	2	3	4	5	All	1	2	3	4	5
<b>Household amenities</b>														
Type of fuel for cooking														
Firewood	%	22	49	80	75	64	50	20	2	7	4	1	0	0
Gas, kerosine	%	24	23	14	15	23	31	26	25	55	41	30	18	7
Charcoal	%	5	5	1	5	8	8	4	4	11	9	5	3	0
Electricity	%	48	21	1	2	4	10	50	69	27	45	63	79	93
Other	%	1	2	3	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access to sanitation	%	84	77	53	65	76	78	90	89	64	82	88	96	99
Access to water														
Pipe/Borne	%	79	53	32	39	48	50	72	99	98	99	99	100	100
Well	%	10	22	40	30	25	22	12	0	0	1	0	0	0
Other	%	11	24	28	31	27	28	17	0	2	0	1	0	0
Owner occupancy rate	%	63	69	86	83	81	75	48	59	52	56	52	54	70

Source: World Bank (1994)

The above excerpt relates to the period 1993-1994 in South Africa (country profile) and shows that, for example, 84 percent of the population had access to sanitation with 99 percent in the 5<sup>th</sup> urban expenditure quintile (richest 20 percent) having access and only 53 percent of the poorest rural poor with such access.

### 2.3.4 Poverty in Africa

This section will very briefly outline a picture of poverty in Africa (especially Sub-Saharan Africa and South Africa. This section is meant to show a global picture and thus indicate the importance of research, discourse, strategies and policies to deal with this problem. An in-depth study falls beyond the scope of this study.

A cursory look at the literature on poverty confirms Sub-Saharan Africa as one of the regions suffering most from abject poverty in the world. UNDP (1997: 1) points out, for example, that Sub-Saharan Africa is the one region hardest hit by poverty: "... in general, its social development has not been able to keep pace with the strong population growth or to resist economic disaster, which has often been tied to armed conflicts and to environmental degradation". Across Africa,

millions of people are fighting their own war against poverty every day (Oxfam, 2003: 2).

The following brief facts highlight the problem (Oxfam, 2003: 2):

- More than half of sub-Saharan Africa's 600 million people still live on less than US\$1 a day.
- More than 28 million Africans are living with HIV/AIDS.
- Forty per cent of children never go to school in Africa – the only region in the world where the numbers of children out of school are rising.

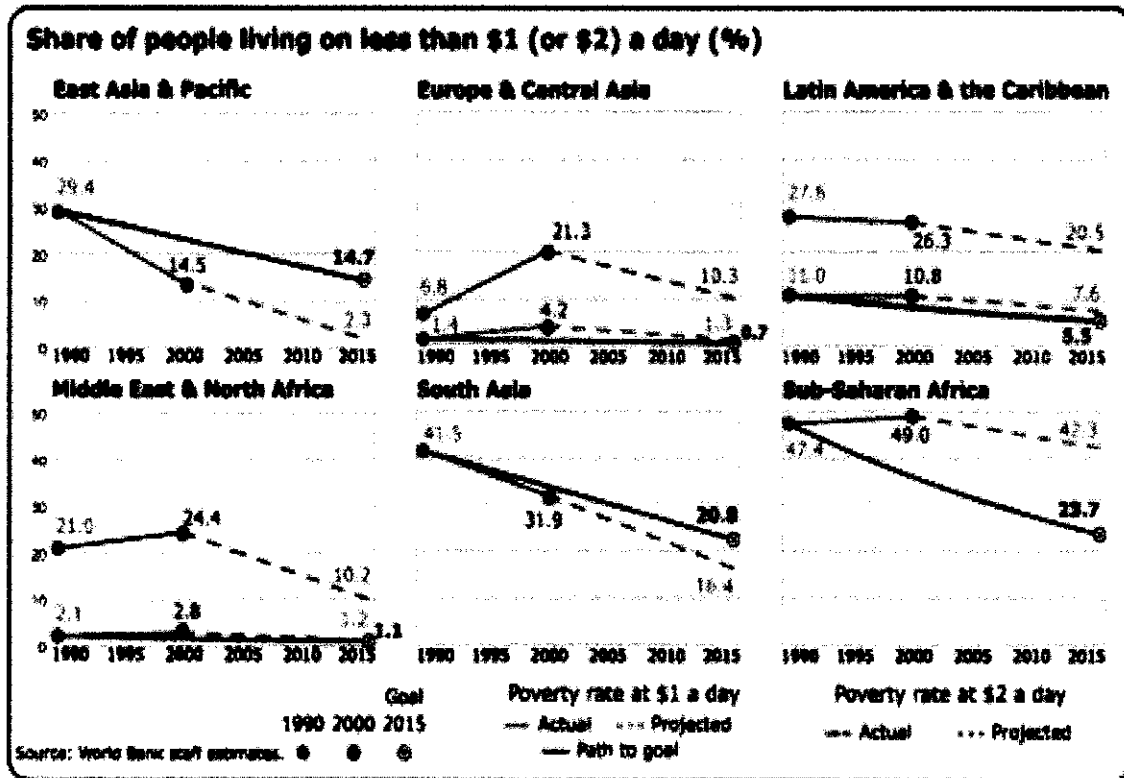
A comparative analysis of poverty across the different regions in the world is shown in Figure 2.6. The figure shows Sub-Saharan Africa as the region suffering most from severe levels of poverty. It also shows that poverty in Sub-Saharan Africa barely decreased between the years 1990 and 1999. The target for 2015 is to reduce poverty to 24 percent, which would still be higher than in all the other regions. Many writers on the subject have offered several explanations for this state of affairs; some of these are presented after Figure 2.6 as an illustration of perceptions related to the problem.

Shah (2001) sees the following as being some of the reasons for Africa's persistent poverty:

- *Food dumping*: The dumping of the surplus production for free or nearly no cost to poorer nations means that the farmers from such countries cannot compete and are driven out of jobs. The net effect of such policies on the poor is not clear-cut.
- *Hunger*: meaningful long-term alleviation of hunger is rooted in the alleviation of poverty, as poverty leads to hunger.
- *Structural Adjustment*: Many developing nations are in debt and poverty partly due to the policies of international institutions such as the International Monetary Fund (IMF) and the World Bank. Their programme have been heavily criticised for many years for resulting in poverty. This is despite the IMF and World Bank's claim that they will reduce poverty. This

assertion is a subject of ongoing debates that fall beyond the scope of this study.

Figure 2.6: Share of people living on less than US\$1 and US\$2 per day



Source: World Bank (2002)

Cheru (2002: 159-171) identifies the following problems which stem from urbanisation in Africa as linked to the state of affairs of African countries:

- *Urban-rural imbalance*: It is estimated that by the year 2020 more than 55 percent of the African population will live in urban areas. The existing economic base within African cities is hardly enough to support such levels of urbanisation. This leads to increased income-poverty levels in these cities together with persistent poverty in rural areas. Cheru (2002: 159)
- *Unmanageable levels of poverty*. Large proportions of the African population live in absolute poverty. Cheru (2002: 160) points out that poverty is increasingly becoming an urban phenomenon as those in the rural areas migrate to the cities.



- *An inappropriate regulatory framework:* The absence of an enabling macro-economic environment at national level and the persistence of inappropriate and outdated regulatory frameworks at local government level are problems plaguing African countries.
- *Weak municipal institutions and poor revenue base:* Cheru (2002: 162) argues that across Africa central government interventions have paid little attention to the critical responsibilities of local institutions such as the operation and maintenance of infrastructure. With narrow revenue bases and limited technical capacities, municipalities have been unwilling or unable to maintain infrastructure which they have not designed.

The United Nations developed the Millennium Development Goals (MDG) that are summarised in Table 2.5 (Panos, 2002:10). These are development goals set for developing countries and aimed to be achieved by the year 2015. The African Development Bank (2002: 1) pessimistically (gloomily) stated that few African countries are likely to meet most of these goals. The African Development Bank further asserts that African countries will need to act in the following three main areas if these goals are to be achieved:

- Deepening macroeconomic reforms, and enhancing domestic competitiveness and efficiency, as foundations for a favorable investment climate and pro-poor growth.
- Strengthening democratic institutions and systems of public budget and financial management to ensure that governments are accountable to their people, especially for the effective use of public resources.
- Investing adequate resources in human development.

Other possible solutions to the 'war on poverty' in Africa are provided by Oxfam (2003: 2-3). The key battlefields in the war on poverty are:

*"Trade:* the enormous harm being done by the subsidies rich Western countries pay their farm sectors to produce a glut of cheap food which is dumped on world markets, undercutting African farmers and robbing millions of their livelihoods.

*Aid:* the G8 must deliver on the promise made at the 2002 summit to devote an extra US\$6 billion a year in aid to Africa, and agree a timetable towards reaching the US\$25-35 billion a year which the UN estimates Africa will need if it is to meet the Millennium Goals.

*Debt:* the G8 must cancel the debts of African countries struggling to make repayments at the expense of their health and education systems, including delivering the full US\$1 billion top-up required for the HIPC (Heavily Indebted Poor Countries) trust fund used to cover the costs of granting debt relief”.

Table 2.5: United Nations International Development Goals (IDGs)

By 2015:	
1. Eradicate extreme poverty and hunger	Reduce by one half the proportion of people living on less than a dollar a day. Reduce by half the proportion of people who suffer from hunger.
2. Achieve universal primary education	Ensure that all boys and girls complete a full course of primary schooling.
3. Promote gender equality and empower women	Eliminate gender disparity in primary and secondary education preferably by 2005, and at all levels by 2015.
4. Reduce child mortality	Reduce by two-thirds the mortality rates for infants and children under five.
5. Improve maternal health	Reduce by three-quarters the maternal mortality ratio.
6. Combat HIV/AIDS, malaria and other diseases	Halt and begin to reverse the spread of HIV/AIDS.
	Halt and begin to reverse the incidence of malaria and other major diseases.
7. Ensure environmental sustainability	Integrate the principles of sustainable development into country policies and programmes, reverse the loss of environmental resources.
	Reduce by half the proportion of people without sustainable access to safe drinking water.
	Achieve significant improvement in the lives of at least 100 million slum dwellers, by 2020.
8. Develop a global partnership for development	Open trading system, special needs of less developed countries (LDCs), debt, employment, access to medicines, and information and communications technologies (ICTs)

Source: Panos (2002: 10)

Though Africa is hardest hit by escalating global poverty levels, much is being done in attempting to deal with this problem.

### **2.3.5 Poverty and inequality in South Africa**

South Africa celebrates its ten years of freedom and democracy in 2004. A great deal of development has taken place over the period. Nevertheless, poverty and inequality seem to have persisted over this period. Gibson (2001: 373) states: "Six years after the end of apartheid, why has so little changed in South Africa? How were the dreams of freedom and social and economic equality so quickly dashed?"

Much of this situation is seen as politically motivated. Southall (2003: 48), for example, states that:

"The ANC may now (at times) claim to have embraced social democracy, yet if it has, then it is a Blairite version which prioritises wealth-creation over welfare, and opportunity over equity. 'Black empowerment' is thus readily transformed into a black middle-class-enhancing construct which celebrates the non-racialisation of, rather than the abolition of, poverty and inequity. (The distribution of income in South Africa remains one of the [most unequal] in the world. Even though the proportion of the highest income group which is black has increased markedly over the last three decades, the proportion of households in the poorest four income groups that are African has also increased)."

StatsSA (2000: 1) states that the reduction of poverty and inequality has been a central concern of South Africa's government since 1994 (referring to the Reconstruction and Development Programme of the ANC (African National Congress 1994)). Yet quantitative description and analysis in this field have been slow to emerge. The main reason is that evidence had to be built up (mainly by Statistics South Africa) from a very limited historical base. A further problem with the measurement of poverty in South Africa was pointed out by Godsell and Buys (1992: 636) namely, the fact that *no national definition of poverty exists in South Africa*. Much research into poverty in South Africa has used various, mostly

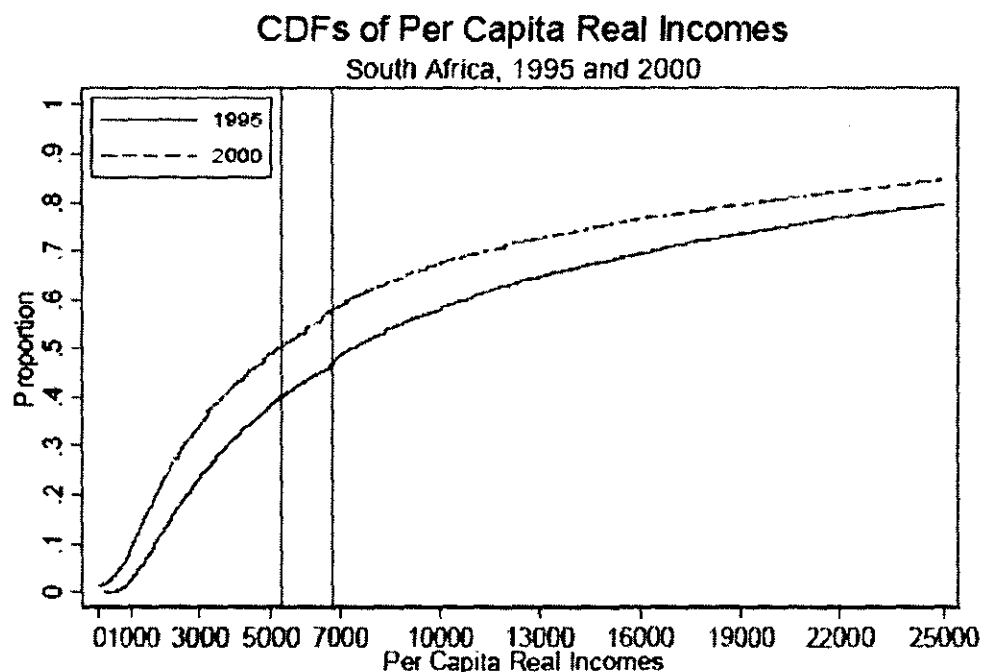
international measurements of poverty with little effort at national contextualisation. Estimates of the levels of poverty in the country therefore vary considerably.

This has been pointed out by Cheru (2001: 506) writing that: "Estimates of the incidence and depth of poverty in South Africa vary. Figures have ranged from over 56 percent of the population to just over 36 percent living in poverty." Based on consumption expenditure levels consistent with the minimum level of food intake, which usually defines the 'absolute poverty' level, it is estimated that about 40 percent of the South African population may be considered poor. Global Poverty Network (GPN) (2000: 6) concurs by stating that despite South Africa being an upper-middle-income country, its rate of poverty (a measure of the extent of absolute poverty) is 45 percent. This translates into 3,126,000 households or more than 18 million citizens.

The United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) (2000: 52) also agrees that South Africa's rate of poverty (a measurement of the extent of absolute poverty) is 45 percent. Klasen (2000), StatsSA (2000), May (2000) and other researchers have all attempted to measure poverty in SA with slightly varying results.

Insofar as inequality of income is concerned, Binns and Nel (2002: 10) state that "after decades of apartheid policies, the 'new' South Africa, which emerged under the leadership of Nelson Mandela after the first democratic elections in April 1994, remains one of the most unequal societies in the world. Both social and spatial inequalities are features of everyday life in South Africa". This assertion has been confirmed by a number of other research works on the subject (for example Gelb, 2003). Figure 2.7 shows the cumulative distribution functions (CDF) of incomes in South Africa for 1995 and 2000. The figure shows that income inequality has worsened over the period.

Figure 2.7: Continuous distribution functions of per capita real incomes



Source: Lam and Leibbrandt (2003: 21)

Global Poverty Network (GPN) (2000: 7) states that:

Measured by Gini co-efficient, inequality in South Africa is among the highest in the world. South Africa is ranked as the third most unequal society, surpassed only by Brazil and Guatemala. Between 1991 and 1996, the incomes of the poorest 50 percent fell by 21 percent. The incomes of the richest ten percent either held roughly constant or, in the case of the African top ten percent, increased substantially.

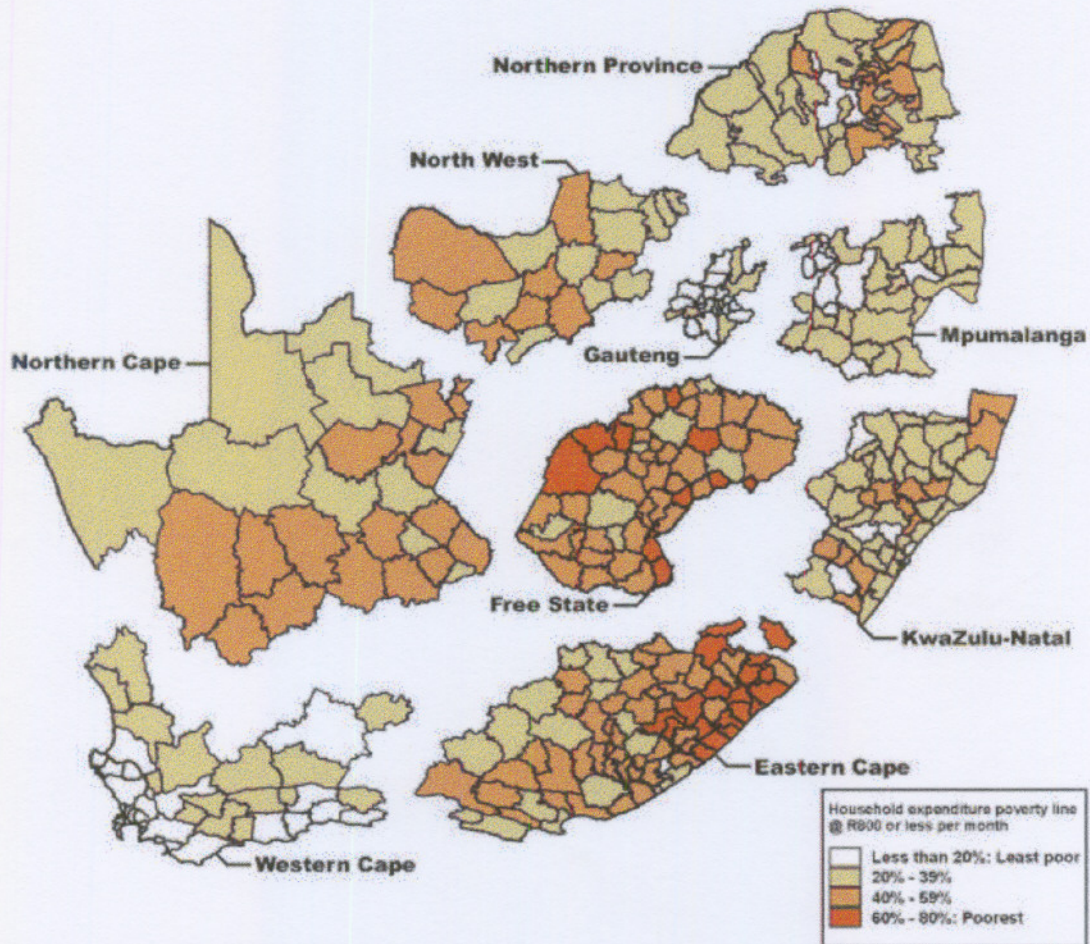
This inequality is seemingly racially-based; as Carter and May (1999: 1) state, the Human Development Index (HDI) for the "African" population of South Africa ranked between the HDI of Swaziland and Lesotho, while the HDI for whites was between that of Italy and Israel".

The following poverty map (Map 2.3) of South Africa shows the distribution of poverty across the country. This 2000 map shows that the Free State and the Eastern Cape provinces are the hardest hit by poverty. It also shows the Western



Cape and Gauteng provinces as the provinces with least incidences of poverty. The poverty line used was the R800 per month line for a family of 4 adult equivalents.

Map 2.3: Poverty distribution based on monthly expenditure, by magisterial district



Source: StatsSA (2000)

## 2.4 Community-driven development (CDD)

The terms 'community-driven development' and 'participatory community development' seem to be used interchangeably (also implying similar concepts) in the literature on the subject. Community-driven development has been defined in various ways by different writers on the subject. The Community Development Foundation (CDF) (2001) states that community development is a range of practices dedicated to increasing the strength and effectiveness of community

life, improving local conditions, especially for people in disadvantaged situations, and enabling people to participate in public decision-making and to achieve greater long-term control over their circumstances. This definition is premised on the idea that community development should be participatory and empowering to the beneficiary communities.

This approach is supported by Frank and Smith (1999: 6) who point out that community development is the planned evolution of all aspects of community well-being (economic, social, environmental and cultural). It is a process whereby community members come together to take collective action and generate solutions to common problems.

This approach differs markedly from the traditional approach to community development which viewed it as a top-down, authority-initiated process. As Das Gupta, Grandvoinnet and Roman (2001: 1) point out: "With growing awareness of the limitations of traditional "top-down" approaches for development and poverty reduction, interest has shifted to the potentially powerful role of the participation of communities in the planning and management of public sector service delivery at the local level." Sillitoe (2002: 1) calls this shift from emphasis on "top-down" interventions to a "grassroots" participatory perspective a revolution in pursuit of ethnography. This approach revolutionizes the way community development has been conceptualized and applied in the past.

Within the framework of CDD, community work can be seen as the process of assisting people improve their own communities by undertaking collective action (Twelvetrees, 2002: 1). This implies that community workers are seen as facilitators within this approach, they don't own the process of development. It also shows that community development start with individuals. There has to be individual involvement for collective action to succeed.

#### **2.4.1 Concept of Community-Driven Development**

This section briefly introduces the concept of community development especially community-driven development in general terms. Perhaps the most revealing

definition and ideological characterisation of participatory community development was coined by Siddiqui (2003: 1) who wrote that the main principle of participatory approaches is the belief that every individual, poor or rich, man or woman has the capacity to analyse his/her own reality and take action based on this analysis, given the opportunity. "For too many years now in the field of development we have approached our projects from a welfare and charity-based perspective, where we go with the notion that "we" (development workers) know best and have something to offer to "them" (beneficiaries)" (Siddiqui 2003: 1). This approach accepts that within each community there are individuals with knowledge, skills and innate potential to define their conditions and contribute tremendously to the upliftment of that community, *given the chance*. This approach is also an indictment of the erstwhile approach that believed, almost presumptuously, that community workers knew best what the community needed and how this should be provided.

The participatory community development approach accepts that the community has a primary role to play in development. It also accepts the inevitable role of the local government in such development. The participation of local government is essential, especially in funding initiatives the community identifies. This is confirmed by Binswanger and Aiyar (2003: 5) who state that community driven development is not a project. It is an approach that aims to empower communities and local governments with resources and the authority to use these flexibly, thus taking control of their development: This means that empowerment means the expansion of assets and capabilities of poor people to participate in, negotiate with and hold accountable institutions that affect their lives. It also means giving people access to voice and information, greater social inclusion and participation, greater accountability, and organisational strength.

The role of local government is also emphasized by the World Bank (2000) which pointed out that past experience suggests that decentralisation will not work without vibrant, participatory communities and that enhanced participation will, at some point, need a local government structure for sustainability: the two can evolve together dynamically, strengthening one another.



The primary aim of community (driven) development is poverty alleviation through the use of existing community social capital. This is confirmed by Dongier, Van Domelen, Ostrom, Ryan, Wakeman, Bebbington, Alkire, Esmail, and Polski (2003: 3): "Poor people are often viewed as the target of poverty reduction efforts. [Community-Driven Development], in contrast, treats poor people and their institutions as assets and partners in the development process. These groups often work in partnership with demand-responsive support organisations and service providers, including elected local governments, the private sector, NGOs, and central government agencies". Every community owns assets and capabilities that are essential in the process of development. Narayan and Petesch (1999: 463) have classified these assets and capabilities with examples of each in Table 2.6.

Table 2.6: Community assets and capabilities

<b>Asset or Capability</b>	<b>Examples</b>
Material Asset	Employment; Ownership of productive assets; land; house; savings; jewellery
Bodily Health	Freedom from hunger and diseases; strong, healthy-looking bodies
Bodily Integrity	Freedom from violence and abuse; sexual and reproductive choice; freedom of physical movement
Emotional integrity	Freedom from fear and anxiety; love
Respect and dignity	Self-respect; self-confidence; dignity
Social belonging	Belonging to a collective; honour, respect and trust within and across social groups
Cultural identity	Living in accordance with one's values; participation in rituals that have meaning; sense of cultural continuity.
Imagination, Information and Education	Inventiveness; informed and educated decision-making; literacy; entrepreneurship; problem-solving capacity; expressive arts
Organisational capacity	Ability to organise and mobilise; participation in representative organisations
Political representation and accountability	Ability to influence those in power; accountability of those in power.

Source: Narayan and Petesch (1999: 463)

Any attempt at community development should ideally begin with an investigation into such assets and capabilities as described above. Community development is never a smooth process: it is fraught with conflicts, controversies, disagreements and often suspicions. It depends on how the community handles and manages these whether their efforts at development will succeed. Lyons and Smuts (1998: 2153) pointed out: "Some writers on community agency and participation assume, indeed find, cohesive communities. These writers focus heavily on inter-agency conflicts of interest in service delivery. A small, but growing, body of opinion, however, suggests that conflict within communities may be at least as important, and that many people remain confused about the purpose of community involvement, while others are entering the participation process with quite different, and possibly conflicting, motivations and objectives."

The World Bank (2000) lists the powers, rights and obligations of the community in participatory development as follows:

- The right to be treated as people with capabilities, not objects of pity.
- The power to plan, implement and maintain projects to serve their felt needs.
- The right to hold politicians and officials accountable.
- The power to command local bureaucrats instead of being supplicants.
- The power to hire, pay and discipline all who provide them with frontline local services like education, health, municipal and agricultural services.
- The right to a share of central government revenue.
- The power to levy user charges and local taxes.
- The obligation to enable women, ethnic minorities, the poorest, and other long excluded groups to participate fully in economic development.
- The obligation to be accountable to local people, not just central governments or donors.

## 2.4.2 Problems arising from Community Driven Development

Participatory community development (like CDD) has at its core the assumption of harmony and co-operation within communities. This is not always the case, as Guijt and Shah (1998: 8-9) point out: communities are neither homogeneous in composition and concerns, nor necessarily harmonious in their concerns. A further point of contention is the meaning of participation. Guijt and Shah (1998: 8-9) further point out that participation has been used normatively, where anything participatory is assumed to be “good” and “empowering”. This is not always the case. In fact participation may be abused as a tool for manipulation and coercion of communities.

The CDD approach is also not without its attendant problems. Binswanger and Aiyar (2003: 5 -7) point out the following as the most important problems:

- **Total and/or fiscal costs may be too high.** Some CDD ‘islands of success’ are inherently not replicable because, like many boutiques, they are too costly for the masses.
- **The institutional setting may be hostile to CDD.** The laws/regulations of national governments/donors may not allow disbursement directly to communities. The central government may not authorise local governments or communities to provide services (education, primary health) to themselves, or levy user fees/taxes.
- **Difficulties arising from co-production may not be mastered.** Scaling up CDD implies the co-production of investments, outputs and services by many different stakeholders at many different levels: community workers, local government officials, NGOs, the private sector, technical specialists at all levels, administrators, programme managers and bureaucrats, politicians and aid agency personnel.
- **Adaptation to the local context may be missing.** What looks like best practice in some contexts may fail in others.
- **Lack of scaling-up logistics.** Scaling up can cover tens of thousands of widely-dispersed communities.

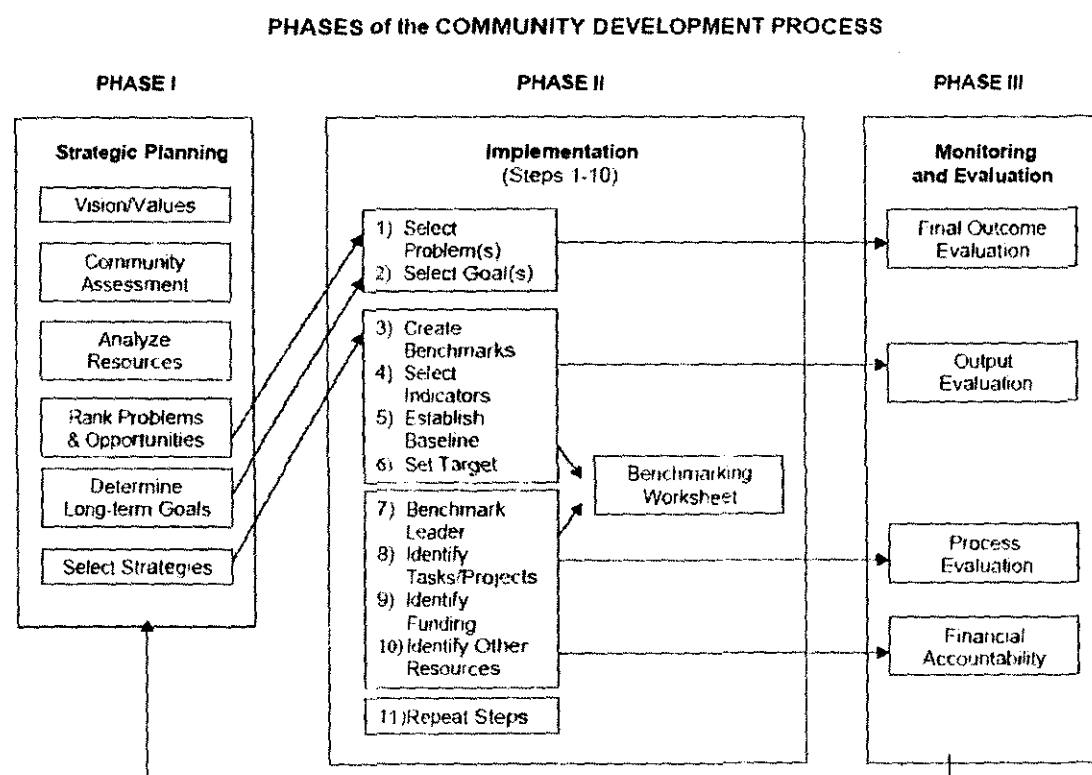
These problems in no way supersede or, at worst undermine the benefits of the CDD approach, which are enormous.

### 2.4.3 Process of CDD

This section will briefly introduce the process itself.

Figure 2.8 summarises the community development process as proposed by United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) (1998: 3)

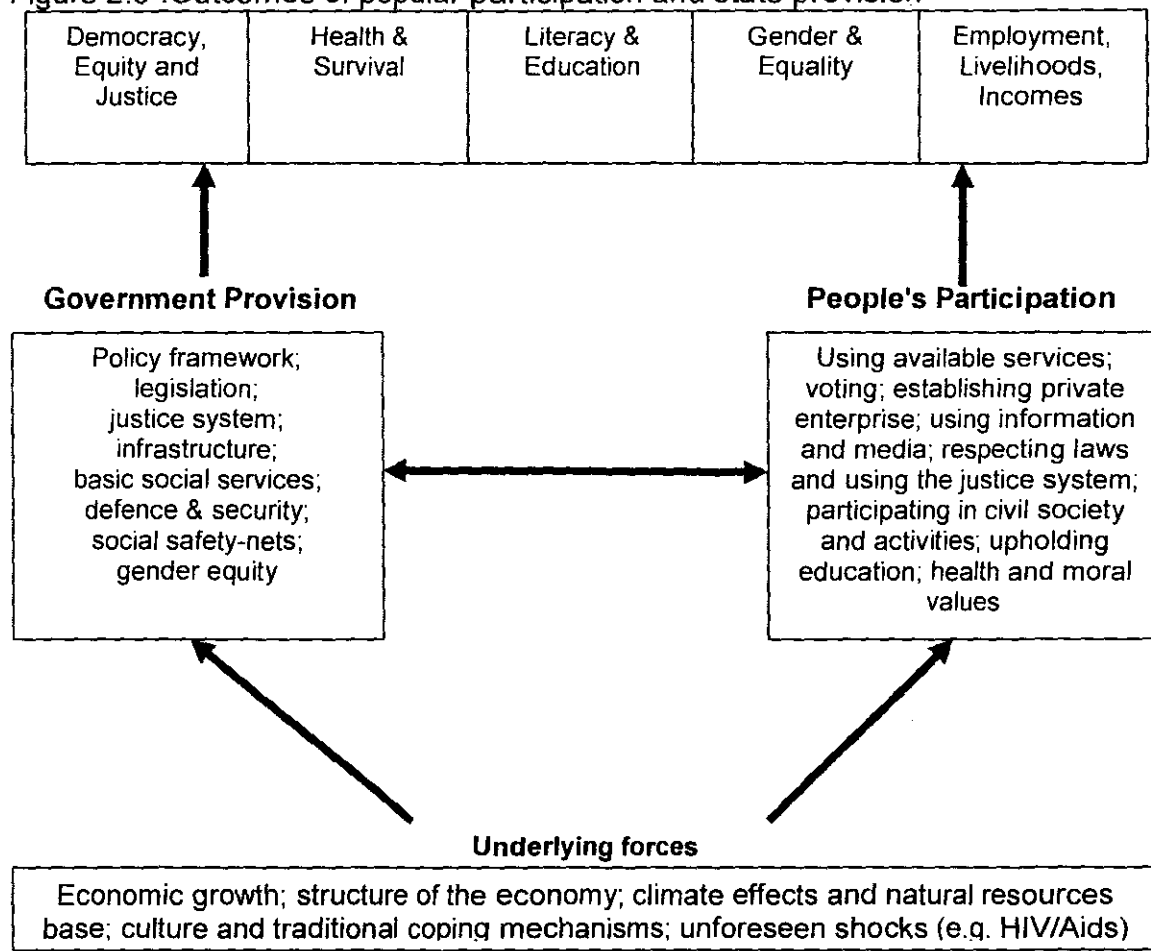
Figure 2.8:



Source: United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) (1998: 3)

Figure 2.8 shows three phases of the process, with Phase I containing the basic steps in the process. Phase 2 evaluates problems, benchmarks and indicators, while Phase 3 is a quality monitoring phase used to evaluate the programmes throughout. A slightly different version of the process has been offered by Kerapeletswe and Moremi (2001: 220) and is reproduced in Figure 2.9.

Figure 2.9 :Outcomes of popular participation and state provision



Source: Kerapeletswe and Moremi (2001: 220)

Figure 2.9 shows that each community-driven development process has underlying forces in the form of risks and vulnerability. These create shocks in the system and can affect development endeavours adversely. These underlying forces inform government provision and people participation in the process of development. The roles of the government and those of the community are also outlined. Where the government is responsible for enabling legislative and policy framework, the community participates through assets and capabilities they are endowed with. The interaction of the two parties leads to the desired outcomes of community development such as equality, democracy, justice, employment and improved education and health.

The final rider is that community-driven development is a location-specific process. It is informed by local conditions, culture, language, needs, legal

framework and willingness to participate. The processes outlined are therefore purely for academic analysis as a lot more goes into actual community development efforts.

## 2.5 Employment and unemployment

This section merely shows in Box 2.2 the two definitions of poverty in South Africa. This topic will not be discussed here as a comprehensive discussion is included in Annexure 5 of this thesis.

### **BOX 2.2: Official and expanded unemployment rates**

Statistics South Africa (StatsSA) uses the following definition of unemployment as its official definition: The *unemployed* are those people within the *economically active population* who, (a) did not work during the seven days prior to the interview, (b) want to work and are available to start work within a week of the interview, and (c) have taken active steps to look for work or to start some form of self-employment in the four weeks prior to the interview.

The expanded unemployment rate excludes criterion (c). Among those who are included in the expanded, but not the official definition of unemployment, will be discouraged job seekers (those who said they were unemployed but had not taken active steps to find work in the four weeks prior to the interview).

StatsSA reports on the situation of the unemployed using both the official and the expanded definition. In the present economic climate, there is a proportion of discouraged work seekers who face constraints, for example high travel costs and lack of transport, when seeking work.

Source: StatsSA (2003a: 2.47)

## 2.6 Summary

The theoretical underpinnings of this thesis were presented in this chapter. To achieve this, a literature survey was carried out, aimed at developing a framework for the rest of the study.

Poverty was defined in various ways. The entire thesis focuses on impact of community-driven development on poverty. It was therefore imperative that this chapter provided a study of poverty that included definitions of poverty and approaches in the measurements of poverty. The proliferation of concepts and indicators usually employed in the different definitions and measurements poverty included discussions of the following concepts:

- Income or consumption poverty
- Human development index
- Social exclusion
- (Lack of) capability and functioning
- Vulnerability and risk
- Lack of basic needs
- Relative deprivation

Some poverty indicators were also discussed. Different models of poverty imply using different indicators. Income-based models require information on income or consumption; while vulnerability models use indicators of wealth and exposure to risk, as well as income: Models concerned with capability and functioning present indicators of life expectancy or educational achievement; while models of well-being or social exclusion will include measures like the degree of social support.

Some indicators are inherently more quantifiable than others, and more decomposable, in the sense that they can be subjected to statistical manipulation. Thus, income and consumption poverty are conventionally measured using the co-called FGT (Foster, Greer and Thorbecke) measures. These FGT measures enable a calculation to be made both of the headcount, i.e.

the number of people below the poverty line, and the poverty gap, or shortfall of the poor below the poverty line.

A discussion of community-driven development (CDD) and unemployment. Community driven development is not a project. CDD was referred to as an approach that aims to empower communities and local governments with resources and the authority to use these flexibly, thus taking control of their development.

Unemployment was defined in the South African context to round off the discussion in this chapter because it forms such an important part of the ensuing discussions on Evaton West.



## **Chapter 3**

### **Background of Evaton West and the community development initiatives in the area**

#### **3.1 Introduction**

Chapter 2 was a presentation of the underpinning theory to this thesis and discussed the major indicators employed in the study. Indicators such as poverty, employment/unemployment and community-driven development and their practical application in this thesis were discussed. This was a prelude to the current chapter narrows the discussion down to the essentials of this thesis, presenting a broad overview of Evaton West which is the settlement under study.

Evaton West was formed in the late 1990's as an RDP (Reconstruction and Development Programme) housing initiative. This makes Evaton West one of the youngest communities in the Vaal (Evaton itself is 100 years old). Even though it is a relatively young community, it is an organised community where issues affecting it are dealt with in a methodical way through the Evaton West Community Development Forum (EWCDF). This is evidenced in the vision of the community which is given by the EWCDF as: "to become a well-managed and sustainable residential community, based on a sound infrastructure offering an acceptable living environment to its inhabitants" (Frankel, 2001: 9).

Community cohesion has helped to draw development initiatives into the area. It has become the pilot community for initiatives such as those run by the Eindhoven Municipality (Holland) in conjunction with the Emfuleni Municipality, the Vaal University of Technology (VUT), CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup> (Centres of Learning to Alleviate Poverty in Africa) and SOLID<sup>®</sup> (Saltspring Organization for Life Improvement and Development - a Canadian-based organization).

The chapter will discuss the two main initiatives at work in Evaton West, namely those of the Eindhoven Municipality and CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup>. The main sources used in this chapter will be the focus group interview (FGI) output, StatsSA (2001), the

work of Frankel (2001) and data drawn from the Evaton West community survey of 2003.

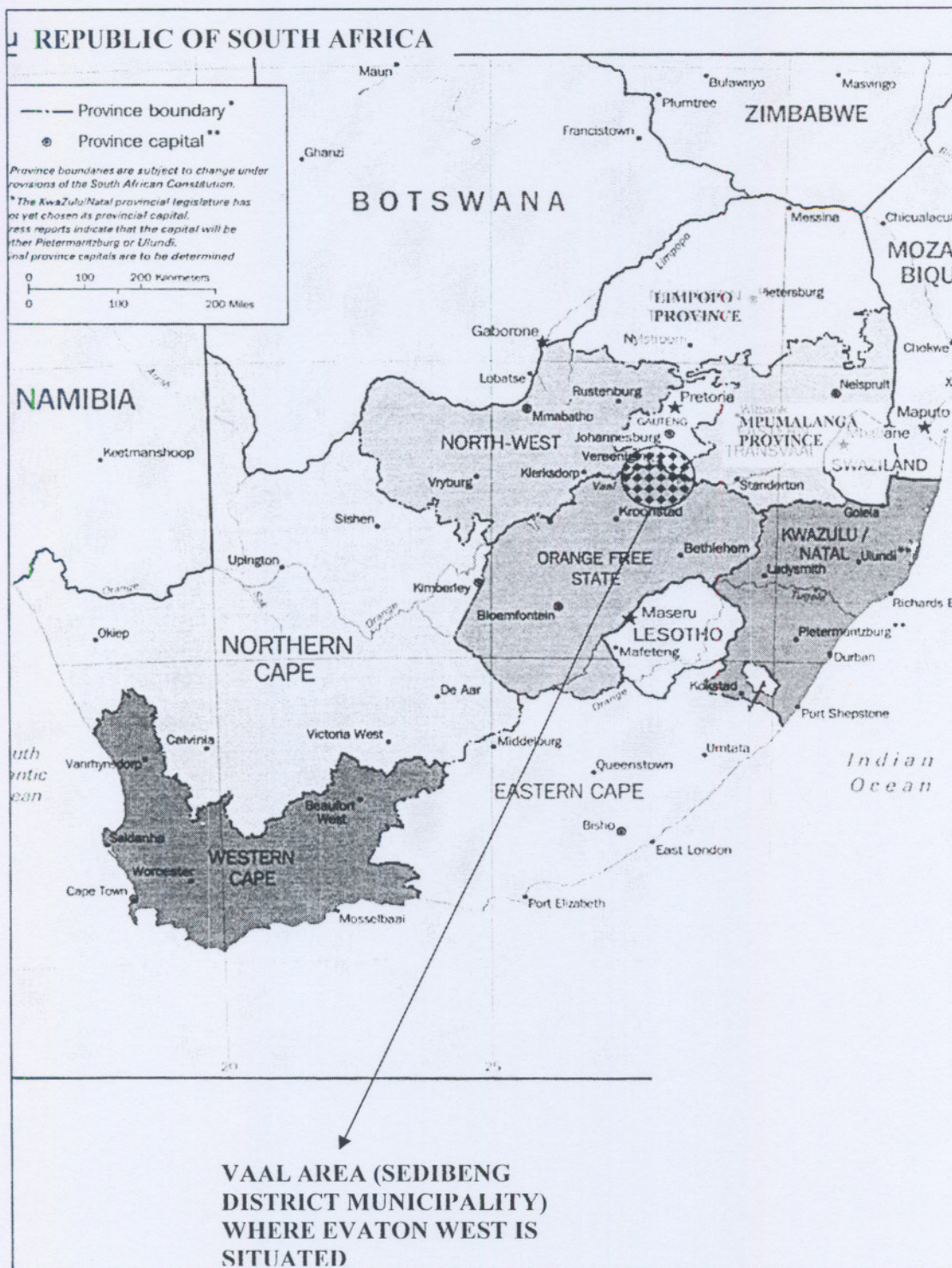
### **3.2 Background to Evaton West**

This section gives a background to Evaton West and establishes a profile of the area. Evaton West is a residential area flanked by Evaton to the East, Beverly Hills to the South and Palm Springs and Orange Farms to the North and North-East. The working people in Evaton West work mainly in Johannesburg and in the Vaal (the south-most part of the Gauteng Province, so-called because it lies along the Vaal River). The population of Evaton (30 079) also includes an immigrant population (legal and illegal) (Frankel 2001: 14). Most of the inhabitants came from nearby townships, especially the "old" Evaton. Many are young people who left their parents' homes to set up their own homes, taking advantage of the government's criteria for issuing these houses (mainly that people had to have dependents to qualify for a house). Most homes in the area are still single-parent households. This has led to a relatively young community of primarily young people who are neither in school, university nor employed.

#### **3.2.1 Location of Evaton West**

Evaton West is a recent extension to the "old Evaton" which turned 100 years old in 2004. The Figures, Tables and Maps in the next few pages serve to locate Evaton West within its geographical, demographic and economic context. Map 3.1 shows that Evaton West lies on the southern-most end of the Gauteng Province, just north of the Free State Province. It forms part of what used to be called (and is popularly known as) the Vaal Triangle. This area is currently known as the Sedibeng District Municipality. The District itself is made up of three municipalities, namely Emfuleni, Lesedi and Midvaal.

MAP 3.1



Source: UT Library Online

Sedibeng District Municipality (SDM) itself is a Category C Municipality encompassing the Category B municipalities of Emfuleni Local Municipality (ELM), Midvaal Local Municipality (MLM) and Lesedi Local Municipality (LLM)



within the context of a two-tier Local Government System. This means that Sedibeng District Municipality is distinct from its Local Municipalities (LM's), not independent, but rather interdependent as they share concurrent powers and functions (Sedibeng District Municipality, 2001: 1). A District Municipality has constituent Local Municipalities, is the prime co-ordinator of municipal matters in its area of jurisdiction and is higher in the government hierarchy than the local municipalities.

Table 3.1 shows a profile of Gauteng (of which Evaton West forms part) according to the UNDP (2000: 205). It contends that income levels in this province are high, urbanisation is high and that the relative number of the poor is low.

Table 3.1: Social and economic characteristics and service delivery load by province -1999

Social and economic characteristics and service delivery load by province (Idasa 1999)							
Provinces	Population	Population growth rate	Rural	Service delivery load	Per capita income	Relative number of poor people in province	HDI 1991
Eastern Cape	High	High	Rural	Relatively high	Low	High	Low
Free State	Moderate	Low	Urban		Moderate	High	Moderate
Gauteng	High	Low	Very urban	Relatively high	High	Low	High
KwaZulu Natal	High	High	Rural	Relatively high	Low	Moderate	Low
Mpumalanga	Low	High	Rural		Moderate	Moderate	Moderate
Northern Cape	Low	Low	Urban		Moderate	High	Moderate
Northern Province	High	High	Rural	Relatively high	Very Low	High	Low
North West	Moderate	High	Rural		Low	High	Low
Western Cape	Moderate	Low	Urban		High	Low	High

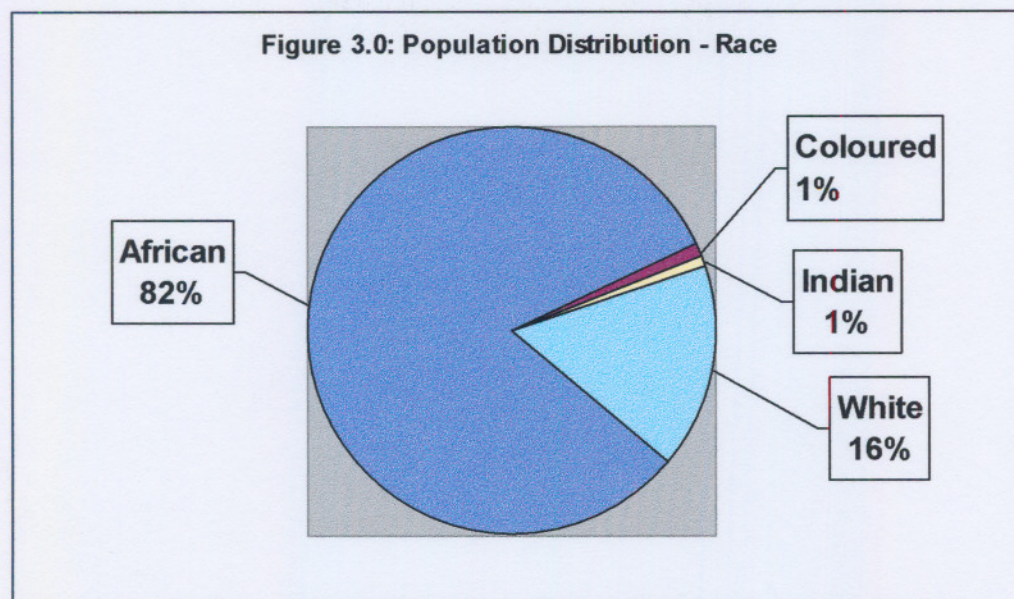
Key	= poor province	= medium income province	= rich province
-----	-----------------	--------------------------	-----------------

Source: UNDP (2000: 205)

Figure 3.0 shows that a large section of the population is Black with the Indian population the smallest section. The race distribution of the area is therefore predominantly Black, reflecting the demographics of the greater Gauteng Province.



Figure 3.0: Distribution of the population of Sedibeng by race - 2003



Source: Sedibeng District Municipality (2003: 2)

Map 3.2 shows Evaton West within the Emfuleni District Municipality context. It shows that the two towns that make up the Emfuleni District Municipality are Vereeniging and Vanderbijlpark. There are also townships such as: Sebokeng, Sharpeville, Evaton, Bophelong and Boipatong. Evaton West lies due north of Vanderbijlpark and Bophelong. (Note: Chapter 4 will concentrate on a comparison between Evaton West and Bophelong.



Map 3.2: Evaton West and its neighbouring towns



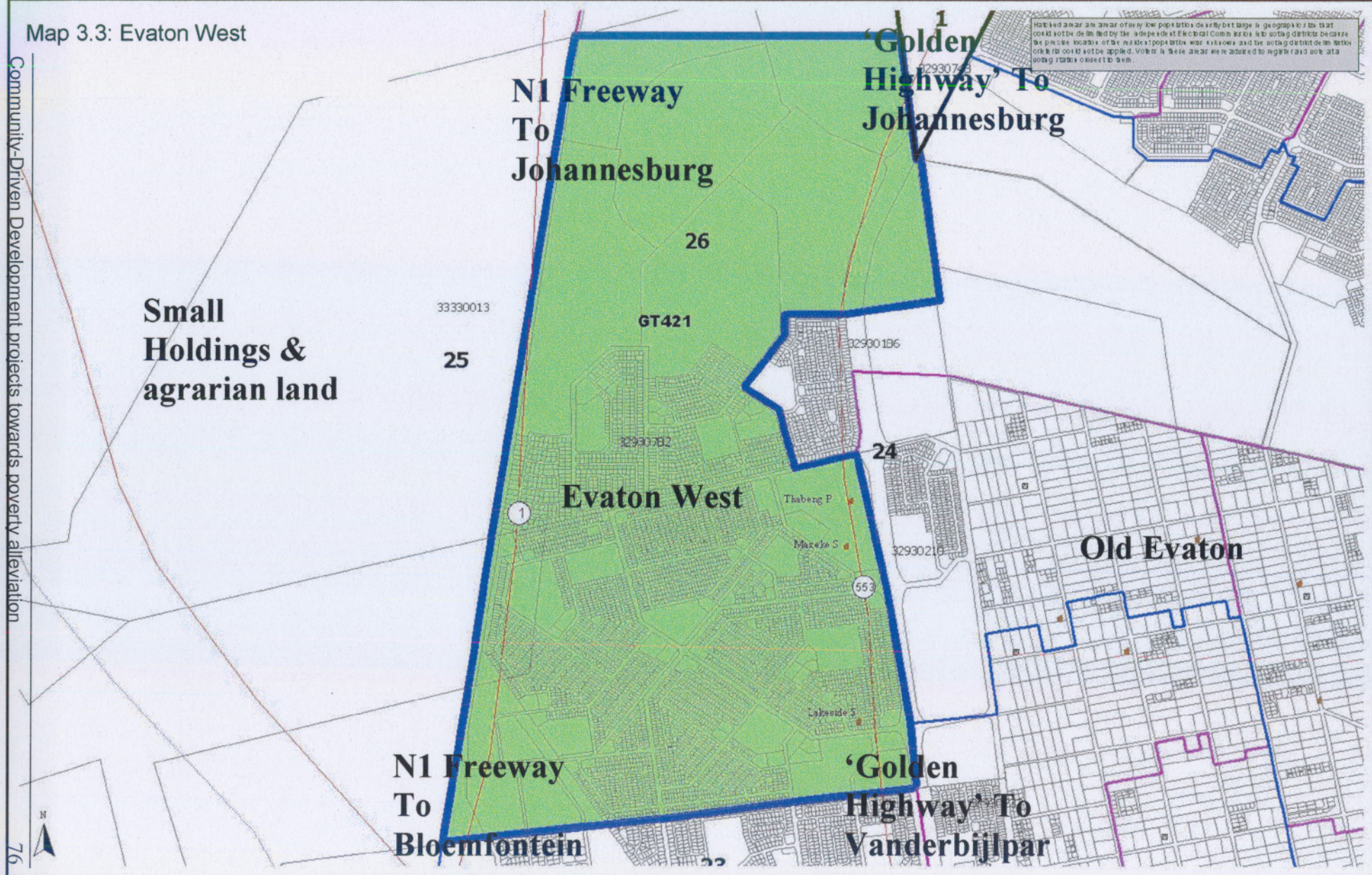
Source: Ananzi Road Maps

Map 3.3 shows that Evaton West lies between two major routes to Johannesburg (to the North) and Vanderbijlpark and Bloemfontein (to the South). The routes are the N1 (National route) and the so-called Golden Highway. It is one of the border settlements lying, administratively, roughly on the border between Emfuleni and the Johannesburg Metropolitan Council jurisdiction, just south of Orange Farm. To the west of Evaton West and forming part of the same ward as Evaton West are some smallholdings and farms. To the East is Old Evaton where most of the inhabitants of Evaton West originated from. To the immediate South is a "new" township known as "Beverly Hills". These maps show that Evaton West is spatially far removed from the major towns in the area and therefore also from the major sources of employment in the area. This proximal distance serves to exacerbate the problem of unemployment in Evaton West.



Map 3.3: Evaton West

Community-Driven Development projects towards poverty alleviation



Hatched areas are areas of low population density but large in geographic area that could not be defined by the ward boundary. These areas are not voting districts because the precise location of the resident population was unknown and the voting districts in these areas could not be applied. Voters in these areas were advised to register and vote at voting stations observed to them.

	Outer Boundary of Ward		School		VOTING STATIONS
	Voting Districts (eg 97990746)		Evangelical		Hatched Areas
			Police Station		

Place names indicate the approximate location of the geographic area

Determination of the outer boundary of Ward 26 of Local Municipality GT421 in terms of Item 5(2) of Schedule 1 of the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, No 117 of 1998.

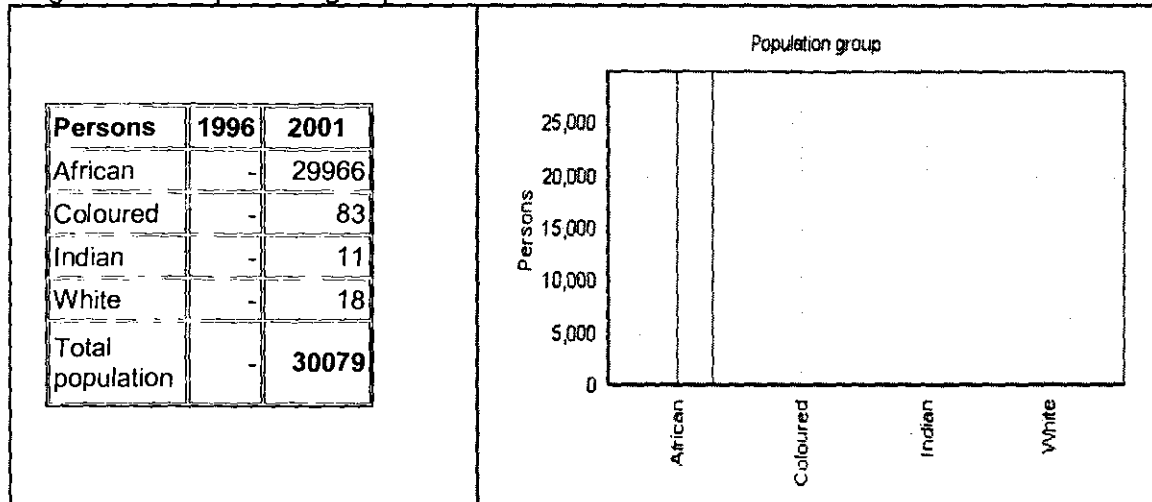
Source: Municipal Demarcation Board (2000)



### 3.2.2 Profile of Evaton West from Census 2001 data

This section makes use of the 2001 Census data from StatsSA (Census 2001) to profile Evaton West in terms of the different indicators readily found in the 2001 Census results.

Figure 3.1: Population group

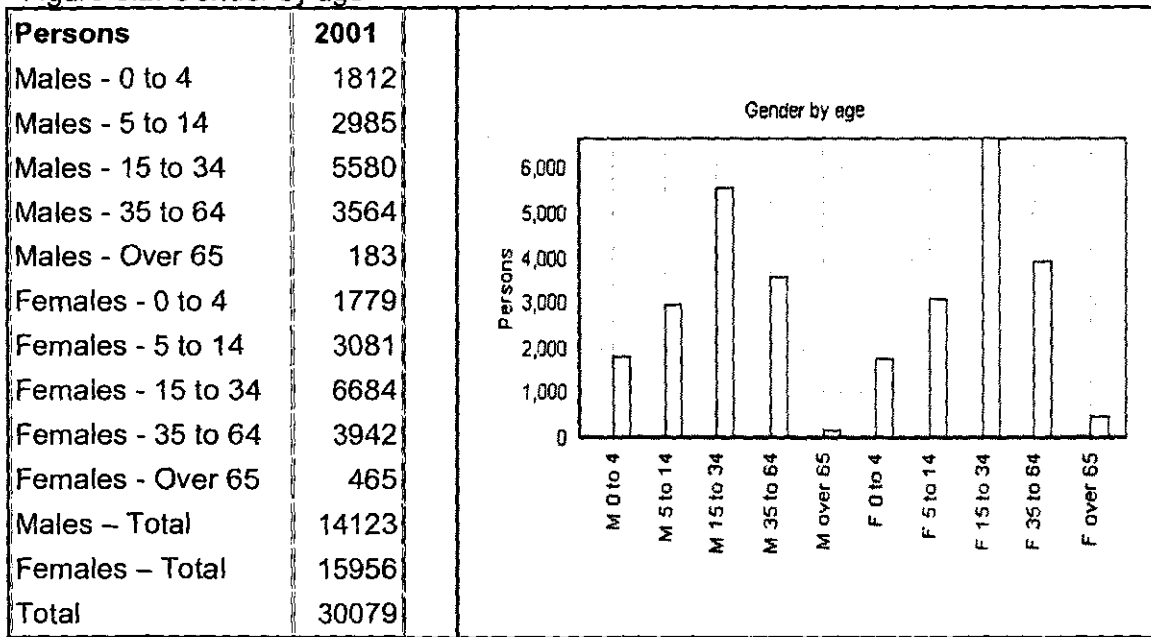


Source: StatsSA (2001)

Figure 3.1 shows that Evaton West consists almost solely of an African population. The few non-Africans in the populace indicated may be accounted for by the fact that Ward 26 in Emfuleni, in which Evaton West falls, includes some farms and smallholdings nearby with a small population. Since Evaton West did not really exist as an entity during the 1996 Census and consequently there is no baseline data for 1996 available for comparison.



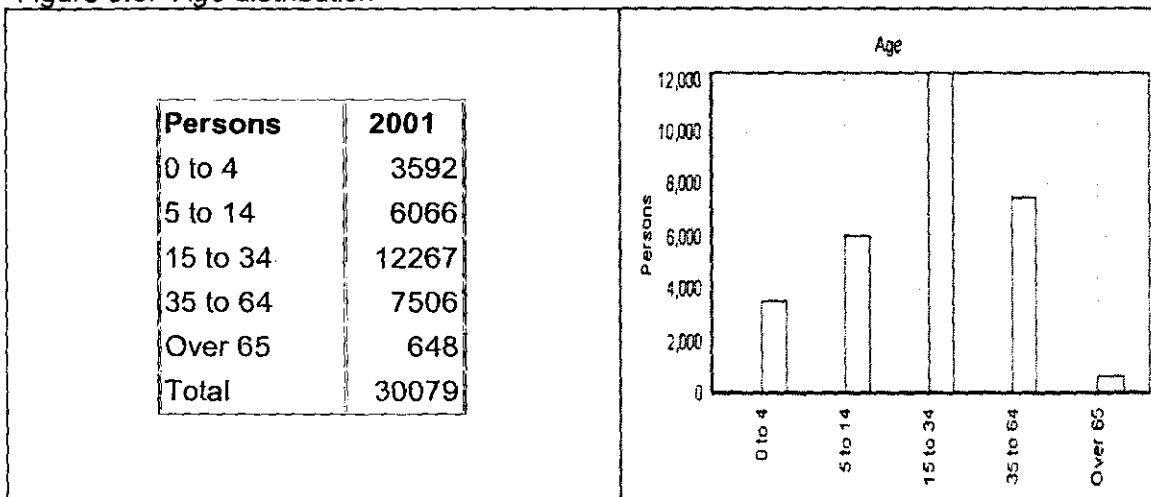
Figure 3.2: Gender by age



Source: StatsSA (2001)

Table 3.2 shows gender by age distribution of the population in Evaton West. It shows that the population for males and females was concentrated around the 15 to 34 years of age group, with the second highest concentration in the age groups 35 to 64. The census recorded more females than males in both these age groups. This means that most persons were in the economically active age group.

Figure 3.3: Age distribution

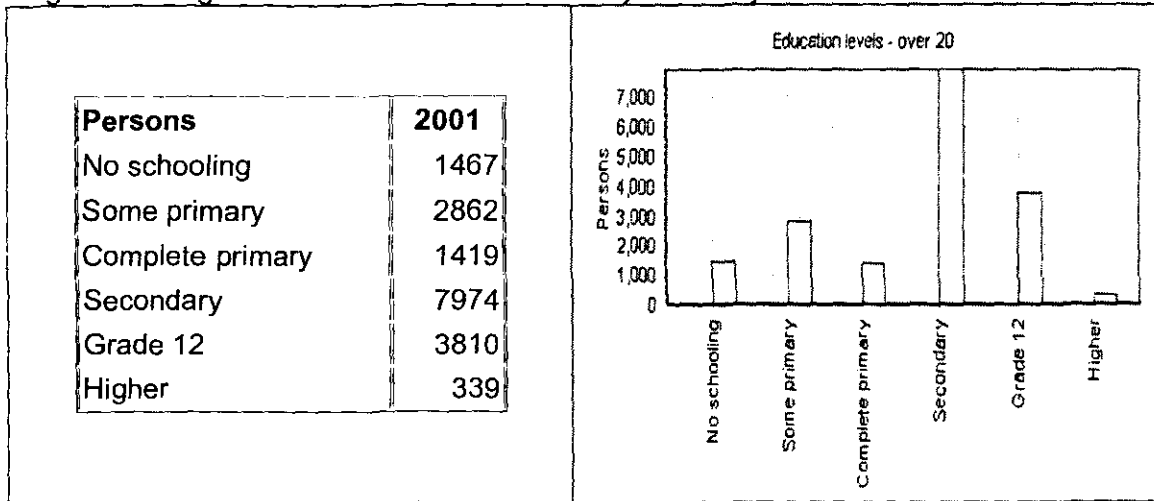


Source: StatsSA (Census 2001)

Figure 3.3 confirms Figure 3.2 in term of age distribution. It shows the total age distribution of the population. The age group '15-34' years of age is the highest by far

followed by the group '35 to 64' years of age. The population of Evaton West is relatively young. There are comparatively fewer over 35 year olds than under 35 year olds.

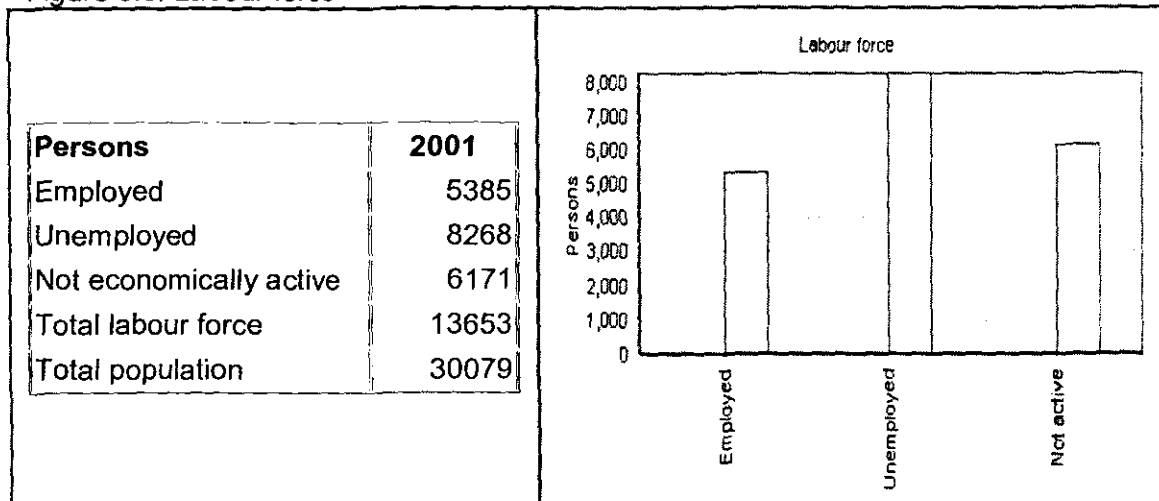
Figure 3.4: Highest education levels attained by over 20 year olds



Source: StatsSA (2001)

Figure 3.4 shows educational attainments and levels. It shows that most of the inhabitants either had attended secondary school or exited at secondary school level. 12123 persons had attainments or participated in secondary (including grade 12) education. Very few (339 persons) had higher than grade 12 educational attainments.

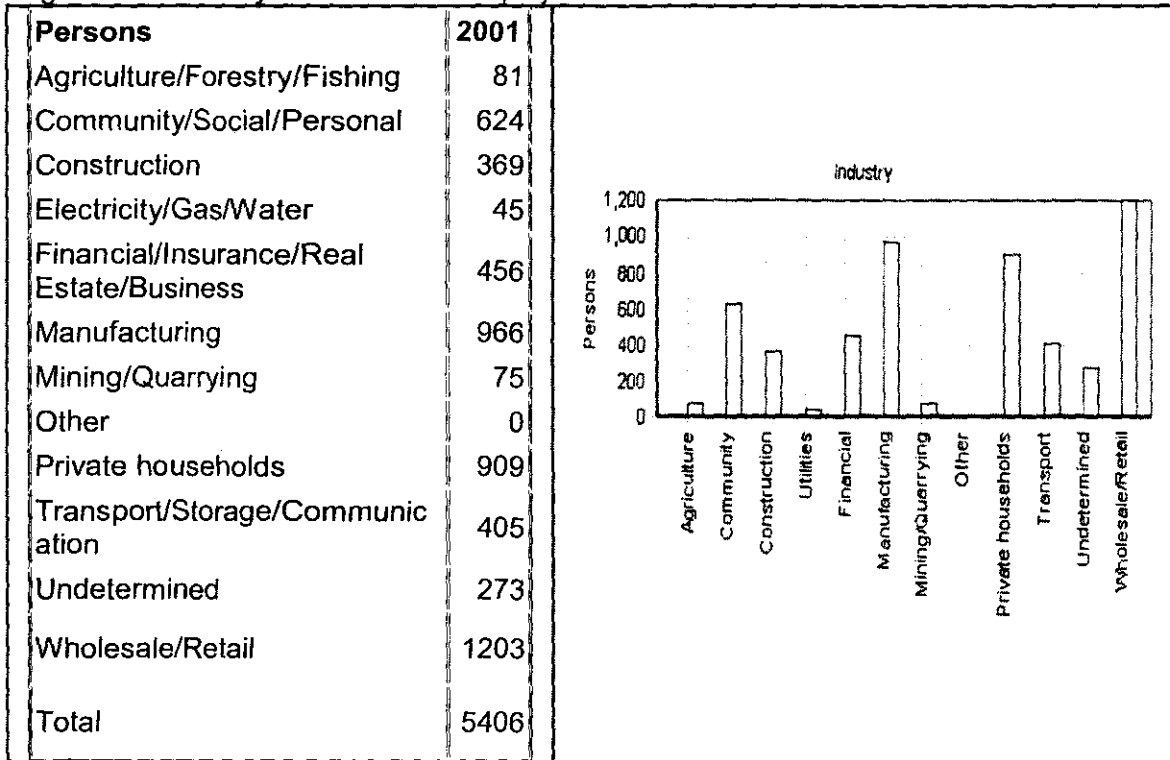
Figure 3.5: Labour force



Source: StatsSA (2001)

Figure 3.5 shows the employment levels. It shows that 60.6 percent of the total labour force were unemployed and only 39.4 percent were employed while the rest were not economically active.

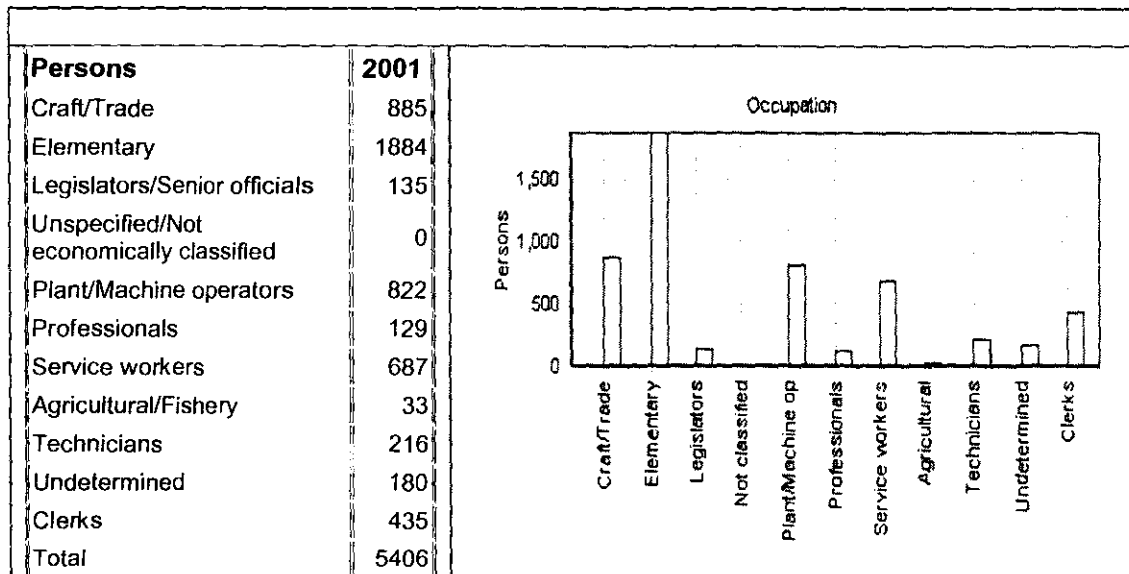
Figure 3.6: Industry and sector of employment



Source: StatsSA (2001)

Figure 3.6 shows the sectors of employment for the employed. It shows that the highest sectors of employment are wholesale and retail, manufacturing and private households. There is a large number of people working in private households (probably as domestic workers and gardeners).

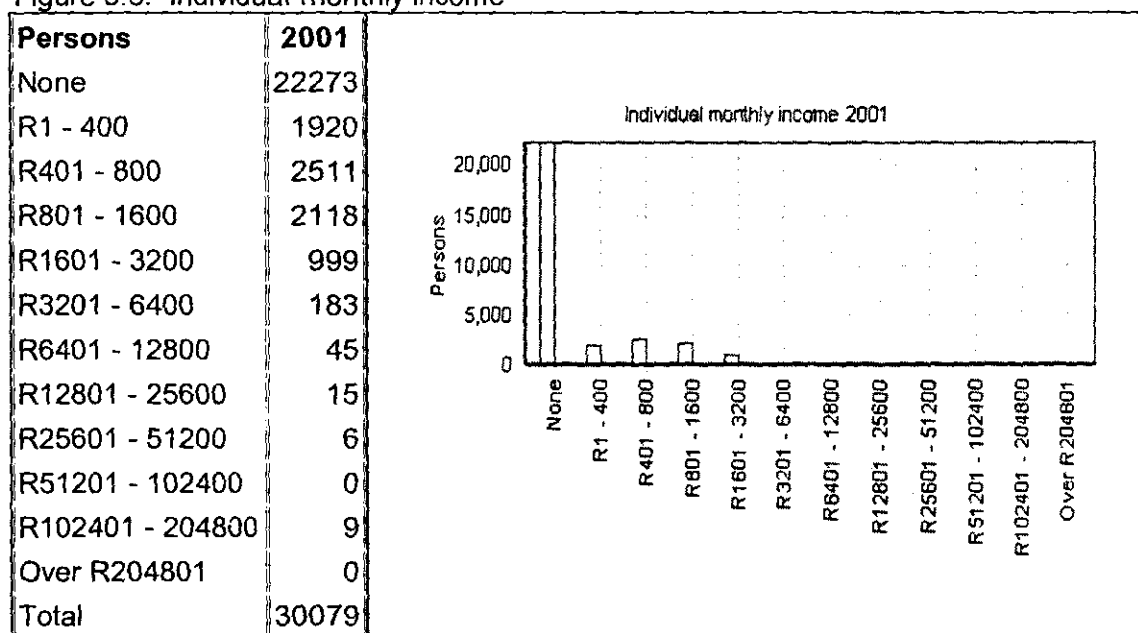
Figure 3.7: Occupation



Source: StatsSA (2001)

Figure 3.7 shows that most of the employed population (34.9 percent) are employed in elementary occupations such as cleaning services. A small percentage is also employed in craft and trade (15.7 percent) and as plant and machine operators (15.2 percent). Very few workers are employed in high-income occupations such as the civil service or manufacturing.

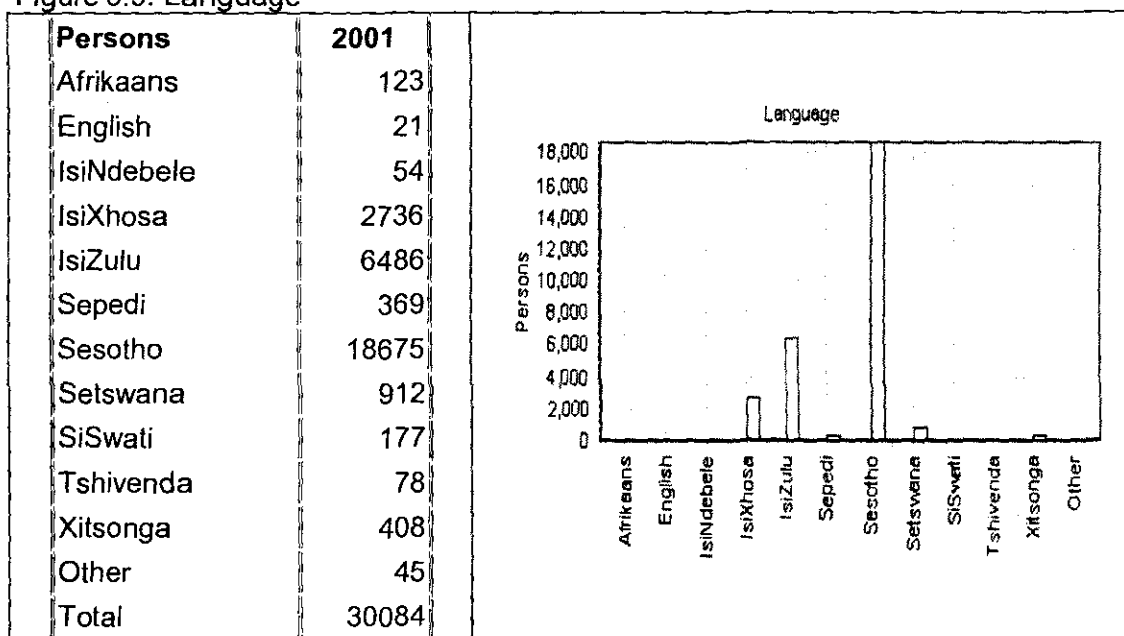
Figure 3.8: Individual monthly income



Source: StatsSA (2001)

Figure 3.8 shows individual income levels of the population. It shows that about 88.8 percent of the population (this includes children who do not earn any income) earn incomes of R800 or less per month, while only 11.2 percent earn higher incomes. Of those that earn any income (7806 individuals), 56.8 percent earn incomes of R800 and less, this figure rises to 83.9 percent if the threshold is raised to R1600. This means that only 16.1 percent of individual earners receive more than R1600 per month. There are therefore large inequality levels in the area. The ratio of income-earners to non income-earners is 2.85:1. This means that on average, one income earner supports 2.85 (about 3) other persons apart from themselves.

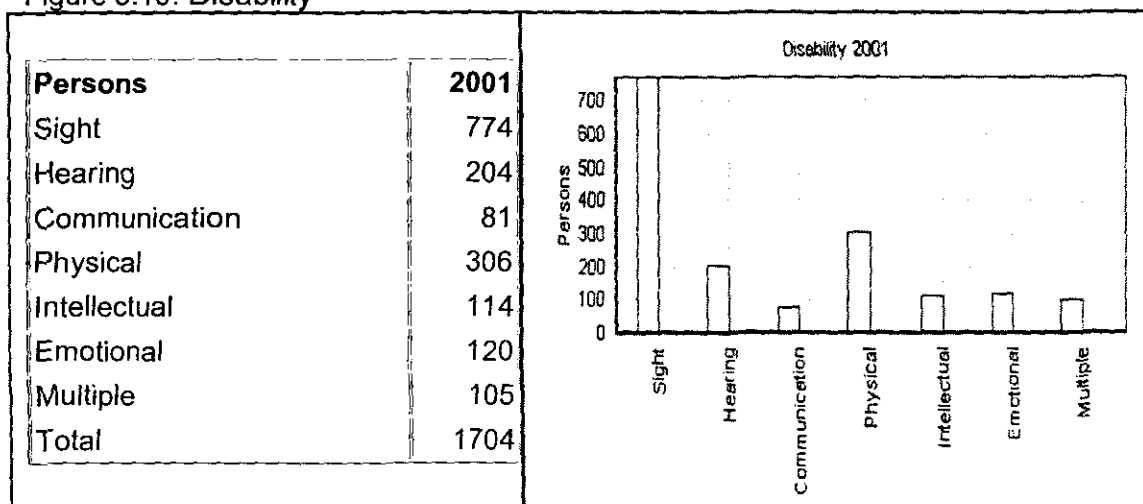
Figure 3.9: Language



Source: StatsSA (Census 2001)

The population of Evaton West is predominantly Sesotho speaking. Other spoken languages include IsiZulu and IsiXhosa. Other languages are comparatively negligible in number.

Figure 3.10: Disability

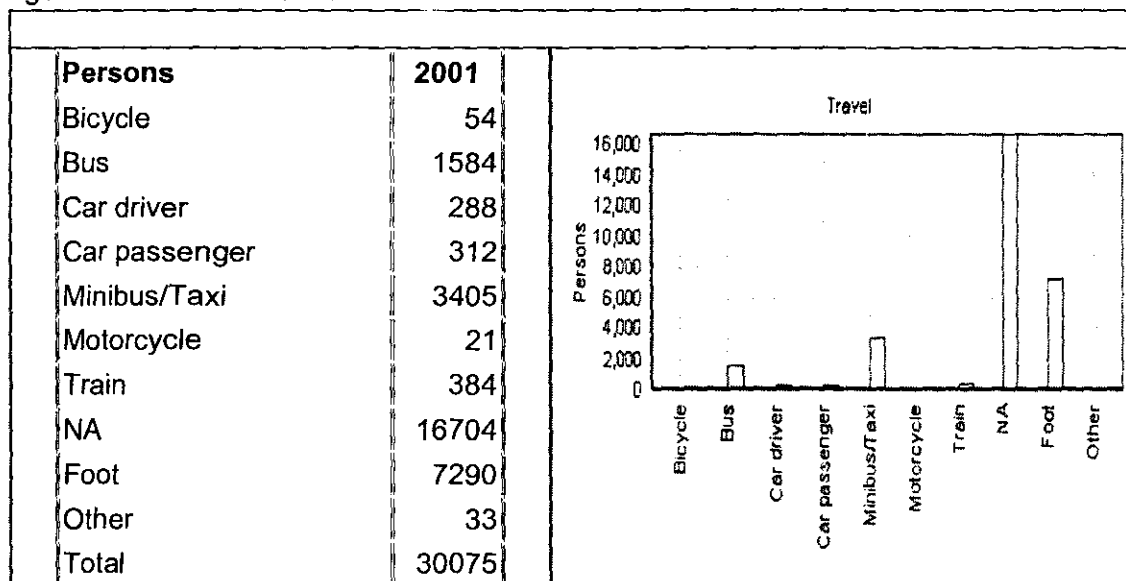


Source: StatsSA (2001)

5.7 percent of the population (30079) of Evaton West is comprised of people with disabilities. As shown in Figure 3.10, most of the disabled in the area have sight problems, accounting for 45 percent of people with disabilities. Those with some

form of physical disability also form a relatively large percentage (18 percent of people with disabilities).

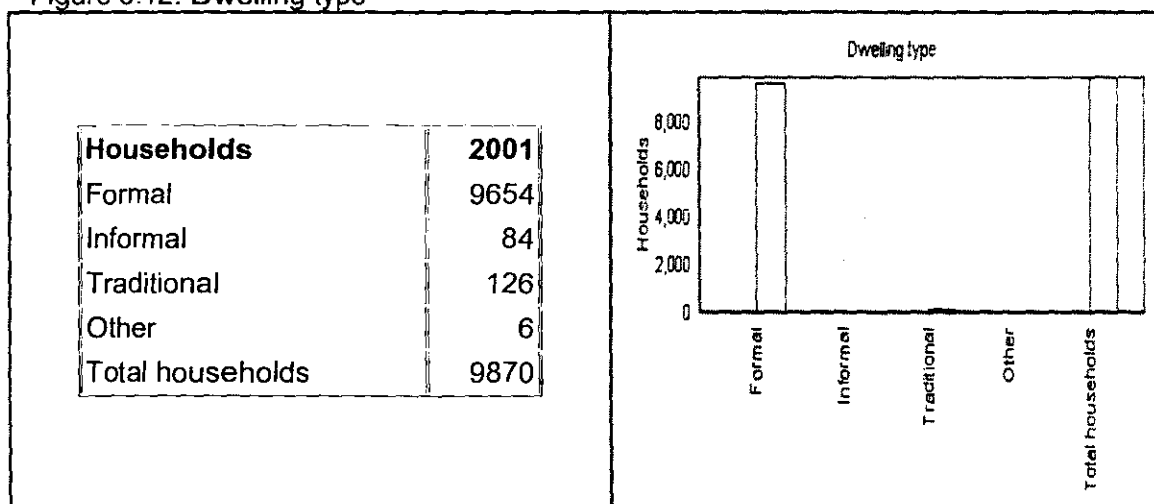
Figure 3.11: Mode of travel for work or school



Source: StatsSA (2001)

Figure 3.11 shows the mode of travel to work or school. It shows that people commuting to work or to school make use primarily of buses and/or minibus taxis. Most people walk to schools and some to work. Small numbers use cars and trains.

Figure 3.12: Dwelling type

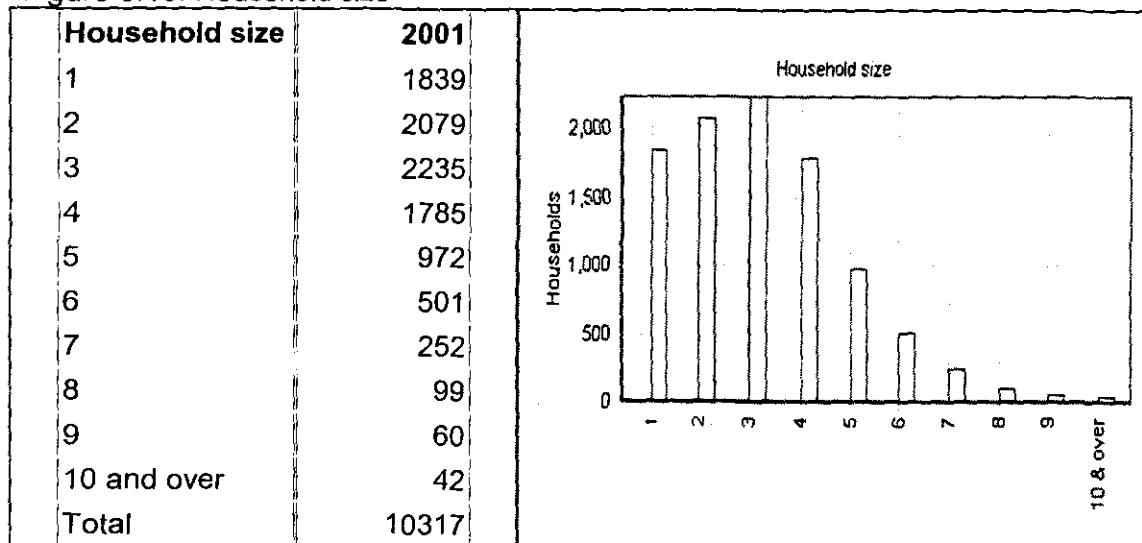


Source: StatsSA (2001)

The predominant dwelling-type in Evaton West consists of formal structures, as shown in Figure 3.12. These are the so-called "RDP" low-cost starter houses

meant for low income people. The other types (traditional and informal) refer to dwellings such as shacks, prefabricated, mud and stone dwellings.

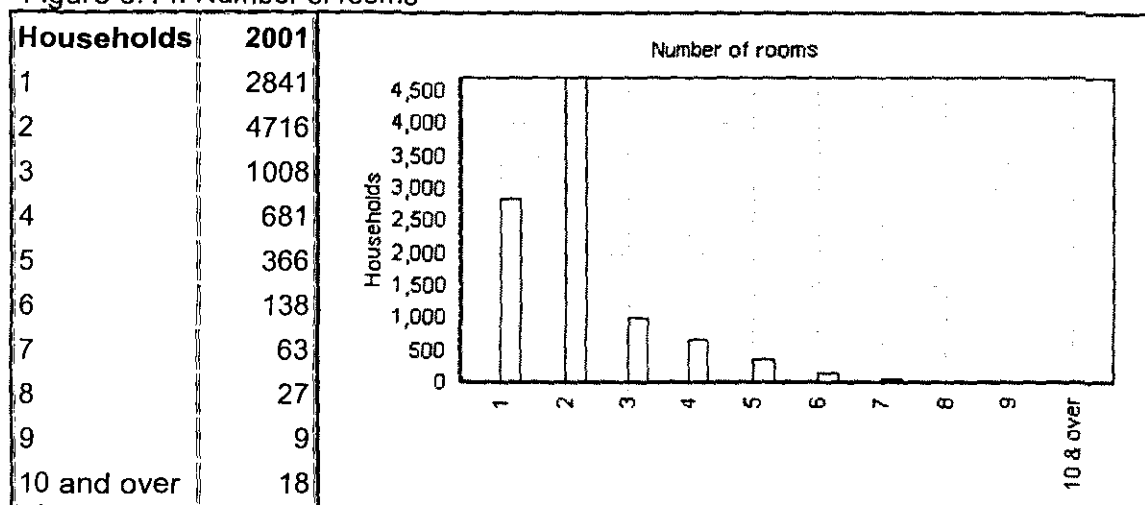
Figure 3.13: Household size



Source: StatsSA (2001)

The most frequent household size in Evaton West was 3 persons, as shown in Figure 3.13. The average household size is close to 4 persons. There are also quite large households (10 persons and over).

Figure 3.14: Number of rooms

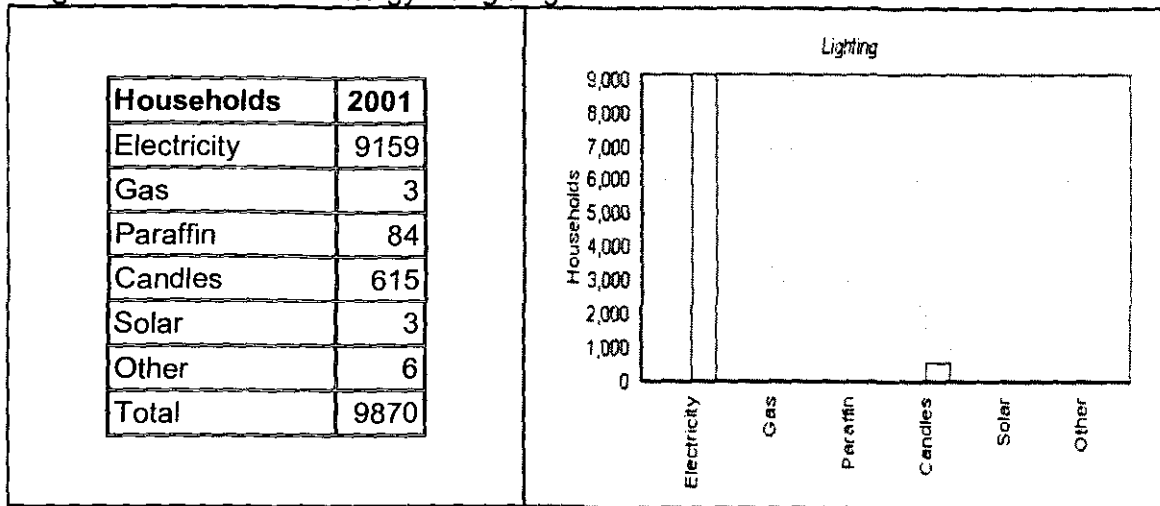


Source: StatsSA (2001)

Figure 3.14 shows that very few houses have more than three rooms. Most have two rooms and less. The standard "RDP" houses in the area have one or two

rooms. Some households extended the house to three or more rooms, but these were still in the minority in 2001. Large households in very small houses tend to create a number of social problems and tensions (Frankel, 2001: 42-43).

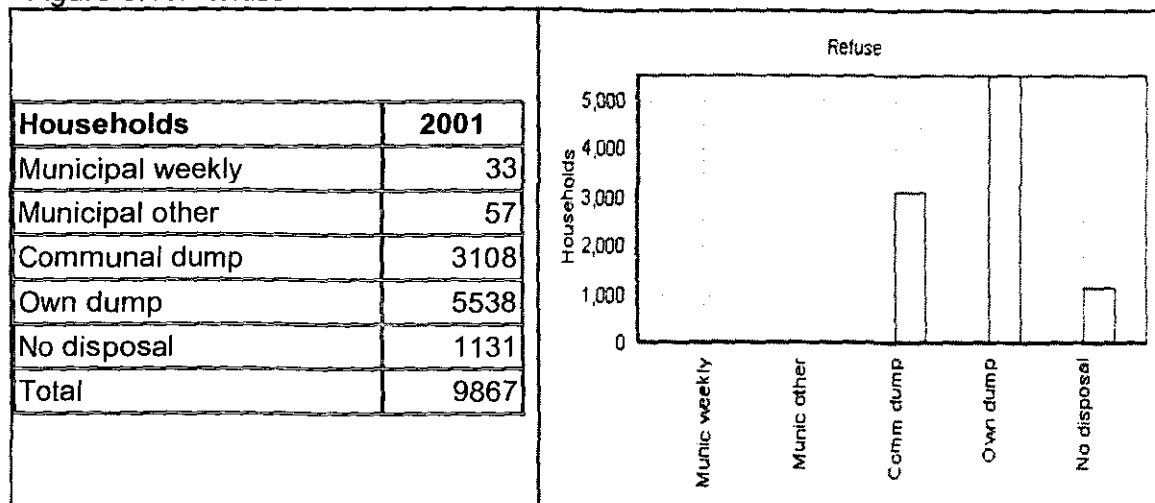
Figure 3.15: Source of energy for lighting



Source: StatsSA (2001)

Figure 3.15 shows the source of energy for lighting in Evaton West. It shows that by far, most households made use of electricity with very few making use of candles and other technologies. This shows that most of Evaton West was already electrified by 2001.

Figure 3.16: Refuse



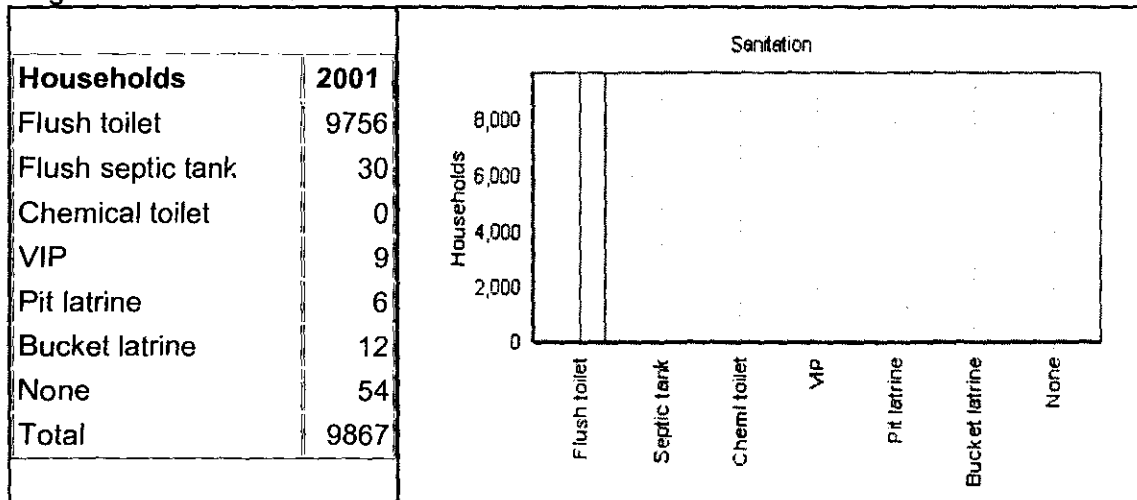
Source: StatsSA (2001)

Figure 3.16 shows refuse removal services. It shows that communal dumps and own (usually illegal) dumps are the main method of dealing with refuse. This has



a huge impact on the environment as well as on health issues in the area. The figure does not show how much of this refuse is actually recycled. There was at the time of the 2001 Census no municipal refuse removal service in Evaton West.

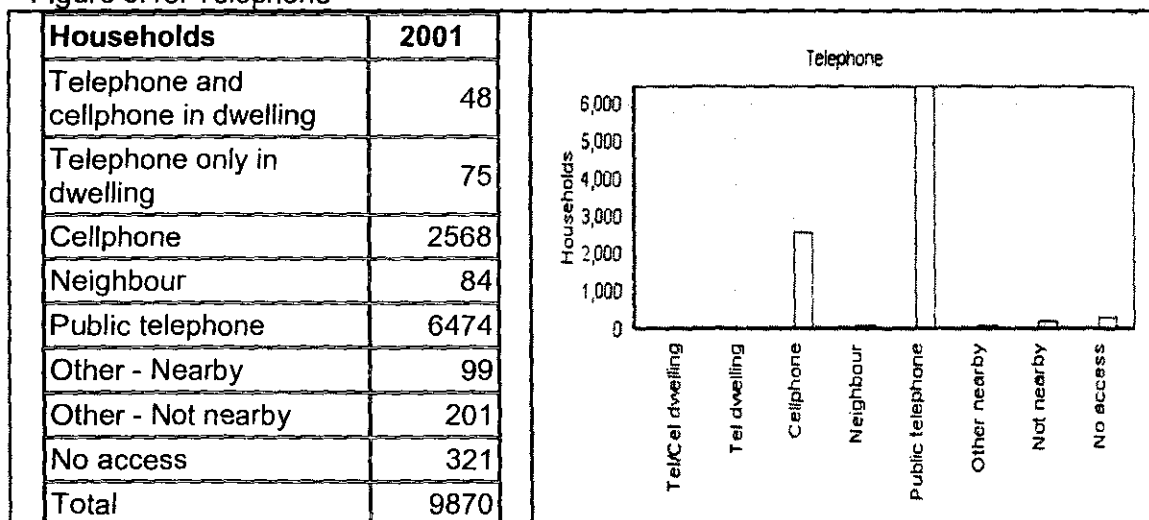
Figure 3.17: Sanitation



Source: StatsSA (2001)

Figure 3.17 shows types of toilets used in the area. It shows that by far most households make use of flush toilets in the area. The other types are used mainly in the mentioned smallholdings, shacks and informal dwellings that form part of this ward.

Figure 3.18: Telephone

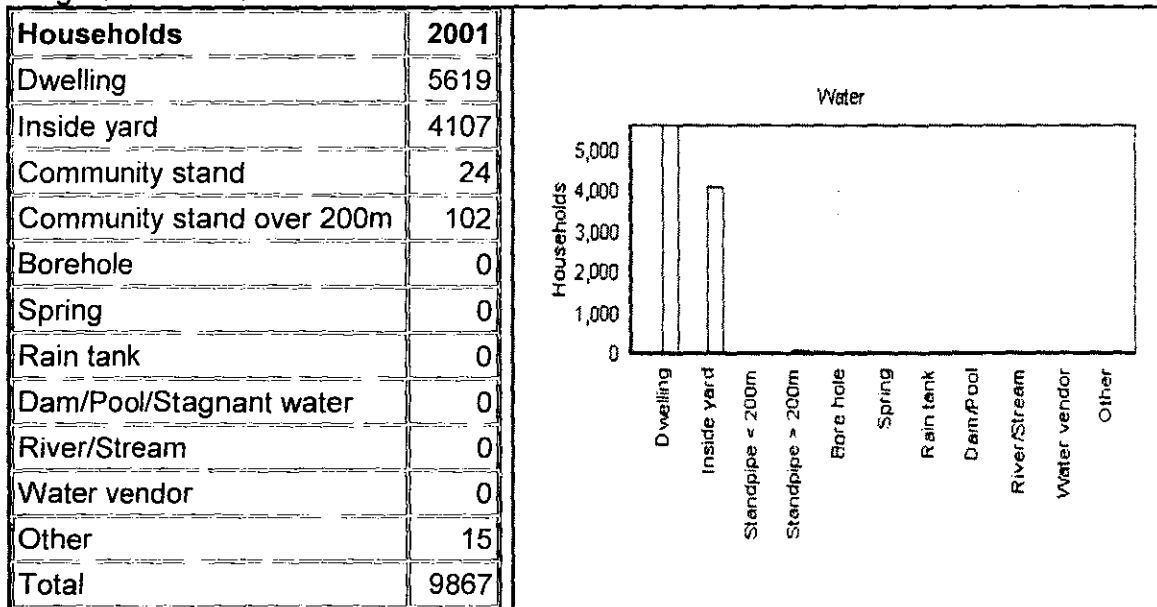


Source: StatsSA (2001)

Figure 3.18 shows that not all households have telephones and cell phones in the house. There are nevertheless many cell phone mobiles. Most individuals

make use of public telephones. There were 321 persons without access to a phone. This tends to affect communication in the area especially with regards to emergency services.

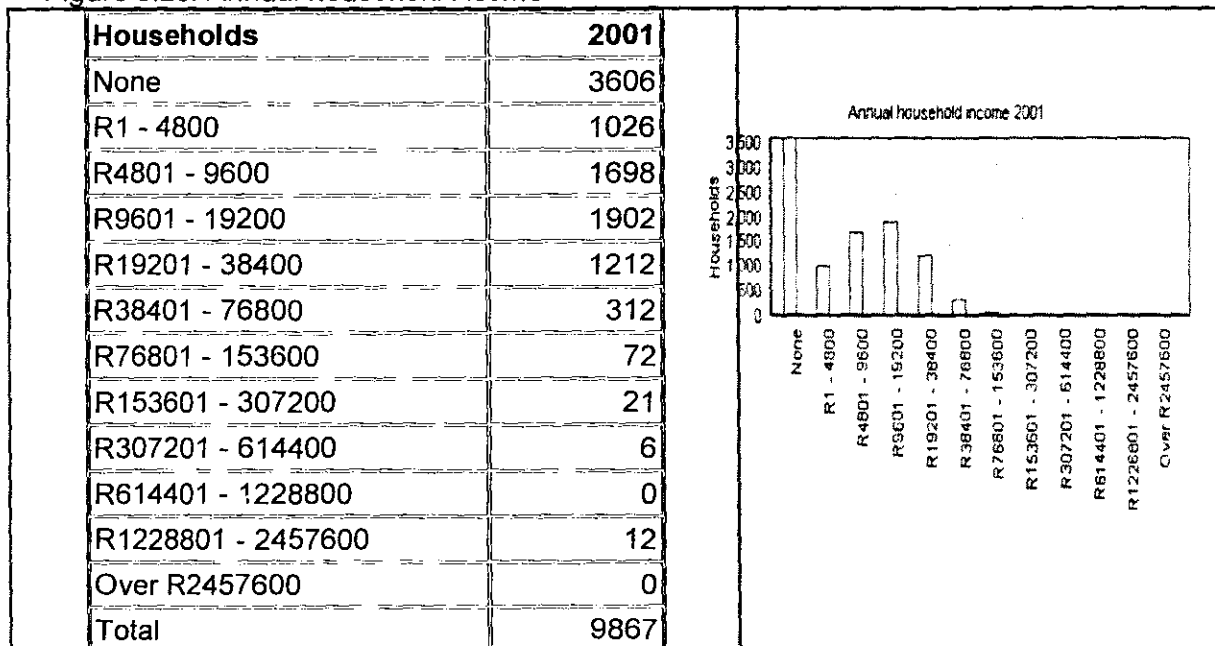
Figure 3.19: Water



Source: StatsSA (2001)

Figure 3.19 shows that most of the supply of water to households is either inside the house and or within the yard. In a very few cases, the supply is on a community stand (communal taps) or street reserve.

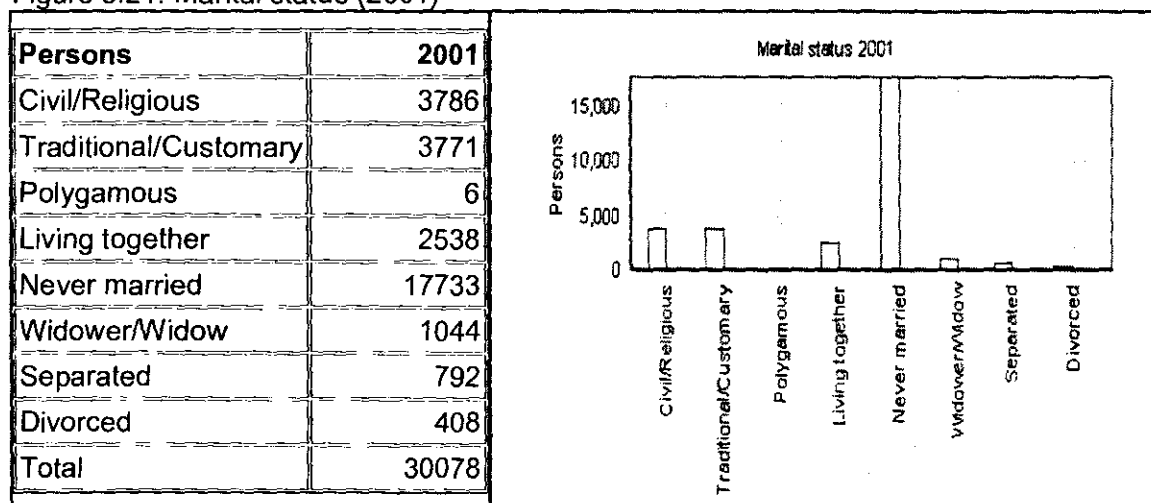
Figure 3.20: Annual household income



Source: StatsSA (2001)

Figure 3.20 shows that using the MLL of R800, about 64.2 percent of the households earn incomes of R800 or less per month (or R9600 or less per annum). The households without any income amount to 36.6 percent.

Figure 3.21: Marital status (2001)



Source: StatsSA (2001)

At the time of the 2001 Census most of the Evaton West community consisted of people who were never married (including children). Only a few are in civil and traditional marriages. This may also be accounted for by the relatively youthful (15-34 years of age) population of the area as indicated above.

### 3.3 Community development initiatives

Evaton West is a relatively young community consisting mainly of young people (15 to 35 years of age) and a large number of children. Most of these young people are unemployed and live in poverty as was shown in the sections above and also will be in the next two chapters. Because it is a young community, it apparently does not have deep set and shared community ways of thinking. This makes it susceptible to change and presents a conducive condition for positive influence. Partly because of this, it has attracted a number of organised initiatives aimed at developing the community and reducing poverty. Two of these major initiatives are discussed hereafter.

### **3.3.1 CoLtAPIA®**

CoLtAPIA®, which stands for *Centres of Learning to Alleviate Poverty in Africa*, with assistance from the then Vaal University of Technology (VUT) and the Emfuleni Municipality, started to work in Evaton West in 2001 on a poverty alleviation programme. CoLtAPIA® is a Pretoria, South Africa, based NGO working among communities in South Africa and the rest of Africa. This NGO organises the community leaders into formulating a vision for their particular community, developing (in conjunction with the community members) particular strategies to achieve such a vision, prioritises such strategies and helps to elicit funding for such priorities. Parallel to this process, the NGO offers a leadership training course for the selected leaders. The role of local government in these processes is essential. The outcomes of a typical CoLtAPIA® project are a range of small, normally inter-dependent, businesses and projects (such as sewing groups, bread-baking and fence-making businesses) run by, managed and controlled by the involved community-members.

In an interview with the Director of CoLtAPIA®, it was revealed that after observing its successes with the community of Mautseng in the Free State, where small but successful poverty alleviation programmes were initiated through CoLtAPIA®, the Vaal University of Technology approached the NGO to replicate this in Evaton West. The University financed the original (first year) part of the project. The Emfuleni Local Municipality was requested to be a partner in the project.

The aim of the project was community-driven development focussed on poverty alleviation that included leadership training. Twenty five representatives were selected to be part of the programme (representing the Evaton West Community Development Forum, Vaal Triangle Technikon and the Emfuleni Municipality). All of the selected persons are active community workers.

#### **3.3.1.1 Project outline**

Not much has been written about CoLtAPIA® and references are mainly from interviews (FGI, with EWCDF and with Dr. Brenda Olivier, CoLtAPIA®'s director),

presentations notes (from the poverty alleviation training) and short notes (handouts) given out during the course of the project.

The Evaton West project started with the identification of the pilot community (Evaton West) in which all aspects of the project were focussed. It was intended to run over twelve months and to entail the following:

#### **3.3.1.1.1 Poverty alleviation training**

This step comprised the training of 25 community development workers, including 15 key leaders, in the Evaton West community in the following aspects:

- Introduction to poverty and self-help
- Organising a community self-survey
- Identify, prioritise and analyse needs
- Envisioning workshop
- Identifying markets and viability
- Writing project plans
- Writing project proposals
- Fundraising
- Community co-ordination
- Legal issues
- Budgeting and financial management
- Entrepreneurial development

The approach to this training included contact sessions as well as mentoring during implementation. Other services offered by CoLtAPiA® included:

- Group Sessions
- Report back on projects
- Mentoring of projects
- Networking with donors, specialists and industrialists
- Conflict resolution

- Link with people who can provide technical training (such as the Department of Agriculture)
- Facilitating community meetings
- Telephone support.

The outcomes of this stage included:

- Envisioning and prioritisation of needs by the community
- Projects identified and run with the community for the community
- Poverty alleviation

#### **3.3.1.1.2 Leadership development within the context of poverty alleviation**

In addition to the activities outlined above, the following phase was also undertaken. Good community leadership is seen by CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup> as essential to poverty alleviation. The phase was built into the project to develop such skills in the community leaders participating in the project. This phase included training of the identified leaders and community developers in the following aspects:

- Evaluation of present level of leadership development
- Design of a personalised development programme (PDP)
- Mentoring of leadership development for twelve months.

#### **3.3.1.2 The Process of community development as outlined by CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup>**

The processes outlined to the participants in the project included the following phases (CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup>, 2001):

- **Phase 1: Getting acquainted** – During this phase, the community workers make themselves known to the community and also let people interact to know each other. It is meant to establish rapport and create a trusting environment and engagement. This step is about community self-survey.

- **Phase 2: Needs identification** – This phase is meant to allow the community to identify and prioritise the needs of their particular community. Once the profile of the community has been developed, needs can then be identified. The nature, causes and extent of these needs are also determined.
- **Phase 3: Envisioning** – During this step, the community is assisted to develop a community vision. The step answers the question: what would you have liked to achieve in the community if you had limitless resources?
- **Phase 4: Planning** – The outcome of this step is a well-written project proposal to sponsors. Short-term objectives, barriers, resources, co-ordination and networks are all analysed during this step.
- **Phase 5: Implementation** – This step is about people empowerment and self-help. Some of the steps in this phase include skills transfer (technical, managerial, inter-personal and entrepreneurial), finding sponsors and seed capital, finding appropriate technologies and reporting progress to the sponsors.
- **Phase 6: Evaluation** – Ongoing evaluation of progress and implementation is essential for success and ensures discipline. A summative evaluation at the end of the project will indicate whether the vision has been achieved.
- **Phase 7: Expanding the vision** – Following the success of the previous vision, the community builds on it to formulate further and broader visions.

### 3.3.1.3 Focus areas of the project

The project's focus areas in Evaton West were identified as follows:

Poverty Alleviation through:

- *Income Generation* – reducing unemployment, lack of skills, lack of financial support by creating small business, offering effective training programmes and sourcing funding from private and public sector sources.
- *HIV-Aids targeting* – offering home-based care to sufferers and training volunteers.

- *Health* – since there is no clinic, there are only poor emergency services and widespread malnutrition, it was necessary for these issues to receive attention.
- *Education and Literacy* – problems identified included overcrowding and poor management of schools and no further education and training (FET) or adult basic education and training (ABET) centres. These issues were also to be addressed.
- *Welfare and Youth* – lack of recreational facilities, lack of skills training, lack of information and career guidance, loitering and crime.

### **3.3.1.3.1 The roles of the various partners**

The roles of the various partners in the project were designated as follows:

- *Vaal University of Technology – Centre for Community Service:*  
The part played by this Centre included:
  - Organising beneficiaries
  - Assisting in drawing up project constitutions and business plans
  - Training in entrepreneurship and sustainable development strategies to participants.
  - Overseeing the project over the agreed period.
- *The Local Council and Industry:*  
The Local Council and industry should assist in identifying and providing land for use in these projects, and other resources as and when required. The Council should be the main driving force behind these developments.

### **3.3.1.4 Evaluation of the project by the focus group**

The participants (both community leaders and beneficiaries) in the focus group interview (FGI) stated that they found the CoLtAPiA® methodology to be very helpful in assisting the community to be involved in its own development, in empowering individuals and in assisting the community to seek solutions themselves rather than have outside people do this for them. They also pointed



out that the leadership training they received was instrumental in assisting especially the community leaders to discover themselves and to lead effectively.

The main criticisms of the project were as follows:

- Time factor – Not enough time was given to the project. The project was terminated abruptly due to lack of funding. Its results could not be evaluated due to the fact that the project had not been brought to its logical conclusion. It was brought to a close before the good initiatives it kicked off could take ground.
- Lack of written materials: No written notes or materials were given for reference by the participants. This may also be linked to funding. This led to people not reviewing or consolidating what they were learning. As a result many soon forgot what they had learned.
- Business focus: The project was seen as too business-oriented in favour of those who ran it: this was seen almost as a race issue. This issue may be linked to the two above in that when funding dried up, the project stopped.
- Lack of close monitoring by the Vaal University of Technology (VUT) that sponsored the programme was also seen as a contributing factor to its demise. This may just be an incorrect perception as monitoring was done by the Community Service Department of the VUT.

### **3.3.2 Eindhoven Municipality**

The intervention of the Eindhoven Municipality in Evaton West arose as a result of the twinning of the then Lekoa/Vaal municipality and the City of Eindhoven in Holland (Record 1999). In 2001, the Emfuleni Local Municipality requested Eindhoven to provide support in getting working experience with the newly-introduced Integrated Development Plans (IDPs) process, not only from a theoretical perspective, but also through practical experiences (Blankwater, 2002). Evaton West was then identified as a pilot site for the programme. A two year programme was outlined together with the Evaton West Development Forum. The main thrust of the programme was the Objective-Oriented Project

Planning (OOPP) methodology which may be summarized as follows (Blankwater, 2002: 7):

- Defining realistic and unique objectives,
- Stimulating communication between those in charge of the project as well as between the project and its donors,
- Clarifying responsibilities of those in charge of the project and others interested in or affected by the proposed activities, and
- Providing indicators for both project monitoring and evaluation.

The councillors and community members were trained in this methodology. As a result of this programme, three main groups were formed out of representatives from the Evaton West Community Development Forum, members of the community, Local Council representatives and specialists/technocrats (from the various professions and professional bodies, e.g. medical doctors and lawyers). All the groups were trained locally and abroad (in Eindhoven, Holland). The following were three different groups (Blankwater 2002 and Blankwater 2003):

***Local Economic Development (LED) pilot project group***

This LED pilot project was aimed at stimulating economic development in the area. The group found out that the biggest economic problem in the area was its weak economic performance which then spiral let into a vicious circle affecting health, crime and family problems. They further found that:

- Services were not paid for, leading to services being suspended or not being supplied as required.
- No new products or economic activities were developed.
- The area was therefore unattractive to investors.
- Businesses could not survive and would soon collapse.

The LED group proposed that the development of a local business centre should assist businesses survive by offering a number of services to them.

### ***Health pilot project group***

This group had over sixty health volunteers meant to assist the community in various ways from health awareness campaigns to home-based care for the terminally-ill. The group found that Evaton West experienced an increase in the number of sick people, a condition on which poverty thrives. The lack of a proper health service in the area exacerbated the situation. They found that the most prominent health problems in the area were HIV/Aids and general health problems (these included nutritional deficiencies, lack of proper hygiene, as well as alcohol and substance abuse). A number of programmes were initiated by the group to try to improve the situation, focussing primarily on health education.

### ***Waste pilot project group***

This group was formed to deal with solid waste management and to develop strategies to earn income through waste. This group also focused on environmental management programmes. The group found that there are two major problems regarding waste in Evaton West, normally a lack of refuse collection service and a lack of environmental education and awareness. This group identified the following activities:

- Development of environmental education programmes for schools,
- Organisation of workshops to educate parents on environmental issues,
- Organisation of environmental competitions,
- Organisation of awareness campaigns regarding green environments,
- Organisation of cleaning campaigns,
- Organisation of tree planting activities,
- Stimulation of vegetable gardening projects, and
- Use of the media to spread the 'green message'.

#### **3.3.2.1 Evaluation of the project by the focus group**

The focus group interview (FGI) participants saw the involvement of the Eindhoven Municipality as an empowering undertaking, assisting the community of Evaton West in a number of ways. The continued involvement of the

Eindhoven Municipality was seen as essential to the development of Evaton West in a number of ways. The project is also seen as empowering to the local municipalities and councils. It was also seen as helping bring the government closer to the people. The constitution, as well as the tasks of the groups discussed above, was also confirmed. The group also pointed out that the groups helped the community a lot by involving specialists (like medical doctors and lawyers) who would otherwise not be readily available in Evaton West.

The only shortcomings identified with regards to this programme were funding and the lackadaisical involvement of the local councilors, for example non attendance to scheduled meetings. The project was otherwise praised as being very successful in making a difference to the lives of people living in Evaton West.

### 3.4 Summary

This chapter outlined a profile of Evaton West, mainly by using the Census 2001 data published by Statistics South Africa. Evaton West is a township situated south of Johannesburg, west of 'old' Evaton and north of Beverly Hills, was shown to have the following statistics:

Indicator	Evaton West
Population:	30079 individuals
Youth (0 to 35)	72.9 percent
Employed	5385 persons
Unemployed	8268 persons
Not economically active	6171 persons
Total labour force	13653 persons
Employed in elementary occupations	1884 persons
Earning R1600 and less	6549 persons (83.9 percent of earners)
Disabled	1704 persons (5.7 percent of the population)

Central to this chapter was a short description of the community-driven development initiatives in Evaton West. CoLtAPIA<sup>®</sup> was as an NGO working with communities towards poverty alleviation and leadership training. It assisted the Evaton West community in the process of envisioning an ideal future for the community, developing strategies to achieve these, prioritising these strategies

and sourcing funding for priority strategies. The projects were run in conjunction with the local government in Emfuleni.

The Eindhoven Municipality's involvement came about as a result of the twinning of cities in the Netherlands and in the Vaal Triangle in South Africa. Three effective local community groups have already resulted from their co-operation with Evaton West. These are the Health Group, the Local Economic Development group and the Environmental Group.

Chapter 4 and Chapter 5 will study Evaton West in detail using predetermined indicator with a view to assessing poverty levels and unemployment as well as community level indicators.

## **Chapter 4**

### **Analysis of household indicators in Evaton West compared to Bophelong**

#### **4.1 Introduction**

In the previous chapter, an outline of the two major initiatives in Evaton West was presented, as was a general outline of Evaton West. This chapter will make use of this information to assess levels of specific indicators in relation to poverty alleviation. The discussion will encompass the different indicators of poverty and welfare in Evaton West and compare Evaton West with Muvhango (Bophelong) in respect of these indicators. The comparison is to establish whether Evaton West, having received the attention it has in terms of the various initiatives at poverty alleviation, is better off currently than Bophelong.

The rationale behind the choice of Muvhango (Bophelong) lies in the fact that the two townships are both relatively “new” areas as both are the result of the government’s RDP (reconstruction and development) housing projects. Muvhango (Bophelong) has also recently been similarly profiled (by Slabbert, 2003) and both are relatively equal in size (household count) (StatsSA, 2001). The difference between the two lies in the fact that whereas Evaton West has received a great deal of attention from a number of development initiatives, Muvhango (henceforth simply referred to as Bophelong), has comparatively not.

The information for Evaton West was analyzed from household questionnaires administered in the area during October/November 2003 (henceforth referred to as Mokoena (2003)). The information for Bophelong is based on a study conducted by Slabbert (2003). A fuller discussion on the survey design and methodology is contained in Annexure 1 of this study.

## 4.2 Demographic and employment profiling

This section will employ various indicators to develop a profile of Evaton West, as well as to compare these with the Bophelong profile.

### 4.2.1 Demographic profile

The demographic analysis is in terms of gender, age, length - and reasons of stay in the Vaal Triangle area, as well as education levels of the Evaton West community. This analysis is essential to establish similarities and differences between the two communities being compared, namely Evaton West and Bophelong.

Figure 4.1: Gender distribution of the Evaton West population in 2003



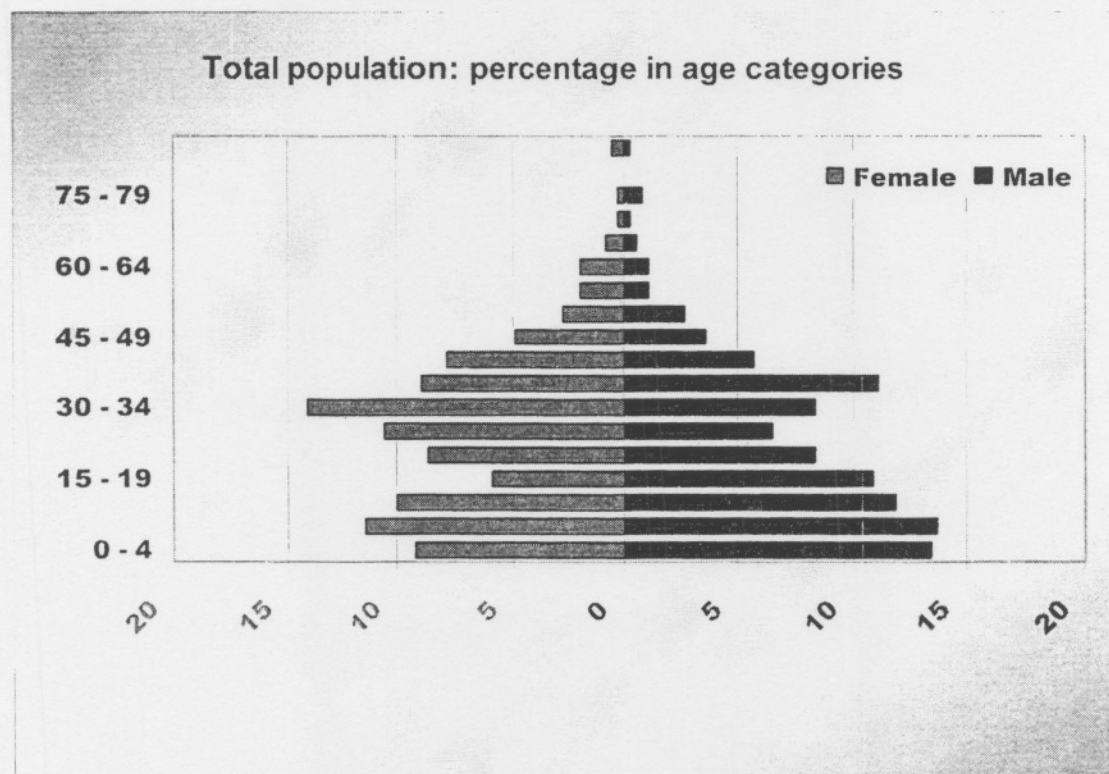
Source: Mokoena (2003)

Figure 4.1 shows the gender distribution of the population of Evaton West. It shows that approximately 51.1 percent of the population is male, while 48.9 percent is female. The figures for Bophelong show that 46.5 percent of the population is male, while 53.5 percent is female (Slabbert, 2003:4). For South Africa, the national figure is 47.7 percent male and 52.3 percent female (StatsSA, 2003: 7). For the Gauteng province, the percentages of males and females are given as 51 percent male and 49 percent female and it is the only province with a

slightly higher number of males to females (StatsSA, 1999: 8-9). The figures for Evaton West are therefore closely concomitant with the bigger picture (Gauteng).

Figure 4.2 shows the age distribution of the population of Evaton West. It shows that 33.3 percent of the female population lies between 20 and 40 years of age, while 36.6 percent is 19 years of age and younger. The comparative figures for males are 34.1 percent and 50 percent respectively. This means that 50 percent of the male population is younger than 20 years of age and 84 percent younger than 40 years of age. The male population is therefore relatively young (certainly in comparison to the female population). For Bophelong, most of the male and female population is also concentrated within the 20 to 40 years of age range. There appears therefore to be a large population of working age within both communities.

Figure 4.2: Total population of Evaton West in age categories - 2003



Source: Mokoena (2003)

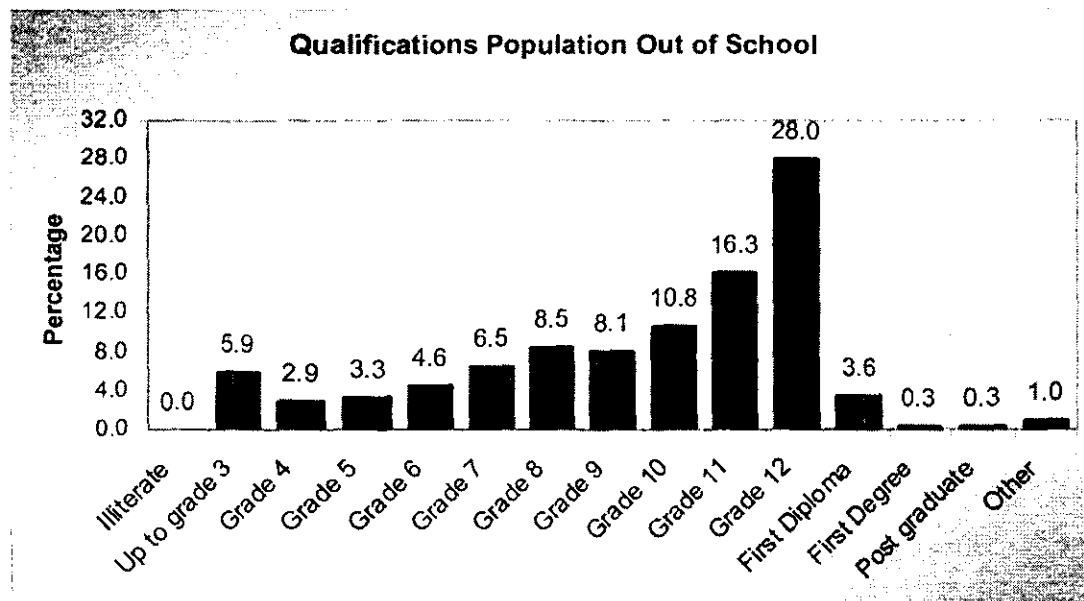
The qualifications of people who are out of school in Evaton West are shown in Figure 4.3. The figure shows that over 32.2 percent has grade 12 and higher



qualifications. This figure is only 22.8 percent for Bophelong (Slabbert, 2003: 5), ten percent less than Evaton West. If those with grade 11 are also added, then the figure rises to approximately 49 percent for Evaton West and 38.5 percent for Bophelong. There seems to be quite a difference between the two communities with respect to education levels.

A notable point is also observed in terms of the category "illiterate" (this category refers to no schooling, rather than illiteracy). Evaton West shows that in the sample, the data returned zero percent for this category while Bophelong showed five percent. The comparative category is recorded as approximately twelve percent for Gauteng (for Blacks) (StatsSA, 1999: 39).

Figure 4.3: Qualifications of out of school population in Evaton West - 2003



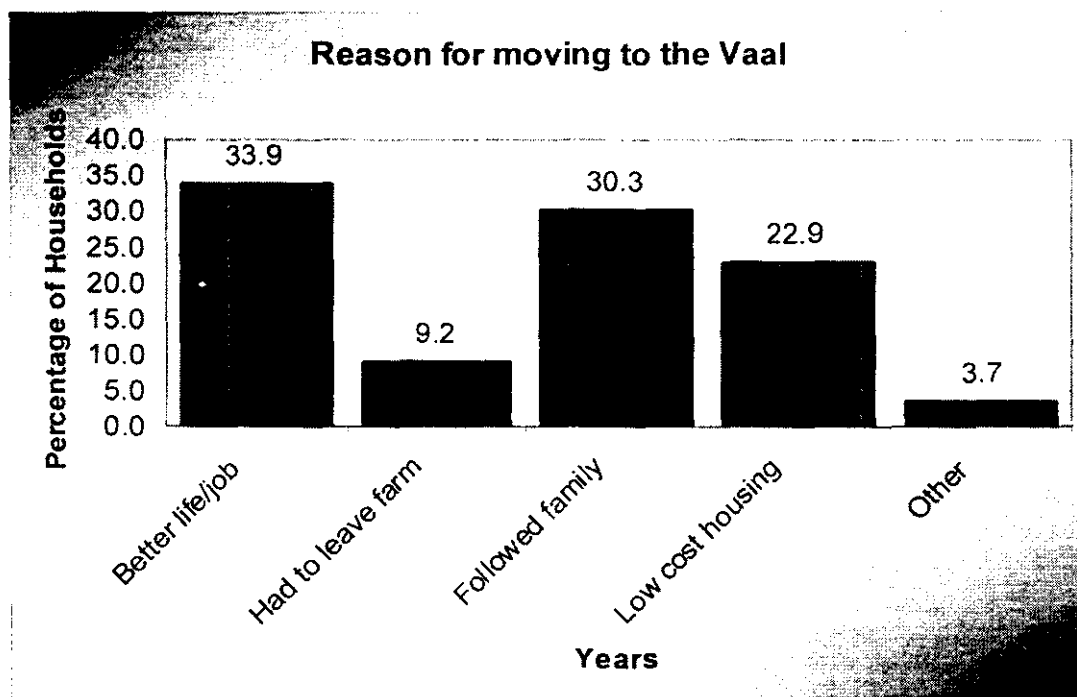
Source: Mokoena (2003)

The reasons why people moved into the area are shown in Figure 4.4. Most respondents stated that they either followed family or were looking for better opportunities, i.e. better housing and looking for a better job.

The survey data (Mokoena, 2003) shows that, on average, people have been in the area for around 30 years, for most that means their whole lives. It is interesting that in the case of Bophelong, the average length of stay is mostly

around 28 years. People in Evaton West came mostly from Evaton proper ("old Evaton") (which is celebrating its centennial year in 2004) (Frankel, 2001).

Figure 4.4: Reasons for moving to the Vaal: Evaton West - 2003



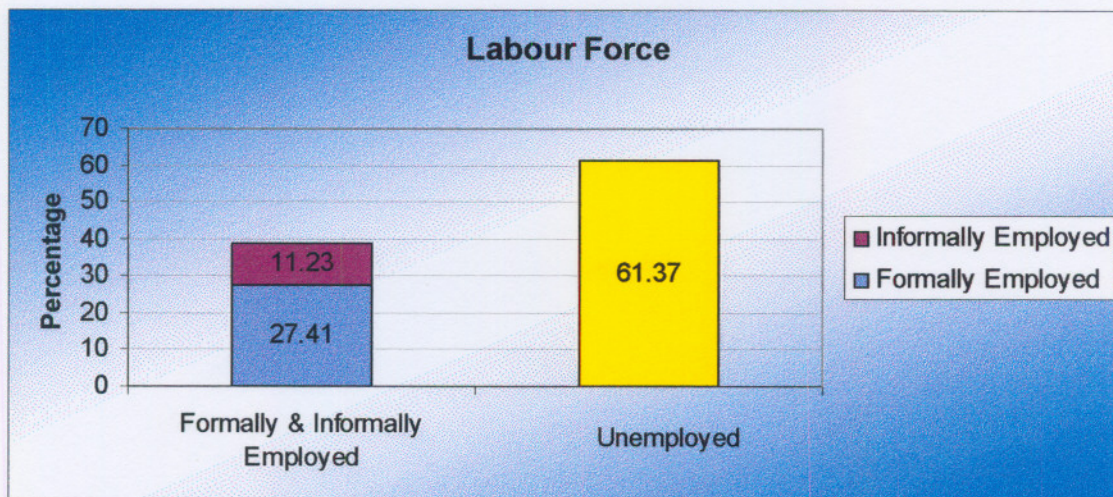
Source: Mokoena (2003)

Most would therefore have been in the Vaal Triangle area for most (if not for the whole) of their lives.

#### 4.2.2 Labour force

From the survey data (Mokoena, 2003), unemployment in Evaton West was calculated at 61.37 percent. This is depicted in Figure 4.5. This rate is approximately equal to the total Emfuleni rate which is 61.7 percent in 2003, but much higher than the Bophelong figure which was determined at 55 percent (Slabbert, 2003: 6-7). The average size of households is 3.78 persons, of which, on average, 1.12 persons are unemployed. This figure (of the average household size) is slightly higher than the Bophelong figure and slightly lower than the Emfuleni figure.

Figure 4.5: Composition of the labour force in Evaton West - 2003

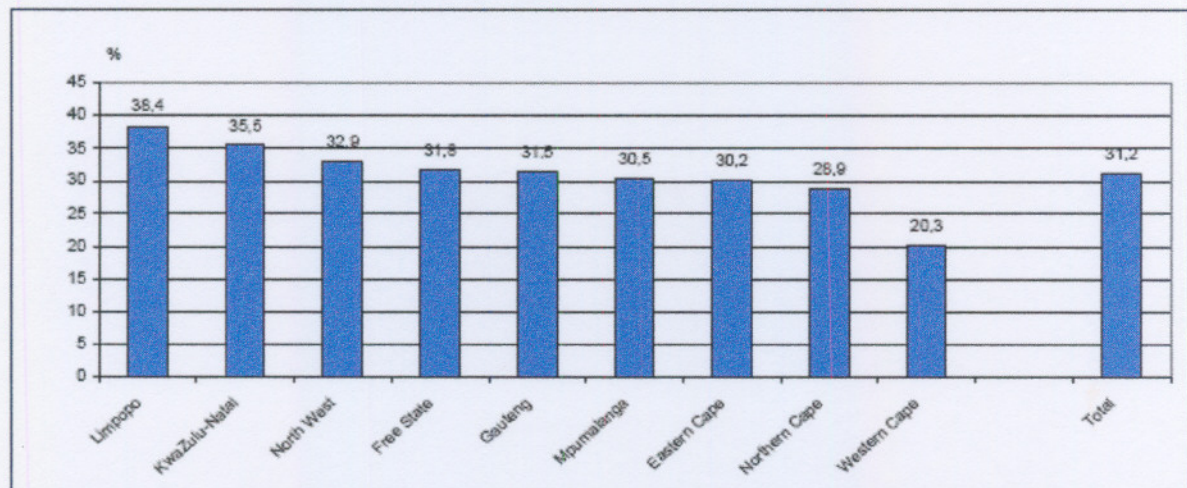


Source: Mokoena (2003)

Figure 4.5 also shows that of the total labour force, 27.4 percent are in formal employment while 11.23 percent are employed in the informal sector. The formal employment figure for Bophelong is higher (34.9 percent) and the informal employment figure lower (ten percent). The figures are comparatively similar to the Emfuleni figures (27.78 percent and 10.51 percent).

Figure 4.6 shows the unemployment rate (using the official rate) for all provinces and for the country in 2003. It shows that the figure for Gauteng is 31.5 percent and for South Africa it is 31.2 percent.

Figure 4.6 Unemployment rate by province



Source: Global Urban Observatory (2001: 2)



Most of the employed in Evaton West are employed in low income, vulnerable and short-term jobs. This exacerbates poverty levels. Global Urban Observatory (GUO) (2001: 2) points out that the urban poor are likely to be engaged in casual and informal sector work. Employment insecurity and irregularity of incomes are therefore, the risks that they are exposed to. Lack of skills is a common characteristic of the urban poor, implying an inability to get well-paid jobs.

GUO (2001: 2) also points out the lack of safety nets and labour protection as a problem facing the urban poor. Urban poor are not protected by health and unemployment benefits or worker safety regulations and the like because most of them are employed in informal sector jobs. Furthermore, their low and irregular incomes prevent them from getting on to private insurance and pension schemes. This lack of protection exacerbates the vulnerability of the urban poor.

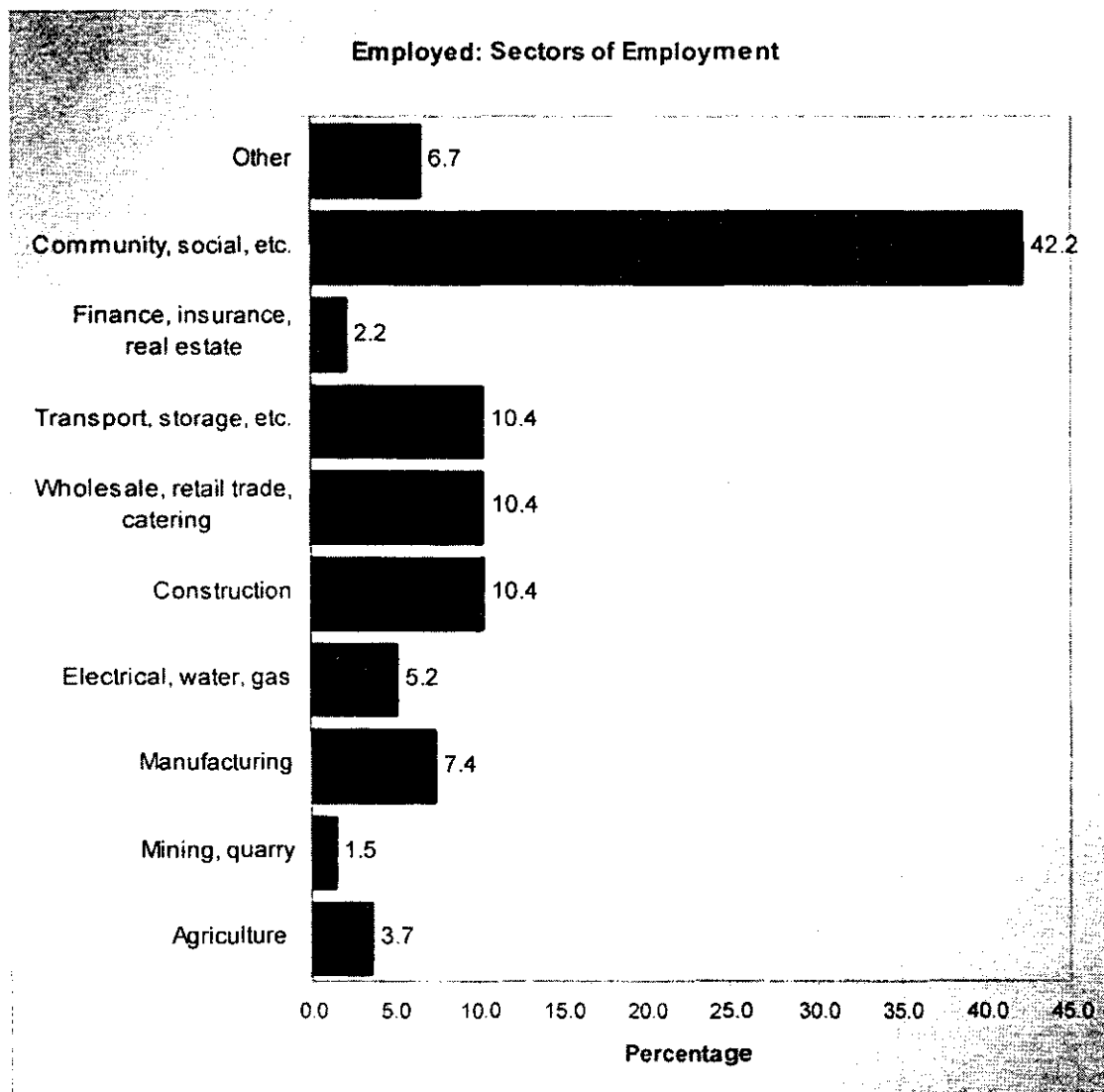
#### **4.2.3 The employed and the unemployed**

This section profiles the employed as well as the unemployed population in Evaton West, contrasting it with those of Bophelong and Emfuleni.

The sectors of employment for the employed population of Evaton West are shown in Figure 4.7. This figure shows that most residents are employed in the sector named "community, social and personal services". From the community survey (Mokoena, 2003), it was found that the majority of people employed in this sector are domestic workers and gardeners. The category "community, social and personal services" is followed in importance by the category "transport, trading and construction sectors".

These figures are in stark contrast to the figures for Bophelong and Emfuleni. The "services" category for Bophelong is 21.9 percent and for Emfuleni it is 23.5 percent. It is 42.2 percent for Evaton West.

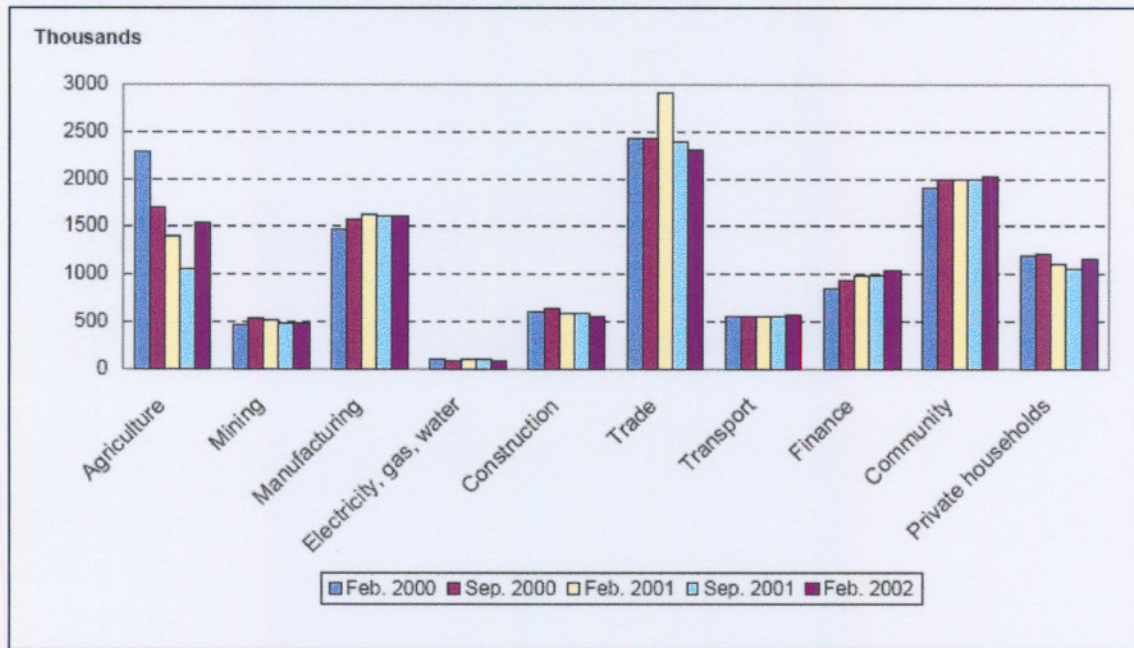
Figure 4.7: Sectors of employment for the employed



Source: Mokoena (2003)

The figures for Gauteng, as depicted in Figure 4.8 show that the sector “community, social and personal services” is also quite high (18.9 percent), second only in importance to “wholesale and retail trade” in 2002. The average for Evaton West is more than twice as high as for Gauteng. Bhorat (1999: 1) states: “Domestics and farm-workers may have jobs, but they are still living in poverty. While less than four percent of labourers in the mining and manufacturing sectors live in poverty, 38 percent of domestics are poor and 27 percent of farm-workers earn below the poverty line.” The 42.2 percent of workers employed in the services sector may therefore imply high levels of poverty in Evaton West.

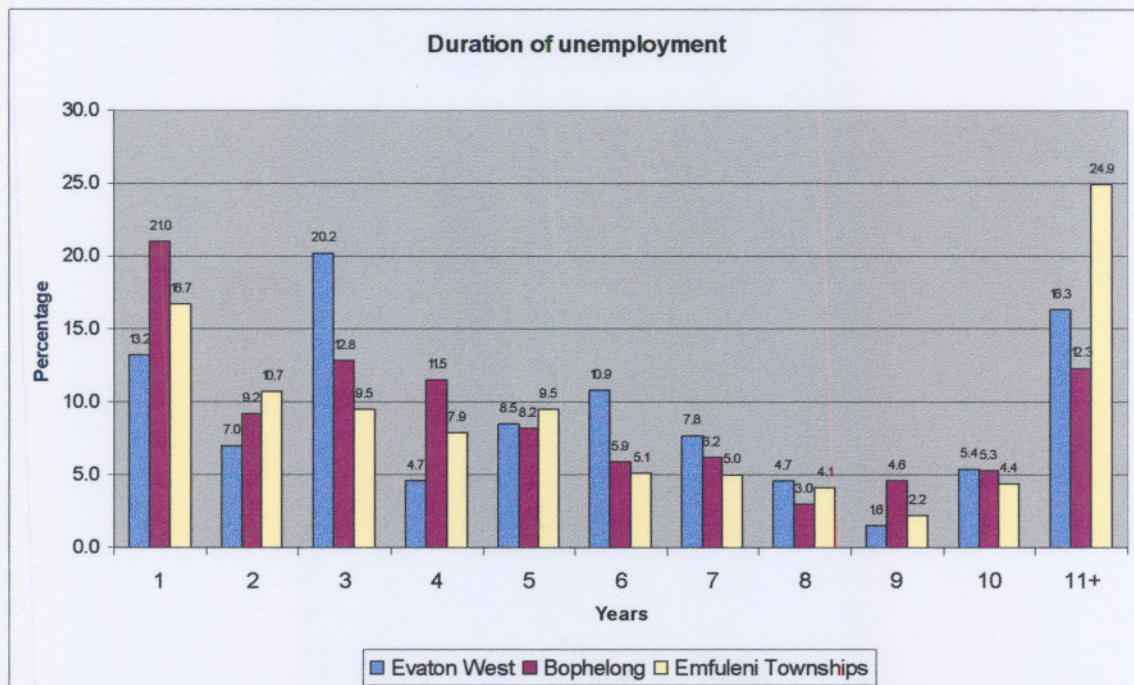
Figure 4.8: Employment by sector in Gauteng



Source: StatsSA (2002: v)

Many unemployed persons have been unemployed for a number of years as shown in Figure 4.9.

Figure 4.9: Duration of unemployment: Evaton West - 2003



Sources: Mokoena (2003) & Slabbert (2003: 8)

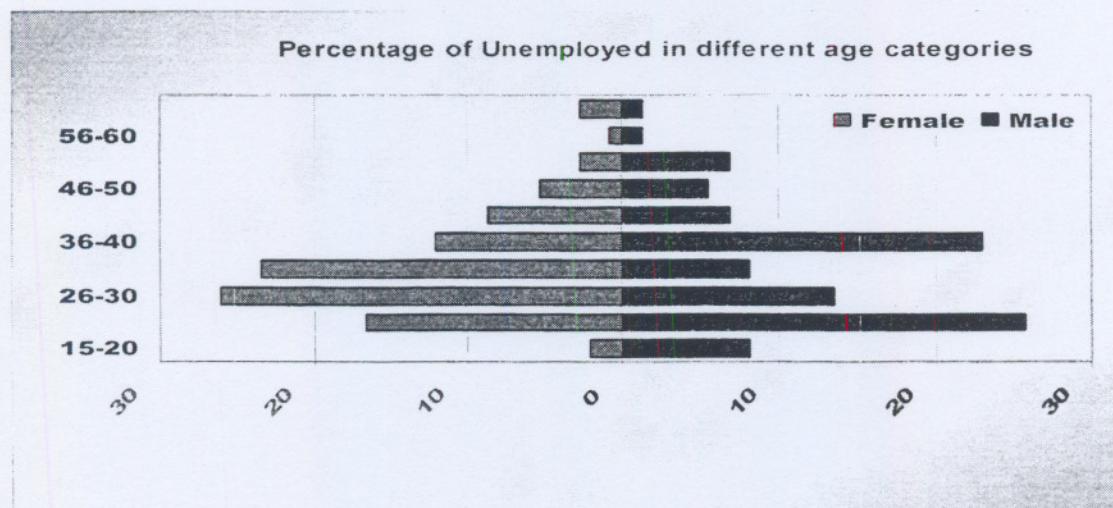


The figure shows that on average most of the unemployed in Evaton West have been unemployed for over three years. The percentage of people unemployed for 5 years and longer is 55 percent for both Evaton West and Emfuleni Townships and only 45.5 percent for Bophelong. This may be due to the fact that Bophelong is nearer to towns and residents there find short-term employment much easier than the more geographically displaced Evaton West.

This implies that the unemployed in Evaton West have, on average, been unemployed for longer than those in Bophelong. The percentage of people unemployed for 5 years and less is 62 percent for Bophelong and only 53.5 percent in Evaton West, emphasising the point that Evaton West has a higher rate of people unemployed for longer periods. GPN (2000: 5) points out that there is a high incidence of "discouraged job-seekers," with 43 percent of unemployed persons having searched for formal sector jobs for at least three years in South Africa.

Figure 4.10 shows the age distribution of the unemployed. In Evaton West, the main concentration is around the ages 20 to 35 for females and 20 to 40 for males. This is strikingly similar to the Bophelong distribution. The unemployed are therefore still relatively young in both areas.

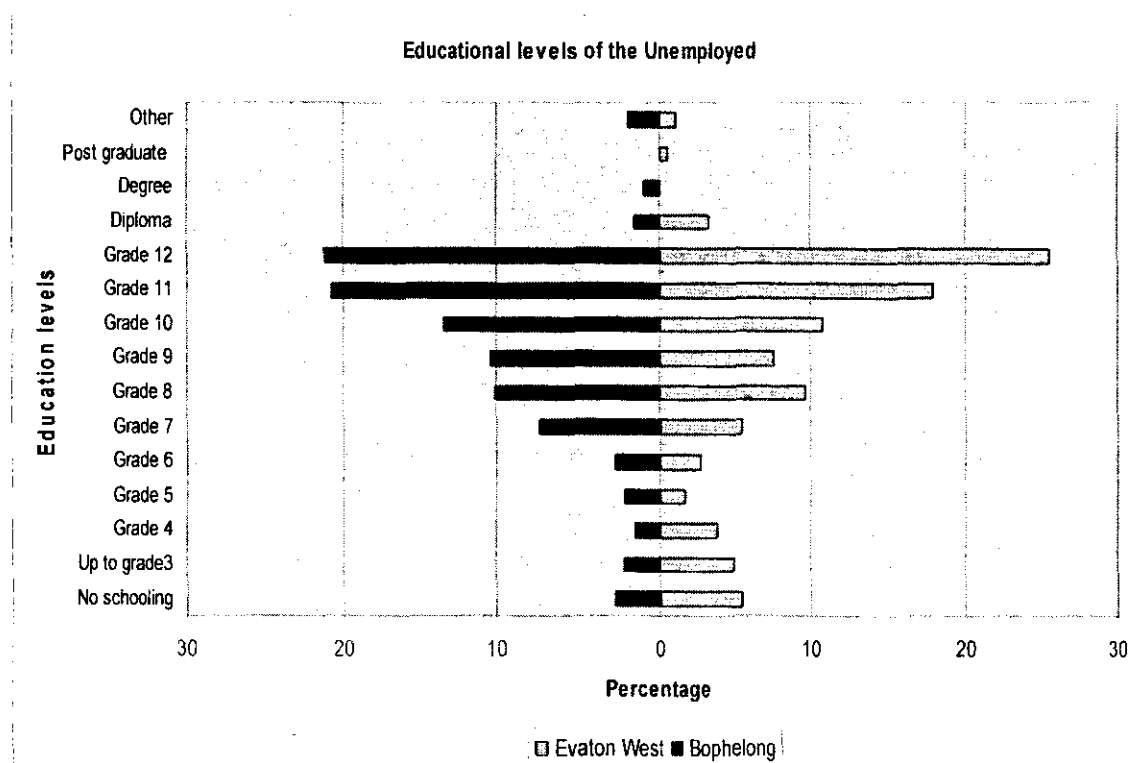
Figure 4.10: The unemployed in different age categories Evaton West - 2003



Source: Mokoena (2003).

Educational levels of the unemployed are depicted in Figure 4.11. This figure shows that for both Evaton West and Bophelong, a high number of the unemployed have educational attainments of grade 11 and higher. Over 40 percent of the unemployed in both townships have attained grades 11 and 12 as well as diplomas and degrees. Such persons have a relatively better chance at getting a job than others, especially those with grade 12 and higher (Slabbert, 2003: 9). These figures also agree with the Emfuleni Townships figures (Slabbert, 2003: 9) and also agree strongly with the Gauteng figures (StatsSA, 2003b: iv), the pattern is consistent. This might raise the question as to whether education can guarantee a job: it should be noted that although education increases the *chances* of finding a job, it does not necessarily *guarantee* one.

Figure 4.11: Educational levels of the unemployed in Evaton West - 2003



Sources: Mokoena (2003) & Slabbert (2003: 9)

### 4.3 Poverty and inequality

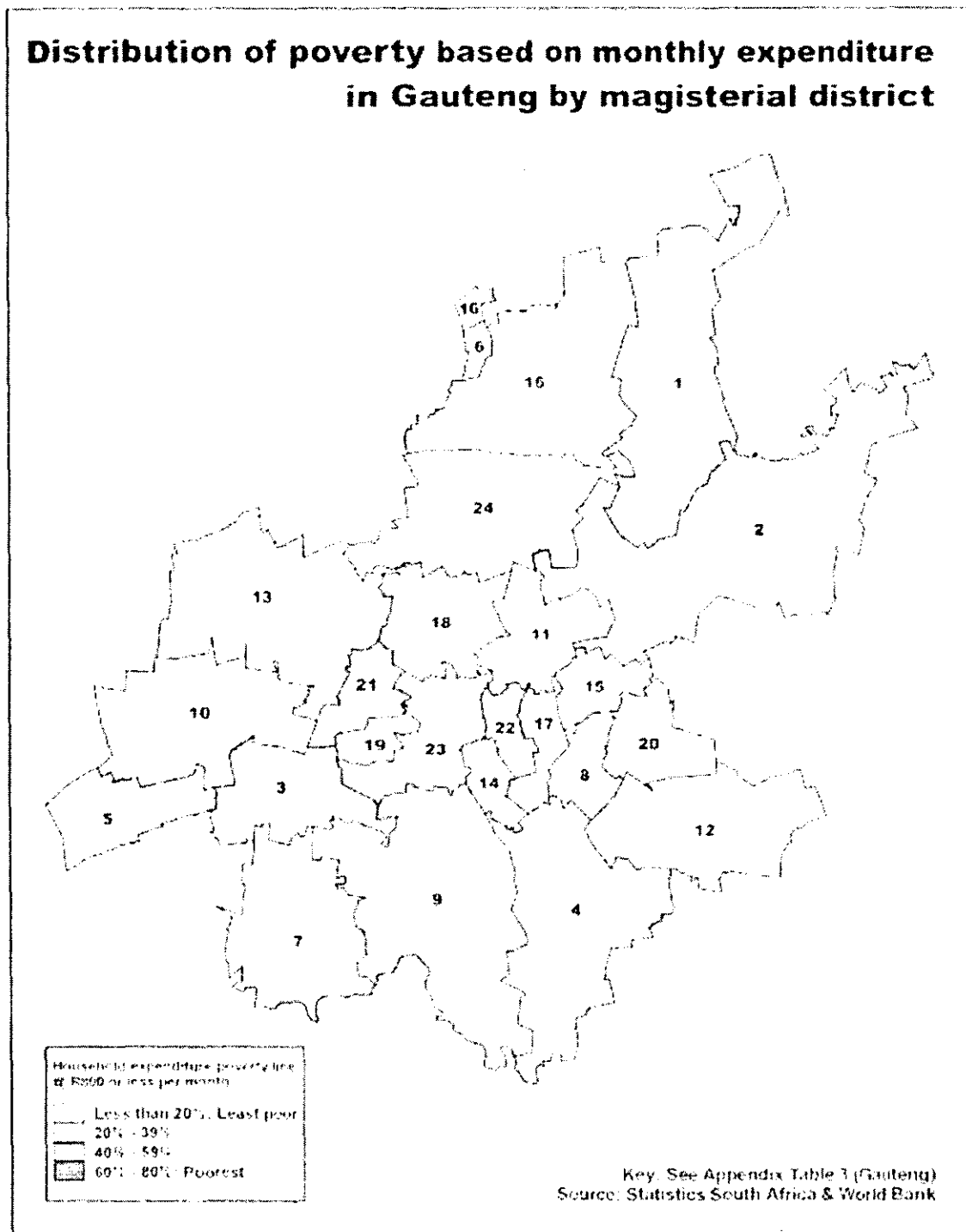
The measurement of poverty by StatsSA (2000) resulted in a poverty map of Gauteng as depicted in Figure 4.12. This map shows sector 7 as falling in the least poor category when using the R800 per month household expenditure



poverty line. This is the sector in which Evaton West falls. On a whole, StatsSA (2000) found that poverty in Gauteng is relatively low. This does not fully agree with other studies on the subject, especially in the Sedibeng (for example Slabbert, 2003). Poverty in the area is much higher than depicted in the map. The difference might lie in the instrument employed and the methodology used by the different researchers. The approach followed in this study is similar to the one employed by Slabbert (2003). The methodology for measuring poverty in this way is explained in Annexure 5. The HSL as proposed by Potgieter (1999) has been used as the poverty line.

The poverty rate as calculated from the survey data (Mokoena, 2003) for Evaton West is 69.5 percent (i.e. the headcount index, as discussed in Chapter 2, for the area is 0.695). The subjective poverty rate (felt poverty as indicated by the inhabitants themselves) came to 77 percent, i.e. 77 percent of the respondents answered that they consider themselves poor. This method relates to the Minimum Income Question (MIQ) discussed in Chapter 2.

Figure 4.12: Poverty map of Gauteng

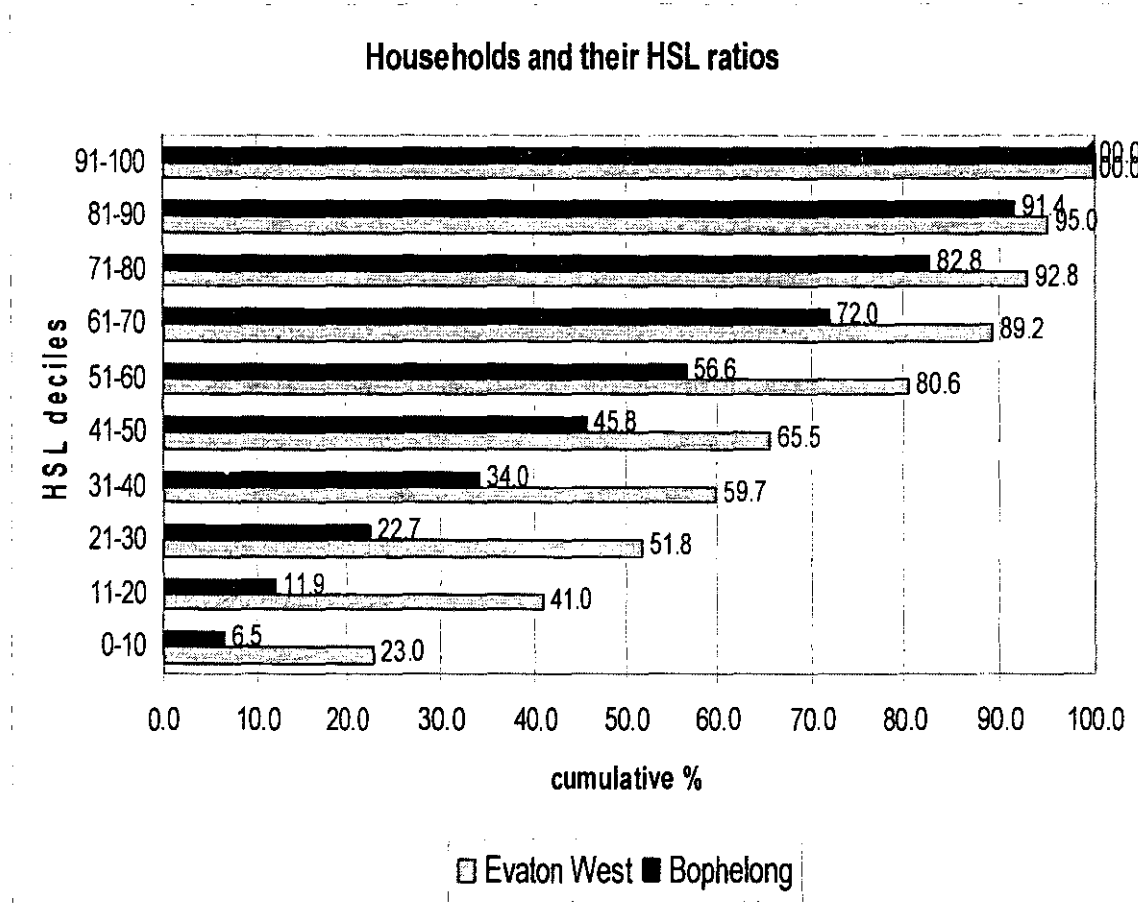


Source: StatsSA (1999)

Slabbert (2003: 13) points out that "if most households earn 90-100 percent of their own HSL, this would indicate that the poverty is not very severe". In line with this assertion, Figure 4.13 shows very severe levels of poverty in Evaton West. The figure shows the distribution of households according to their HSL. It shows

that 65.5 percent of households fall below 50 percent of their HSL compared to 45.8 percent for Bophelong.

Figure 4.13: Households and their HSL ratios - 2003

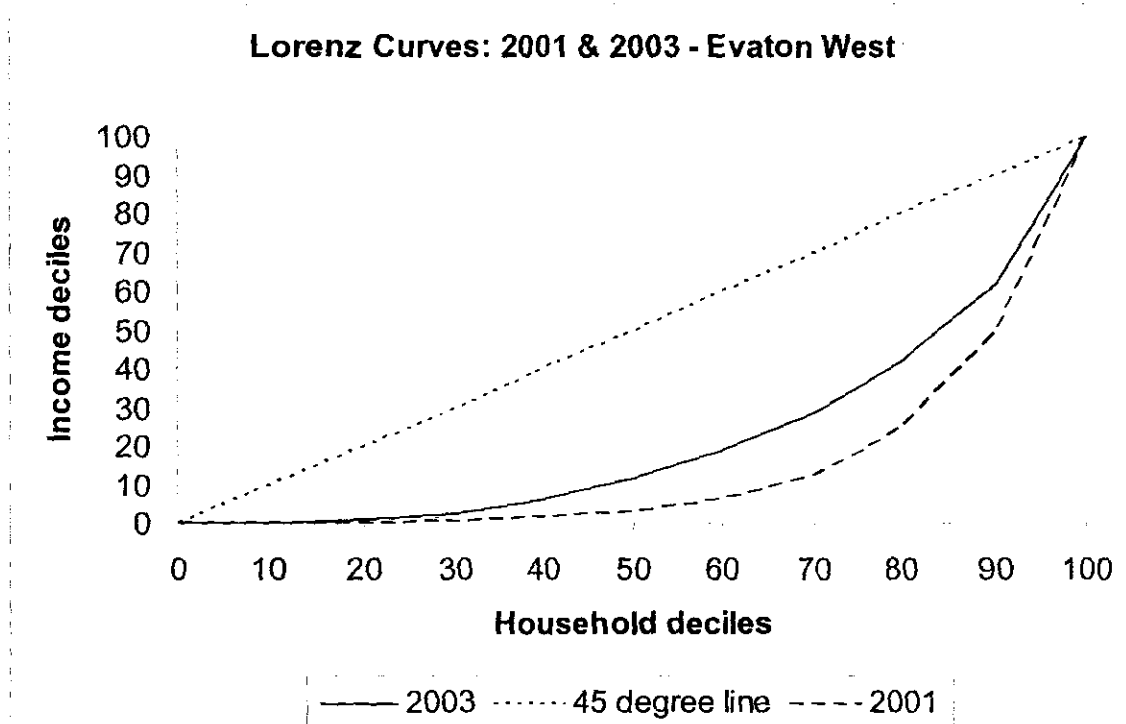


Source: Adapted from Slabbert (2003: 13) and Mokoena (2003)

The poverty gap ratio for Evaton West is calculated at 66 percent. This means that on average, the poor households fall 66 percent income short of their respective HSL. This is far higher than the figure for Bophelong (48 percent) as well as Emfuleni (47 percent). The 'depth' of poverty in Evaton West is therefore severe. The poor in Evaton West are consequently very poor when judged in relation to the HSL method.

### 4.3.1 Inequality

Figure 4.14: The Lorenz curves of Evaton West in 2001 and 2003



Source: StatsSA (Census 2001) and Mokoena (2003)

Figure 4.14 depicts the non-normalized Lorenz curves for the income distribution in Evaton West as calculated from the survey data (Mokoena 2003) and the 2001 Census data (StatsSA 2001). This Lorenz curve shows an uneven distribution of income. The 2003 line shows that 50 percent of households earn just above ten percent of the incomes. The top 20 percent earn about 60 percent of all incomes. The highest income earned by a household in the study area was R9000 per month, while the bottom fourteen percent earned no income at all. The 2001 line shows that 65 percent of the bottom income earners earned only about ten percent of incomes, while the top ten percent of households earned 50 percent of incomes. The top 20 percent of households earn about 75 percent of the incomes. This is a highly unequal distribution.

This pattern of inequality is reinforced by the Gini co-efficients for the area. From the survey data (Mokoena 2003), the Gini co-efficient is calculated at 0.53 for 2003, while from StatsSA (2001) data it was 0.75 for 2001. These are relatively

high co-efficients. They suggest that the distribution of income has moved towards equality over the period 2001 to 2003. Budlender (2000: 83) states: "Our own income and expenditure survey of 1995 gave an overall household Gini co-efficient of 0,59 [for South Africa]".

Table 4.1: Gini co-efficients by race in South Africa – 1975-1996

	1975	1991	1996
African	0.47	0.62	0.66
White	0.36	0.46	0.50
Coloured	0.51	0.52	0.56
Asian	0.45	0.49	0.52
For total population	0.68	0.68	0.69

(1=total inequality / 0=total equality)

Source: GPN (2000: 7)

Table 4.1 shows the Gini co-efficient by race in South Africa over the period 1975 to 1996. It shows in 1996, the African population had the highest co-efficient and was therefore the most unequal of all the races. The overall co-efficient was 0.69 which indicates a very highly unequal society. GPN (2000: 8) points out: "Between 1975 and 1996, intra-racial inequality increased within all race groups in South Africa. This heralds the movement of society from one where the poor are defined by race, to one where they will be defined increasingly by class."

### 4.3.2 Profile of the poor

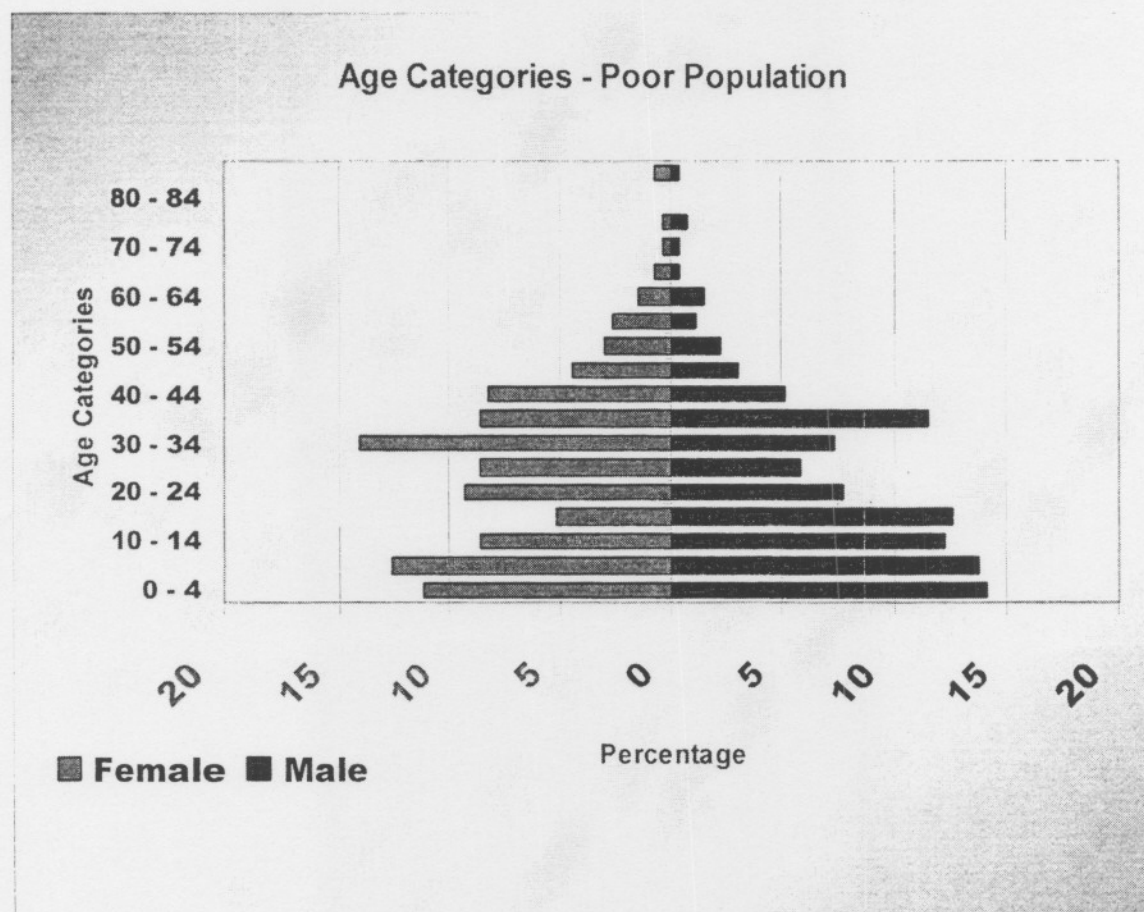
This section analyses the section of the population that has been found to be poor. It uses a number of indicators to profile the poor. The purpose is to show the differences between the poor and the total population as this will begin to show some trends of poverty in Evaton West.

#### 4.3.2.1 Age analysis

In keeping with the broader population trend of Evaton West, there is a slightly higher percentage of males living in poverty than women, i.e. 50.1 percent male compared to 49.9 percent female. Figure 4.15 shows the age distribution of the

poor population. It shows that 52.6 percent of the male population and 37.6 percent of the female population lies within the age bracket 0-19 years. This means that over half of the poor males are children and teenagers. The breakdown for the age group 20-39 is 40.2 percent female and 32.6 percent male. This shows that while the concentration for the male poor population is in the children and youth bracket, it is more evenly spread in the case of females. The poor population under 40 years of age accounts for 85.2 percent in males and 78.2 percent in females.

Figure 4.15: Poor population in age categories in Evaton West - 2003



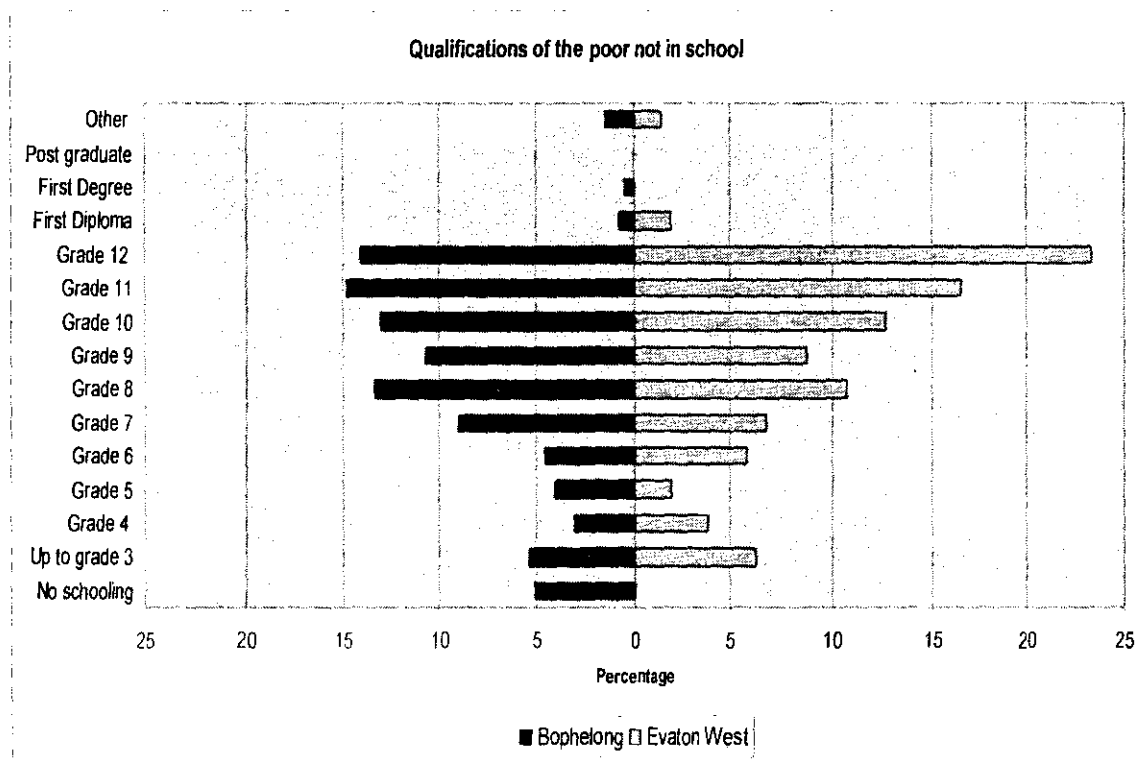
Source: Mokoena (2003)

#### 4.3.2.2 Education levels

Education levels of the poor population of Evaton West that are out of school is shown in Figure 4.16. It shows that about 25.2 percent of the poor post-school population has attained Grade 12 and higher educational levels compared to

32.2 percent for the combined population (poor and non-poor). The figures for Bophelong show a similar trend where 16.9 percent of the poor post-school population has a qualification of Grade 12 or higher, compared to 22.8 percent for the population as a whole. The Evaton West poor post-school population with diplomas is 1.9 percent and zero percent with degrees or post-graduate studies (4.2 percent for the combined population). This figure for Bophelong is 1.3 percent (3.1 percent for the combined population). Slabbert (2003: 14) concludes that this difference between the combined population and the poor shows an inverse correlation between especially higher qualification and poverty. This therefore implies that lack of education (especially higher education) may be a contributing factor to poverty.

Figure 4.16: Qualification of the out of school poor population - 2003



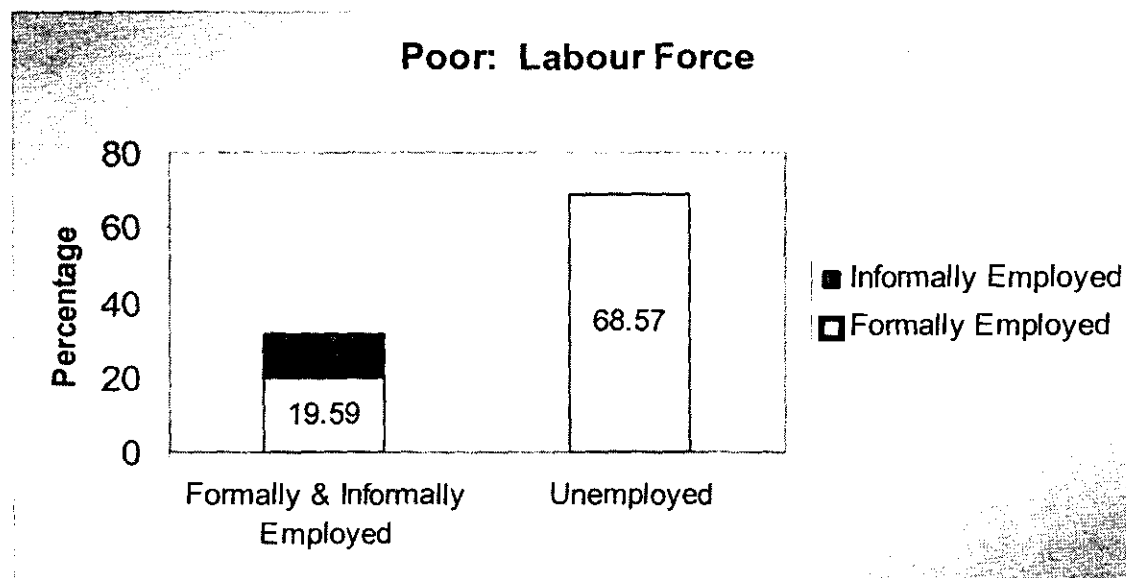
Source: Adapted from Slabbert (2003: 15) and Mokoena (2003)

#### 4.3.2.3 Employed poor

Figure 4.17 shows the composition of the poor population of Evaton West based on their employment status. It shows that, on average, the unemployment rate among the poor is 68.57 percent compared to 61.37 percent for the combined

population. For Bophelong, the comparative figure for the unemployed poor is 68.3 percent compared to 55.0 percent for the combined population (Slabbert 2003: 15). In the Emfuleni townships, 72.83 percent of the poor are unemployed compared to 61.71 percent for the combined population. There is therefore only a marginal difference among these townships.

Figure 4.17: The composition of the poor labour force in Evaton West - 2003



Source: Mokoena (2003)

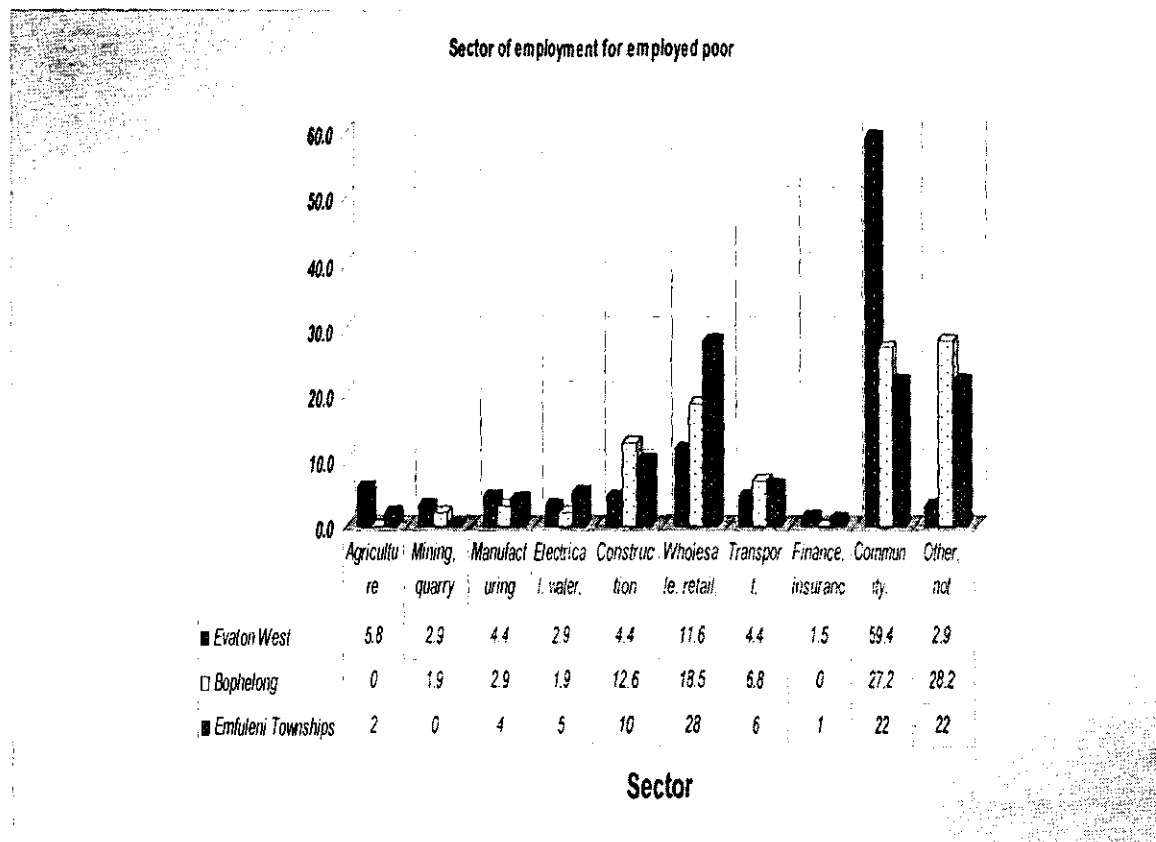
The figure further shows that of those that are economically active, 19.59 percent are in formal employment while 11.84 percent are in informal employment (compared to 27.4 percent and 11.23 for the combined population). The figures for the poor in Bophelong are 24.9 percent in formal and 6.7 percent in informal employment (34.9 percent and ten percent respectively for the combined population). In the Emfuleni townships, the figures for the poor are 18.27 percent formal and 8.9 percent informal employment. This indicates a closer correlation of Evaton West figures to the Emfuleni townships figures than to Bophelong figures. There are slightly higher employment figures in Bophelong than in Evaton West and Emfuleni townships.

The sectors of employment for the working poor are depicted in Figure 4.18. The figure shows that in Evaton West, 59.4 percent of the poor are employed in



sector: Community, social and personal services and 11.6 percent in the sector: Wholesale, retail, trade, catering. This accounts for 71.0 percent of the employed poor (52.6 percent for the combined population). The same categories account for 45.7 percent employed poor in Bophelong and 50.0 percent in the Emfuleni townships. These are sectors with comparatively low wages which easily lead to perpetuation of poverty, vulnerability to shocks and income risk (Kamanu & Morduch 2002: 1-10 and Dercon 2002: 2-6).

Figure 4.18: Sector of employment for the employed poor - 2003



Source: Mokoena (2003)

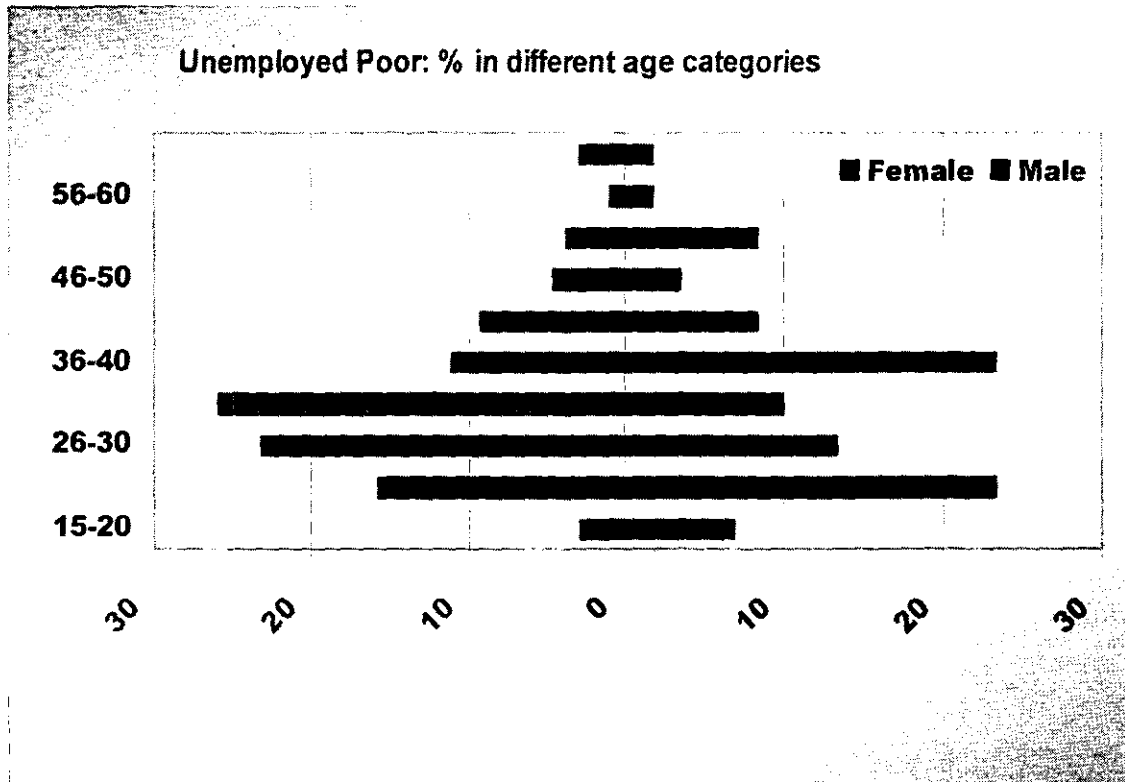
#### 4.3.2.4 Unemployed poor

This section examines the profile of the unemployed poor population in Evaton West compared to Bophelong.

#### 4.3.2.4.1 Age

The age distribution of the unemployed poor is shown in Figure 4.19.

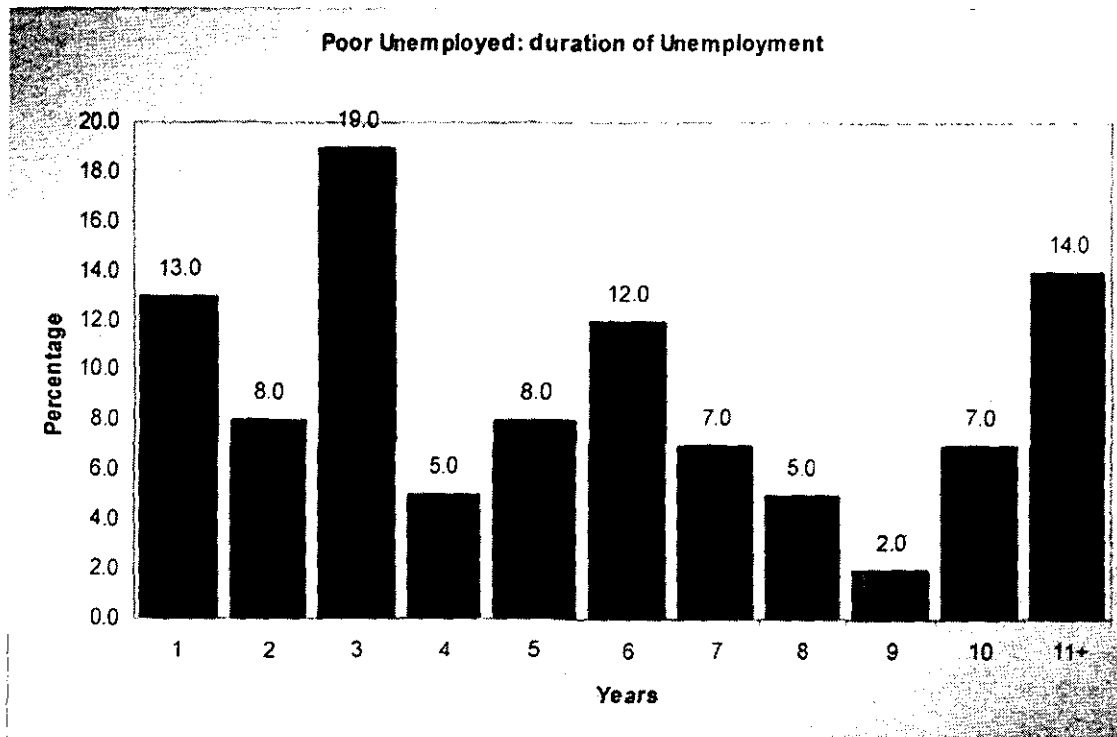
Figure 4.19: Age categories of the poor population in Evaton West - 2003



Source: Mokoena (2003)

The figure shows that the youth are the most affected by unemployment and poverty. 51.2 percent of the unemployed poor are in the age category 20-35 years. Females in this age category are more affected than males. There are 55.7 percent of unemployed poor females in this age category compared to 46.6 percent males. Comparatively, the figure for Bophelong for the population in this category is 58 percent. The combined figure for females is 61.5 percent and 52.2 percent for males. The figures for Bophelong are therefore higher than those for Evaton West.

Figure 4.20: Duration of unemployment for the poor unemployed population in Evaton West - 2003

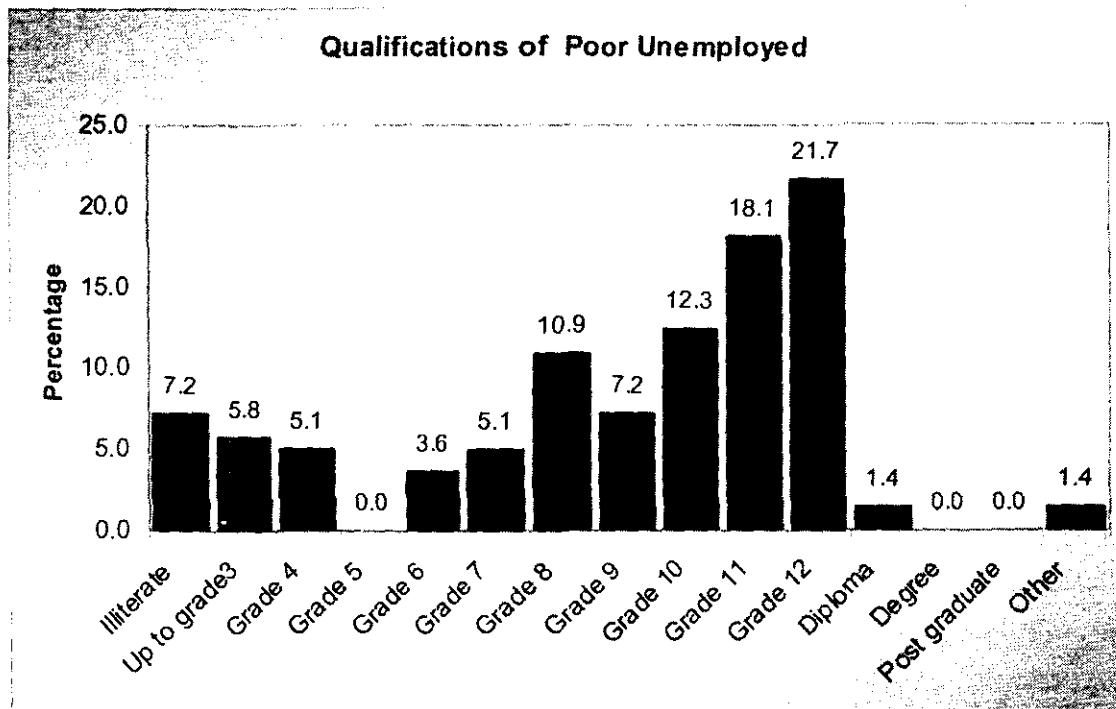


Source: Mokoena (2003)

The unemployed poor's duration of unemployment is shown in Figure 4.20. The figure shows that in Evaton West 40.0 percent (40.7 percent for Bophelong, 37.7 percent for Emfuleni townships) have been unemployed for up to three years while 53 percent (59.3 percent for Bophelong, 57.7 percent for Emfuleni townships) have been unemployed for up to 5 years. There is a slightly higher percentage of the poor unemployed for up to 5 years in Bophelong than in Evaton west.

Figure 4.21 shows the education attainments of the unemployed poor. It shows that the percentage of the unemployed poor with grade 12 and higher is 23.3 percent, zero percent with degrees or higher. This figure is 22.7 percent for Bophelong and 25.2 percent for Emfuleni townships. Only 1.4 percent have diplomas in the Evaton West population.

Figure 4.21: Qualifications of the poor unemployed in Evaton West - 2003



Source: Mokoena (2003)

#### 4.4 Income and expenditure

This section examines the state of income and expenditure in Evaton West. Although much care was taken to solicit as much information as possible on the different incomes and income sources, the 'phenomenon of expenditure surplus' (Townsend, 1971: 101-103) was observed in the survey for many households. This happens when expenditure exceeds income. The reason for this may lie in the fact that some households tend not to declare some income, especially if the source of such income is suspect (for example that gained through illegal means), but will more readily declare expenditures.

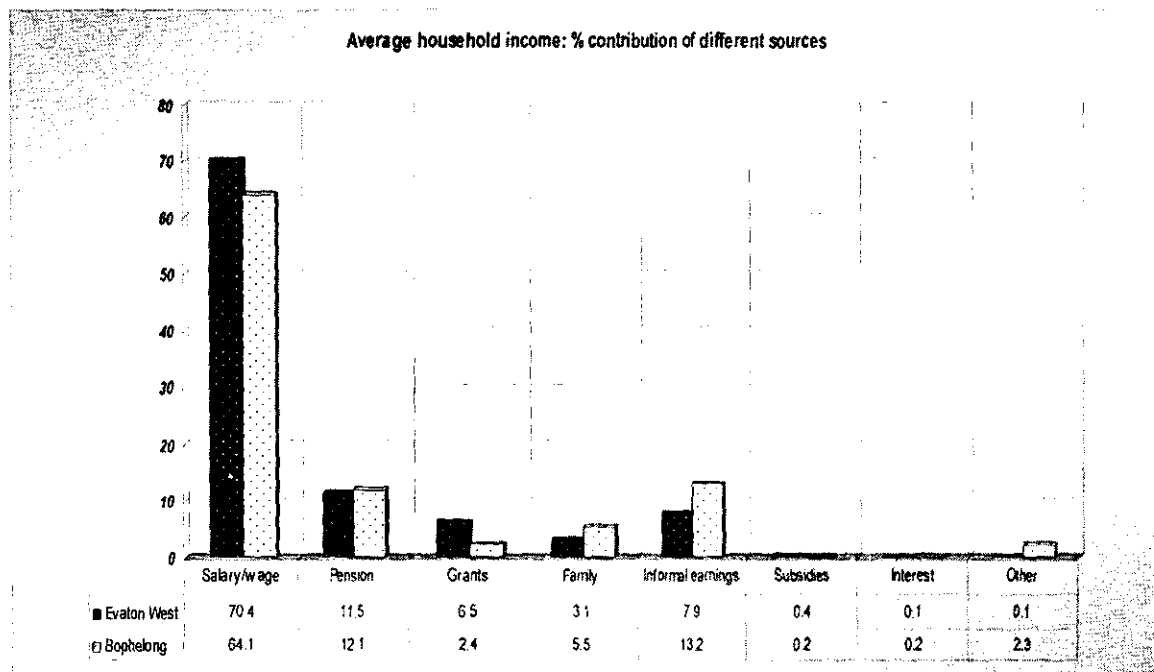
Low incomes compound the problem of poverty. Samson (2003: 1) points out that low or non-existent incomes compound poor access to health care, education, housing, and social infrastructure. Most of the poor live in households that receive no social security benefits at all.

The average income per household in Evaton West is approximated at R1288 per month (Mokoena, 2003). This has been calculated at R1497 for Bophelong

(Slabbert, 2003). This indicates higher incomes per household in Bophelong. Figure 4.22 shows the different sources of income and their contribution to the total income. It shows that in Evaton West, 70.4 percent (64.1 percent for Bophelong, 37 percent for Emfuleni townships) of household income comes from wages and salaries. This is therefore by far the primary source of household income, followed by pensions at 11.5 percent (12.1 percent for Bophelong and 29 percent in Emfuleni townships).

Although wages and salaries are a higher source of incomes in Evaton West when compared to Bophelong, the wages and salaries themselves are much lower in Evaton West than in Bophelong. Informal earnings contribute much more to household incomes in Bophelong and other Emfuleni townships than in Evaton West.

Figure 4.22: Percentage contribution of different sources to household income - 2003

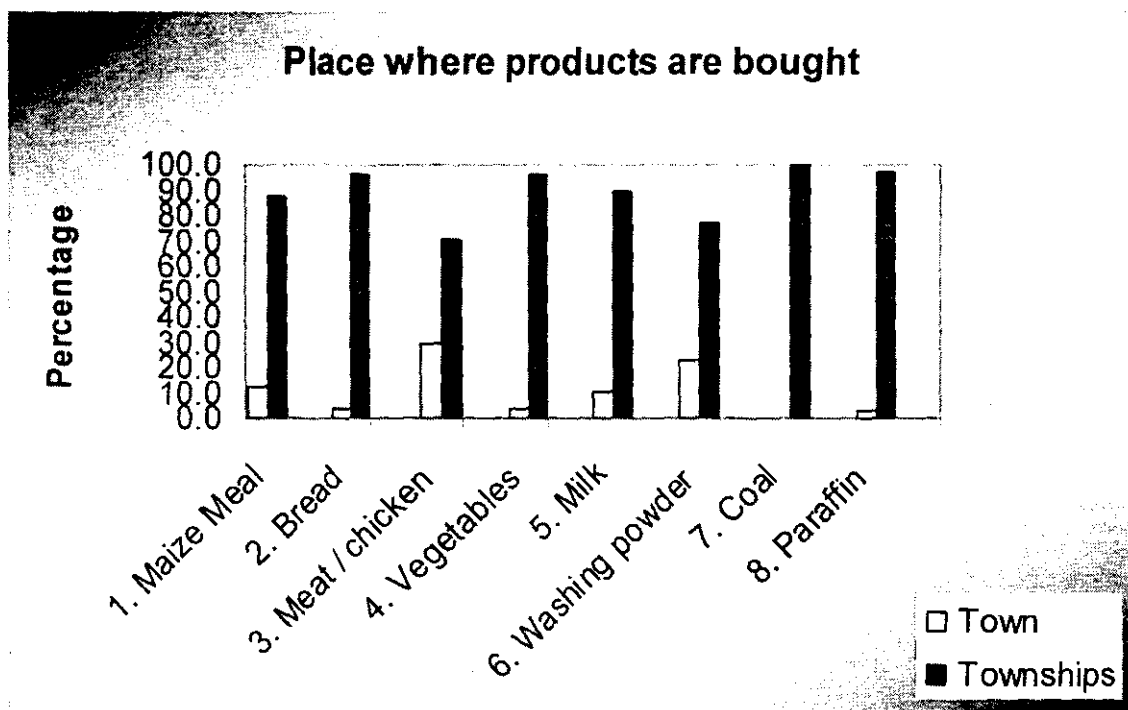


Sources: Adapted from Slabbert (2003) and Mokoena (2003).

The total expenditure of Evaton West as projected on the entire population (11410 households) from the sample figures, not only the sample statistics, show expenditure pattern on selected items. They show that the highest items of

expenditure are *white* and *red meat* followed by *maize-meal* and *bread*. This identifies these items as staple food in the area. The statistics for Bophelong follow exactly the same pattern, even though they are lower for each item. The figures from Bophelong and Evaton West show that item by item, *the price levels in Evaton West are higher than those in Bophelong*. This may be attributable to Evaton West's distance from alternative stores/shops, especially in town. Stores in Evaton West therefore face little competition and the transport costs to suppliers are also factored into prices and passed on to buyers.

Figure 4.23: Place where household products are bought – Evaton West (2003)

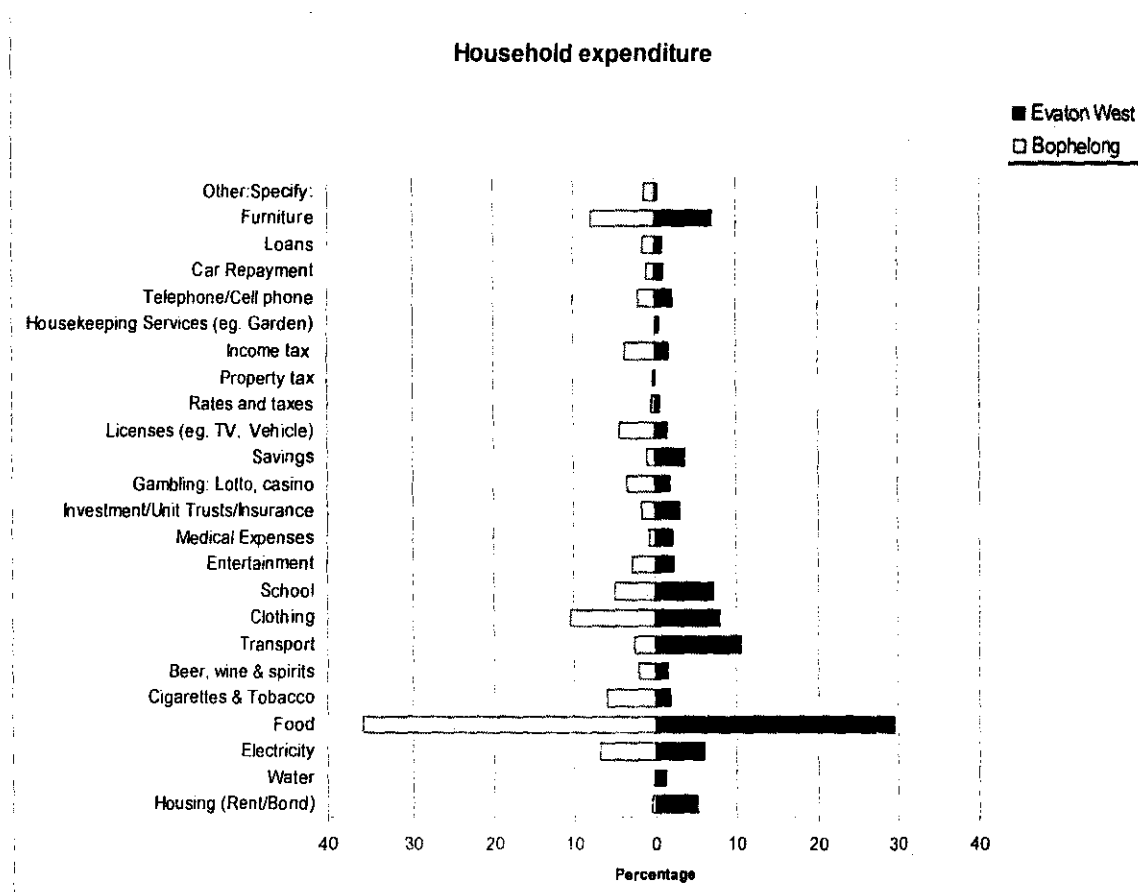


Source: Mokoena (2003)

Figure 4.23 shows where the items of expenditure are bought. It shows that even at the said higher prices, very few items are bought in the towns. This is in stark contrast to Bophelong where at least two of the items are bought mainly from town and a relatively high percentage of others are also bought from town. Once more, the distance to town (Vereeniging or Vanderbijlpark) proves to be a problem for Evaton West residents. The nearest town is at least two taxis away (the distance is about 40 km but necessitates that an individual rides two taxis, at least, to town). Bophelong residents can practically walk to town.

Figure 4.24 shows total household expenditures in Evaton West and in Bophelong. It shows that for both areas, expenditure on food is by far the highest. It amounts to 29.6 percent of the total expenditure in Evaton West compared to a higher 36 percent in Bophelong. Expenditure on transport is higher in Evaton West than in Bophelong. This emphasises the fact that Evaton West is much farther from sources of employment, schools and towns than Bophelong, where residents can walk to the nearest town. Expenditure on clothing, school, furniture and electricity is also relatively high for both areas. Housing (rent/bond), while almost nil in Bophelong (rightfully so since the houses are 'RDP' low-cost houses supplied free and almost rent-free by the authorities), is relatively high in Evaton West.

Figure 4.24: Household expenditure - 2003



Source: Adapted from Slabbert (2003: 22) and Mokoena (2003).

This high rent might be due to the fact that many people, after receiving the houses from the local municipality, have since left these houses and are renting them out to tenants. They therefore collect rent on these houses, putting a further burden on already strained household resources. The EWCDF is addressing the problem and will hopefully bring this practice to an end.

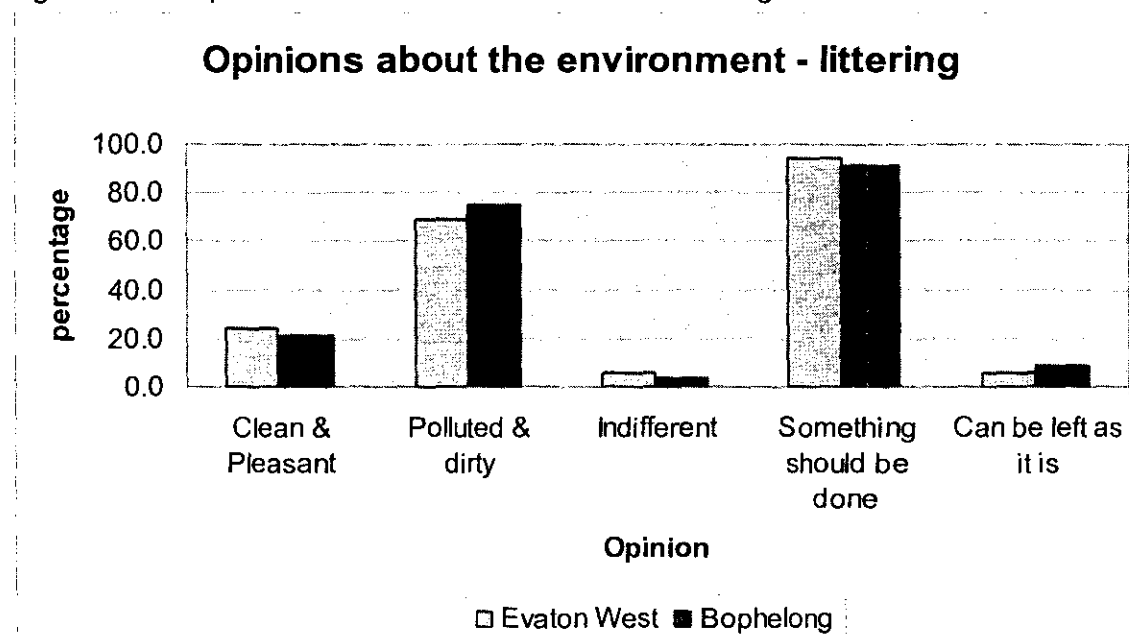
#### 4.5 Environmental issues

This section evaluates perceptions about pollution and cost of pollution in Evaton West compared to those in Bophelong as surveyed by Slabbert (2003). The section will focus on three types of pollution, namely littering, air pollution and noise pollution.

##### 4.5.1 Littering

Figure 4.25 shows residents' opinions on the state of the environment.

Figure 4.25: Opinions about the environment – littering: 2003



Sources: Slabbert (2003: 23) and Mokoena (2003)

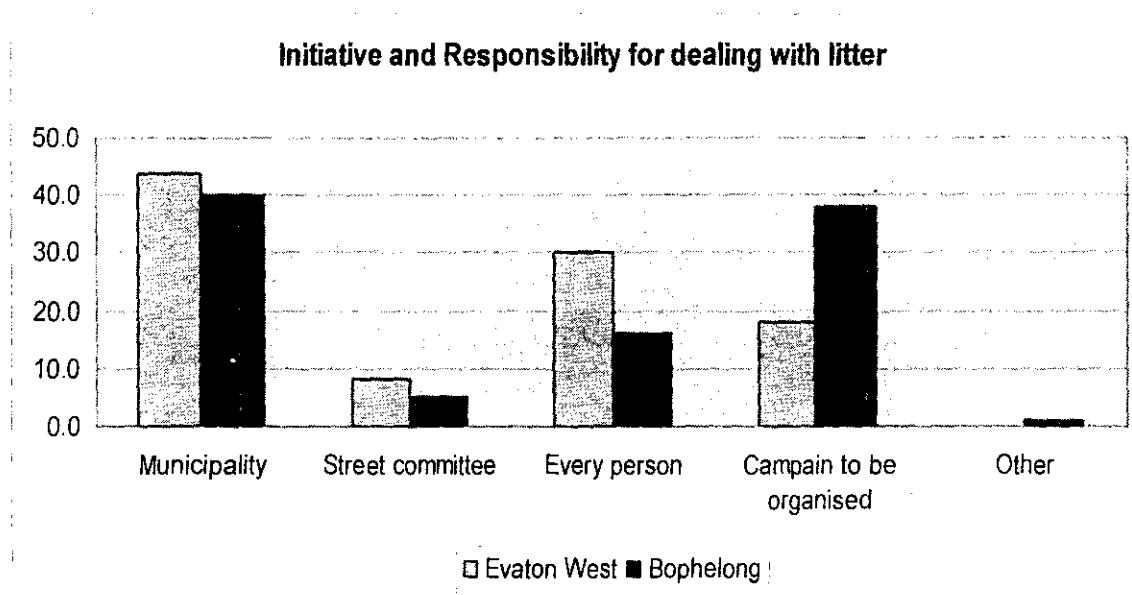
The figure shows that 69.3 percent of the population in Evaton West (75 percent in Bophelong, 69.7 percent in Emfuleni townships) feel that the environment is polluted and dirty. This probably relates to indiscriminate littering in non-designated areas. Respondents at the FGI (focus group interview) mentioned



that in Evaton West, the Environment group had already organised and run cleaning and “greening” campaigns with residents to deal with this problem. The figure further shows that 93.9 percent (91 percent in Bophelong and 88 percent in Emfuleni townships) feel that something has to be done regarding the polluted and unclean environment.

Opinions regarding who should take the responsibility of dealing with the unclean environment are shown in Figure 4.26.

Figure 4.26: Initiative and responsibility for dealing with litter - 2003



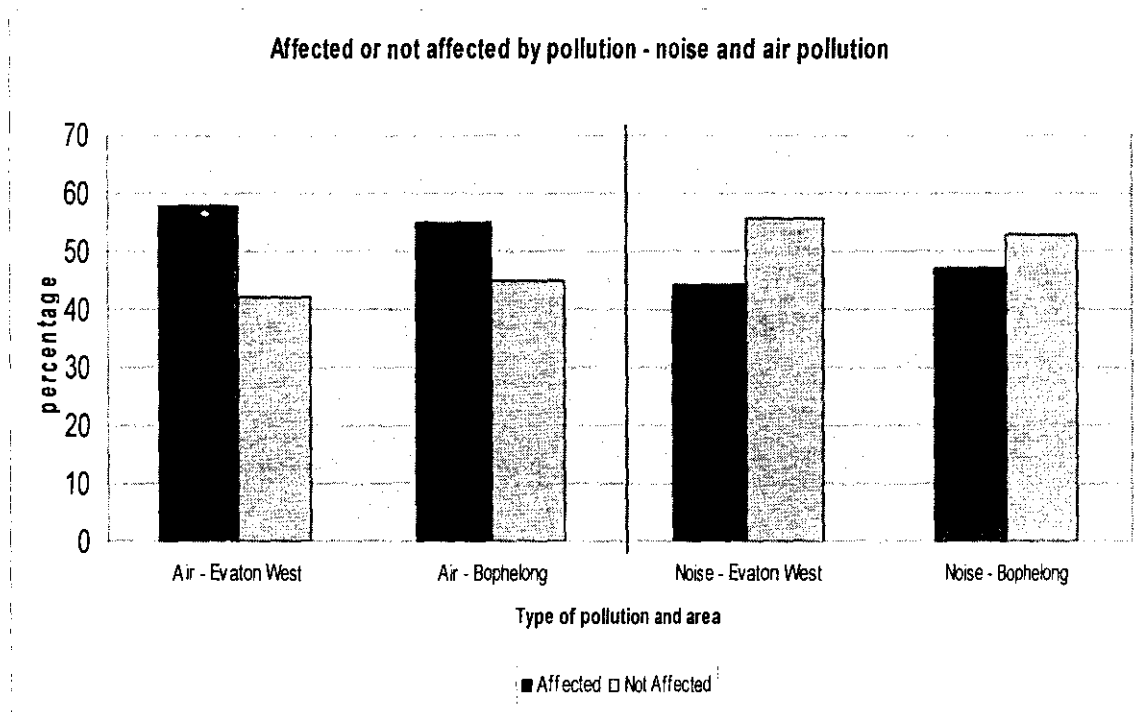
Source: Adapted from Slabbert (2003: 22) and Mokoena (2003).

The figure shows that 43.7 percent (40 percent in Bophelong, 41.7 percent in Emfuleni townships) of Evaton West respondents felt that the municipality should take the responsibility for cleaning the environment. Evaton West residents felt strongly that each individual should also take responsibility, while more in Bophelong felt that a campaign should be organised. This might be due to the fact that, as mentioned, Evaton West had already organised cleaning campaigns and felt that individuals should also play their role. An average amount that households felt they could spend for a clean environment is R91.31 per month compared to R236 in Bophelong.

#### 4.5.2 Air and noise pollution

Air pollution is mostly the result of smoke and dust in the townships. Noise pollution stems mainly from loud music and vehicles. Figure 4.26a shows the various community's responses as to whether they are affected or not affected by air and noise pollution.

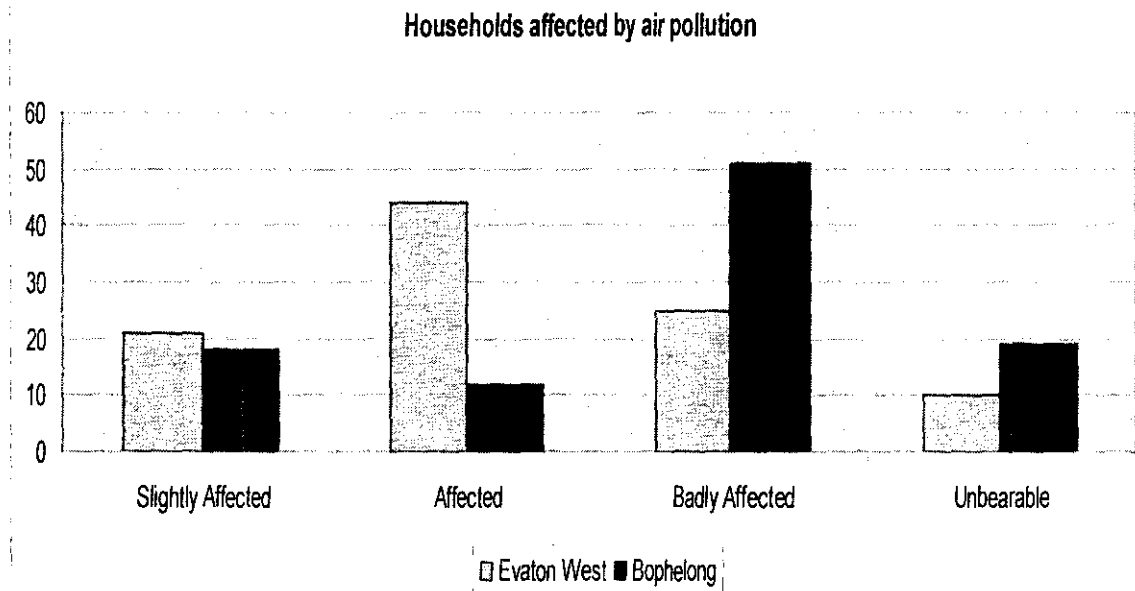
Figure 4.26a: Opinions on pollution: noise and air pollution - 2003



Source: Adapted from Slabbert (2003: 23) and Mokoena (2003).

In Evaton West, 57.8 percent stated that they are affected by air pollution. This figure is 55 percent for Bophelong and 73.5 percent in Emfuleni townships. The relatively greater figure for Bophelong may be accounted for by the fact that townships do not all experience the same level of air pollution. Townships that lie closer to large industries such as ISCOR, experience higher pollution levels than those in outlying areas. Although most of Evaton West uses electricity, its proximity to "old" Evaton where coal and paraffin are still widely used, makes it susceptible to smoke pollution. Gravel roads in places, as well as lack of trees and groundcover leads to dust, especially during the dry autumn and winter months.

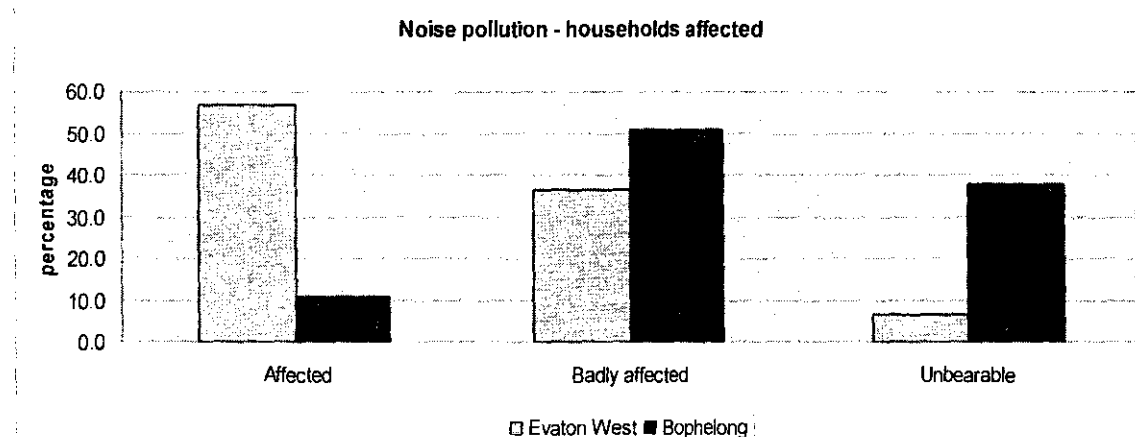
Figure 4.27: Households affected by air pollution - 2003



Source: Adapted from Slabbert (2003: 23) and Mokoena (2003).

Of those affected by air pollution, 65 percent are slightly or just affected (not severely or unbearably affected) in Evaton West (Figure 4.27). In Bophelong, 70 percent of those affected feel badly and unbearably affected by air pollution. There seems to be a much more serious problem in Bophelong than in Evaton West. The figure for Emfuleni townships is 62 percent for 'badly affected and unbearable'.

Figure 4.28: Households affected by noise pollution - 2003

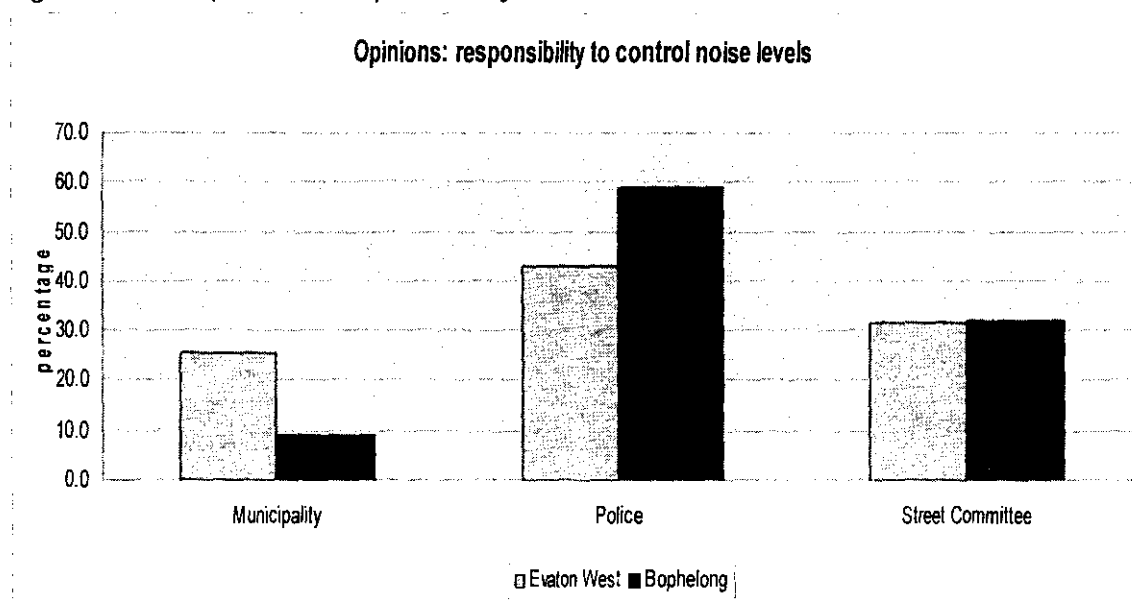


Source: Adapted from Slabbert (2003: 25) and Mokoena (2003).

Figure 4.26 also shows that 44.4 percent in Evaton West and 47 percent in Bophelong feel that they are affected by noise pollution (only 34 percent in Emfuleni townships). Less people are therefore affected by noise than are affected by air pollution.

In Evaton West, of those that indicated that they are affected by noise pollution 56.8 percent felt that they are just affected by noise. This figure is only 11 percent for Bophelong, 89 percent felt that they are severely affected (badly affected and unbearable). There seems therefore that there is a higher felt need for dealing with noise pollution in Bophelong than in Evaton West.

Figure 4.29: Opinions: responsibility to control noise levels - 2003



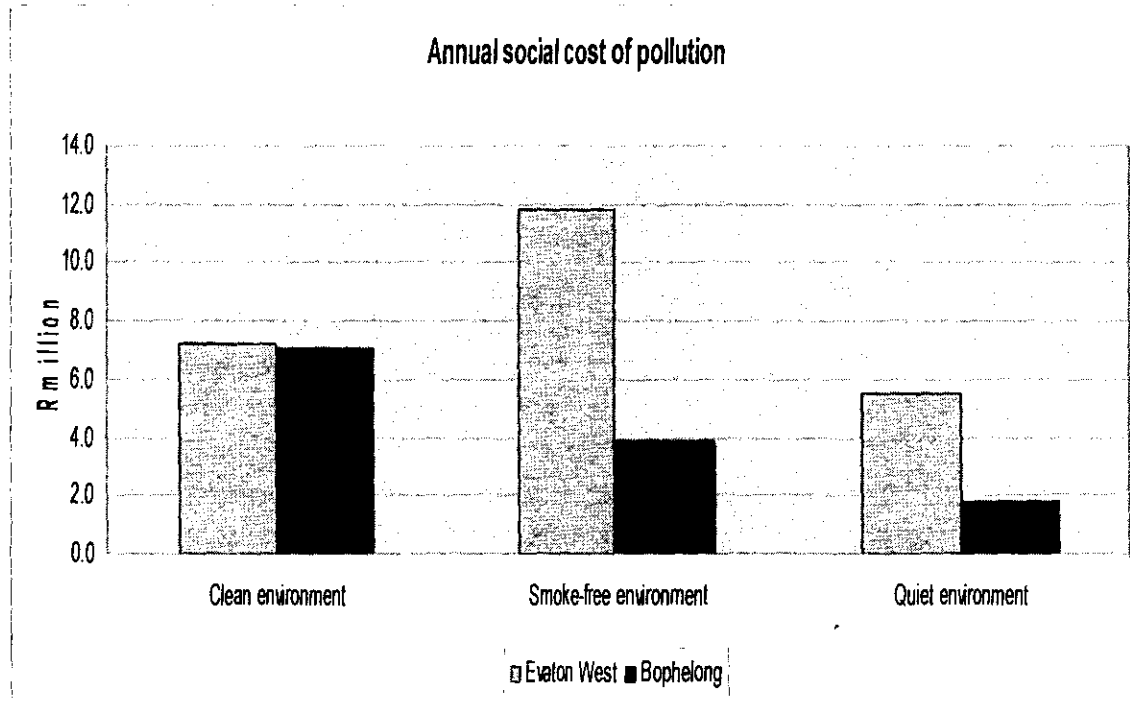
Source: Adapted from Slabbert (2003: 26) and Mokoena (2003).

Most people in Evaton West (42.9 percent) and in Bophelong (59 percent) felt that it is the police's responsibility to deal with those that cause noise pollution (Figure 4.29). A lower percentage felt that street committees should deal with the situation. On average, the Rand value attached to a pollution-free environment in Evaton West is as follows: air pollution - R124.79 per household per month (R56 per household per month in Bophelong) and noise pollution - R83.78 per household per month (R31 per household per month for Bophelong). For all types of pollution, therefore, there is a higher Rand value attached to dealing with pollution in Evaton West than in Bophelong. These figures were averaged from

resident's responses on how much they would be willing to spend to live in a pollution-free environment.

#### 4.5.3 Social cost of pollution

Figure 4.30: Annual social cost of pollution



Source: Adapted from Slabbert (2003: 27) and Mokoena (2003).

Evaton West places more importance on clean air than on the other environmental pollutants (noise and litter) (Figure 4.30). In contrast, Bophelong places more emphasis on a clean environment. The figure also shows the total cost - derived from averages in the survey data (Mokoena 2003) projected on the entire population - placed on dealing with pollution. These are annualized figures of amounts the affected population indicated they are willing to part with to live in a clean and quiet environment. These amounts are listed in Table 4.2.

Table 4.2 Social cost of pollution

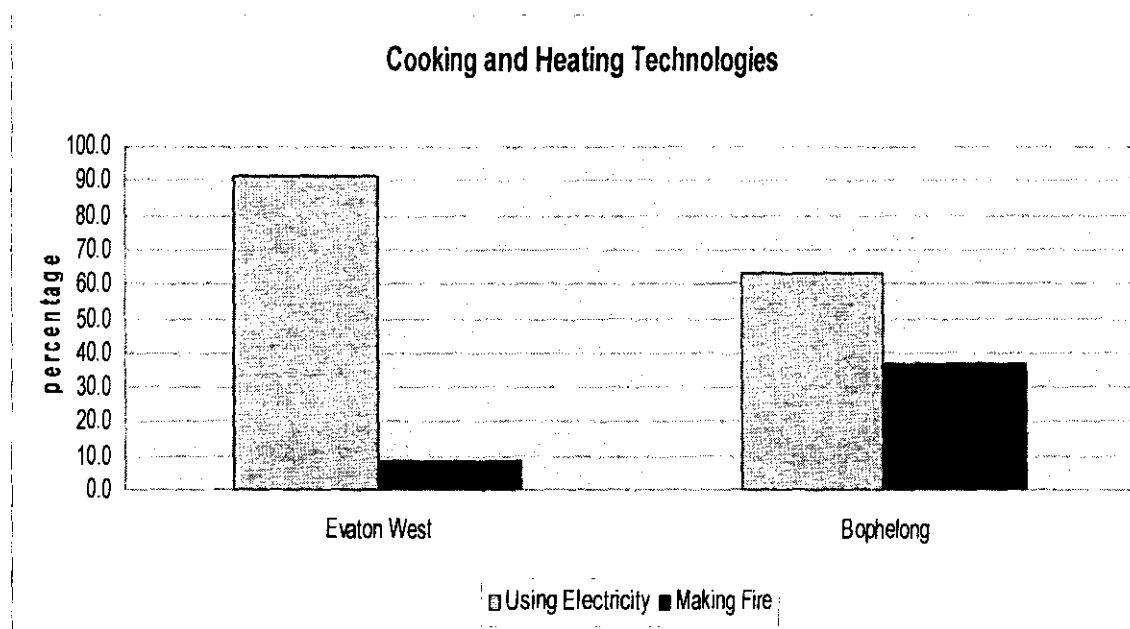
Pollution	Evaton West	Bophelong
Air pollution	R7.2 million	R3.9 million
Environmental pollution	R11.8 million	R7.1 million
Noise pollution	R5.6 million	R1.8 million
Total	R24.6 million	R12.8 million

Source: Adapted from Slabbert (2003: 26) and Mokoena (2003).

The economic impact assessment of these amounts could be high in both areas, more in Evaton West than in Bophelong. It is also a fact that ability and willingness has to be matched against wishful intentions for these amounts to be realistically achieved. However, Table 4.2 gives an indication of priority areas.

#### 4.5.4 Heating and cooking technologies

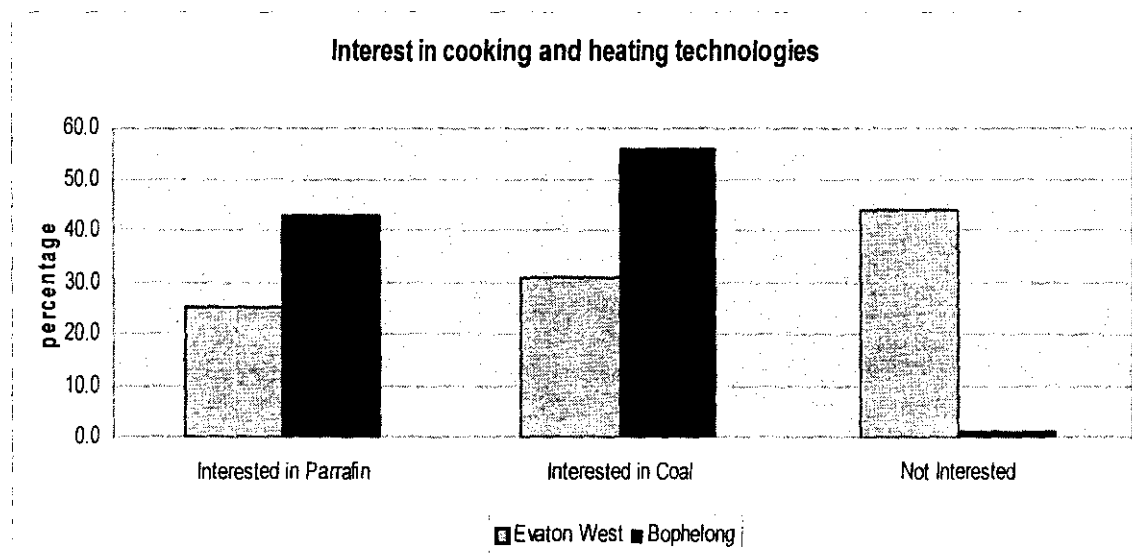
Figure 4.31: Cooking and heating technologies - 2003



Source: Adapted from Slabbert (2003: 29) and Mokoena (2003).

In Evaton West, 91.6 percent of residents use electricity, while 63 percent use electricity in Bophelong. Alternative technologies are therefore used more in Bophelong than in Evaton West (37 percent in Bophelong make a fire for cooking purposes). It is therefore predictable that more in Bophelong will be interested in alternative technologies than in Evaton West.

Figure 4.32: Interest in cooking and heating technologies - 2003



Source: Adapted from Slabbert (2003: 27) and Mokoena (2003).

In Bophelong, 99 percent of those that indicated that they use fire for cooking and heating, indicated that they were interested in coal and paraffin technologies whilst in Evaton West, only 56 percent indicated this. 46 percent in Evaton West indicated no interest in these technologies.

#### 4.6 Crime

Crime in South Africa has been publicised as one of the serious challenges facing post-apartheid democracy. Demombynes and Özler (2002: 2) state that crime is among the most difficult of the many challenges facing South Africa in the post-apartheid era. The country's crime rates are among the highest in the world and no South African is insulated from its effects. Table 4.3 shows incidences of different types of crimes ranked per province. It shows that the Western Cape, Gauteng and the Northern Cape occupy the three top spots in terms of crime. Gauteng appears thirteen out of fifteen times in the top three spots. Only in common assault and stock theft does Gauteng not feature in the top three spots. There is therefore a high incidence of crime in the province, including serious crimes (such as murder, rape and robbery with aggravating circumstances).

Table 4.3: Incidences of different types of crimes by province

Crime	Pos1	Pos2	Pos3	Pos4	Pos5	Pos6	Pos7	Pos8	Pos9	SA
Housebreak - residential	WC 1149	GP 1048	NC 704	MP 676	FS 639	KZN 532	NW 511	EC 494	LP 253	663
Housebreak - business	WC 410	NC 386	GP 259	MP 255	FS 240	NW 194	KZN 170	EC 150	LP 117	216
Other Robbery	GP 324	WC 268	NC 208	NW 153	KZN 124	EC 120	FS 116	MP 91	LP 60	167
Stock Theft	NC 248	FS 221	EC 162	MP 155	NW 113	KZN 106	WC 50	LP 29	GP 12	97
Shoplifting	WC 259	NC 252	GP 210	FS 161	KZN 147	EC 139	MP 135	NW 73	LP 70	153
Theft of motor vehicles	GP 664	WC 270	KZN 214	MP 152	FS 123	NW 123	EC 89	NC 57	LP 50	240
Theft from motor vehicles	WC 1140	GP 716	NC 394	KZN 376	MP 329	FS 315	EC 284	NW 241	LP 123	448
Other thefts	WC 1944	GP 1775	NC 1458	FS 1151	MP 1068	NW 951	KZN 864	EC 750	LP 433	1115
Fraud	GP 350	WC 218	NC 152	FS 125	KZN 112	MP 105	NW 99	EC 56	LP 47	155
Murder	WC 81	KZN 70	GP 69	NC 61	EC 59	FS 40	MP 38	NW 34	LP 17	55
Attempted Murder	GP 90	WC 87	KZN 84	MP 59	NW 58	NC 54	EC 53	FS 44	LP 29	67
Robbery with Agg. Circs.	GP 585	KZN 247	WC 199	MP 154	NW 126	EC 108	FS 78	LP 50	NC 46	226
Rape	NC 169	WC 160	GP 156	NW 129	FS 125	MP 110	EC 103	KZN 100	LP 74	119
Assault GBH	NC 1614	WC 806	GP 690	FS 654	NW 639	EC 625	MP 618	LP 423	KZN 350	595
Assault common	WC 1072	NC 1038	FS 810	GP 589	NW 449	EC 429	MP 344	KZN 323	LP 305	515

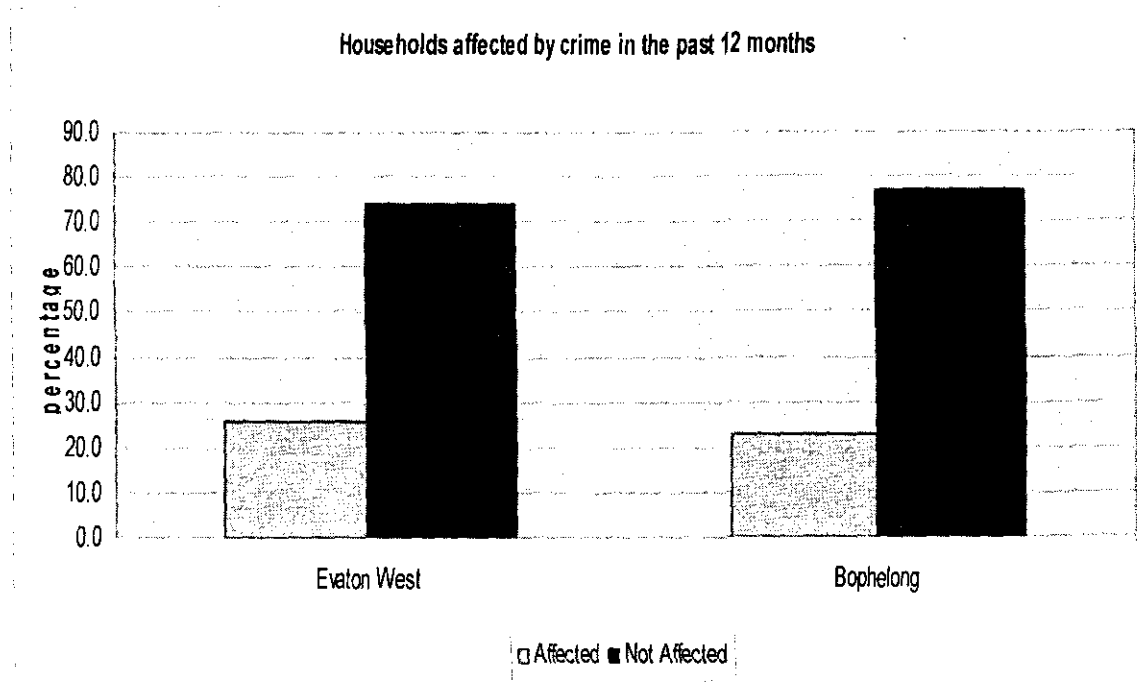
AGG.CIRCS = aggravating circumstances, GBH = Grievors bodily harm  
 GP = Gauteng Province, FS = Free State, = MP = Mpumalanga Province, LP = Limpopo Province,  
 NW = North West, KZN = Kwa-Zulu Natal, EC = Eastern Cape, WC = Western Cape, NC =  
 Northern Cape  
 Figures are based on population estimates calculated from the 1996 population census results.

Source: StatsSA (1999: 32)

The percentage of households in Evaton West and Bophelong affected by crime in the past 12 months is shown in Figure 4.33. In both cases, about one in every four households (25.8 percent in Evaton West and 23 percent in Bophelong) was affected by crime in the past 12 months. This figure is close to 1 in 3.7 households affected by crime in Emfuleni townships (27.1 percent) (Slabbert, 2003: 30). Crime has a negative effect on the quality of life of people and economic development of an area; this is concurred to by the Human Rights Watch (<http://www.hrw.org/>). Crime negatively affects quality of life, affects industry investment decisions and increases personal and law enforcement costs.



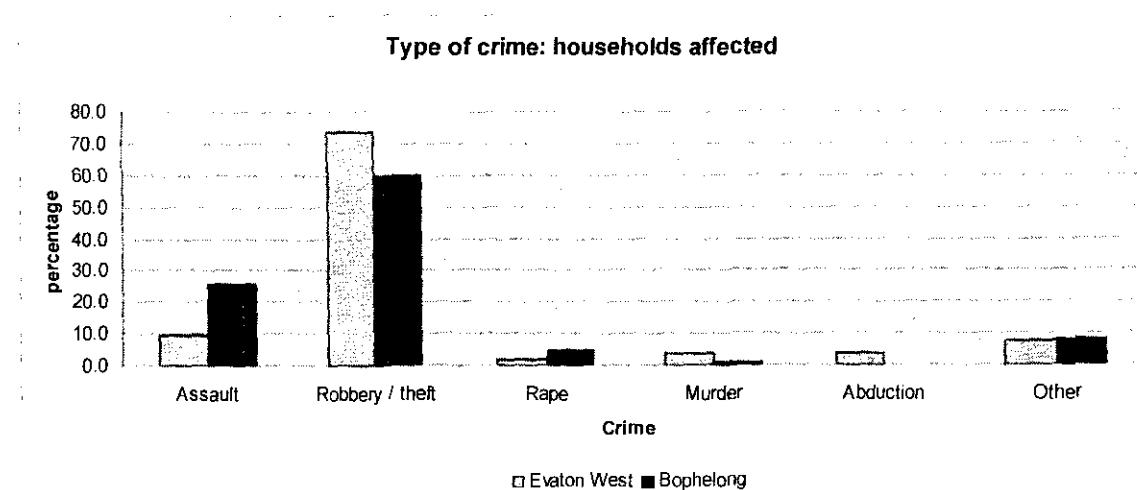
Figure 4.33: Households affected by crime in past 12 months - 2003



Source: Adapted from Slabbert (2003: 30) and Mokoena (2003).

Figure 4.34 further shows that of those affected by crime, the highest percentage were affected by theft and robbery (73.6 percent in Evaton West, 60 percent in Bophelong and 64.8 percent in Emfuleni townships) followed by assault (9.4 percent in Evaton West, 26 percent in Bophelong and 19.8 percent in Emfuleni townships).

Figure 4.34: Types of crime: households affected - 2003

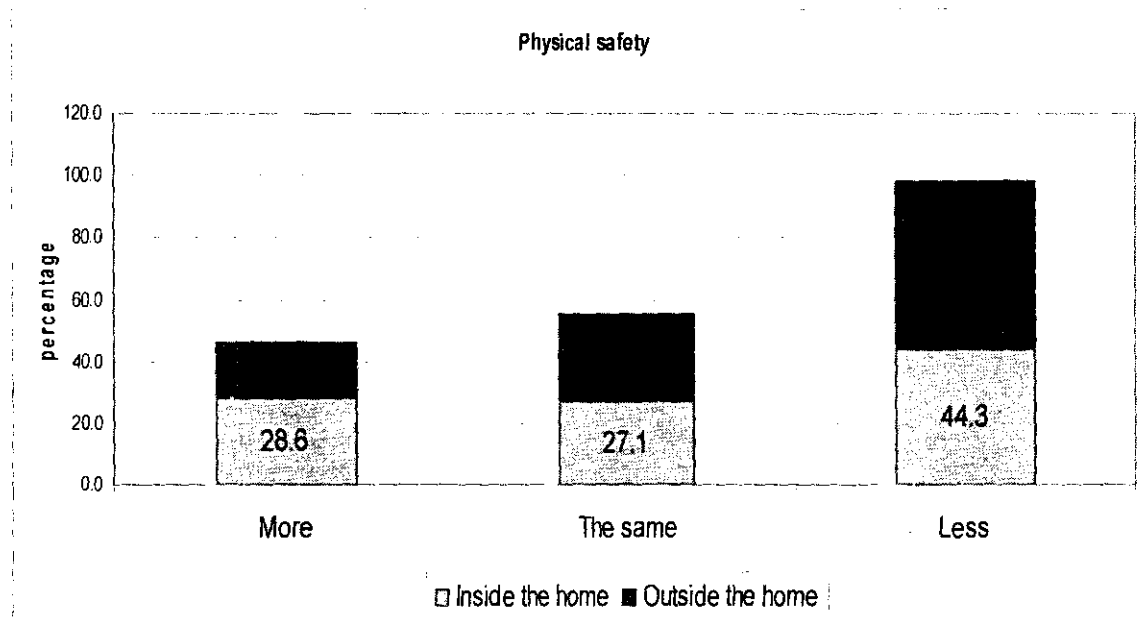


Source: Adapted from Slabbert (2003: 28) and Mokoena (2003).

#### 4.7 Narrower focus on Evaton West

The rest of this chapter considers elements for which data was not solicited in the Bophelong and Emfuleni township surveys. This section will therefore not have a comparative analysis and these elements will therefore be evaluated on their own merits.

Figure 4.35: Physical safety inside and outside the home in Evaton West - 2003



Source: Mokoena (2003)

Most Evaton West residents feel more insecure outside the home than inside (Figure 4.35). In the case of outside the home, they feel that their physical safety is less than it used to be three years ago. In the case of inside the home, 55.7 percent feel that physical safety is either the same or better than before. 44.3 percent feel that they do not feel safer than before. Again this amounts to roughly two in five persons who feel unsafe inside the home.

#### 4.8 Quality of life

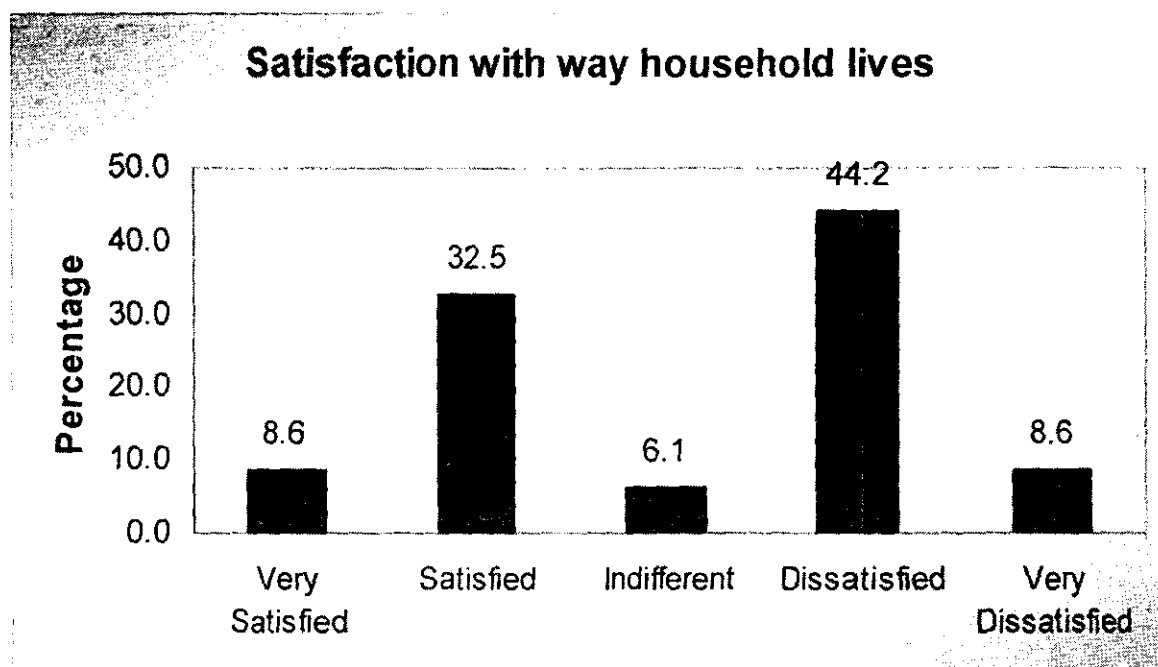
This section evaluates quality of life using four indicators; satisfaction survey, stock of ownership of assets, indebtedness and housing adequacy. The approach in this section, as in the rest of the chapter, is an evaluation of these indicators as they are currently, rather than how they have changed over time, as

this facet will be presented in Chapter 5. The inclusion of these items in this chapter also stems from the fact that all but the satisfaction survey impact directly on household incomes/expenditure and indicate income risk.

#### 4.8.1 Satisfaction survey

The perceptions of the community regarding current living standards are shown in Figure 4.36.

Figure 4.36: Satisfaction with the way the household lives: Evaton West - 2003

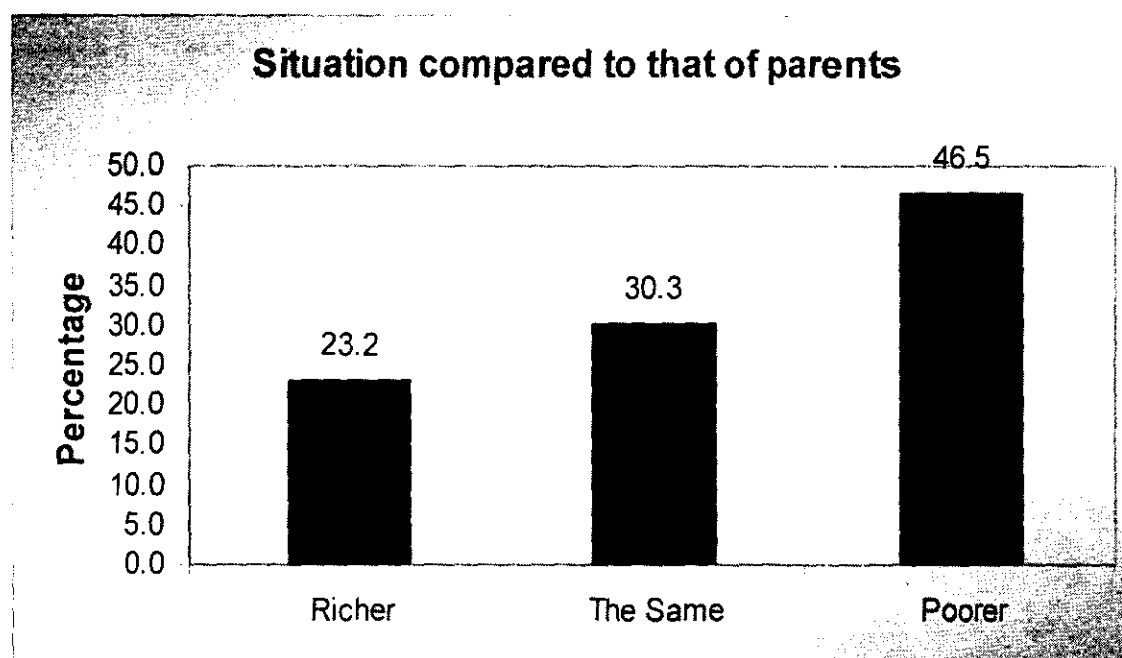


Source: Mokoena (2003).

It shows that 52.8 percent of households indicated that they are dissatisfied with the way the household lives these days. This may stem from a number of factors, many of which have already been discussed in this chapter, for example unemployment levels. Only 41.1 percent said they are (very) satisfied with the way they live. Perceptions play a major role in the behaviour of people, so dissatisfaction may breed feelings of desolation and breed contempt with, especially systems they believe are denying them a good life.

Figure 4.37 compares the standard of living to that of the respondents' parents. It shows that 46.5 percent feel their lives are worse off than their parents', while only 23.2 percent feel that they are relatively better off than their parents. 30.3 percent of the respondents feel that there is no difference between them and their parents. This may mean that they are as poor as their parents were/are or that they are as rich as their parents. The former is most likely, increasing the feelings of poverty.

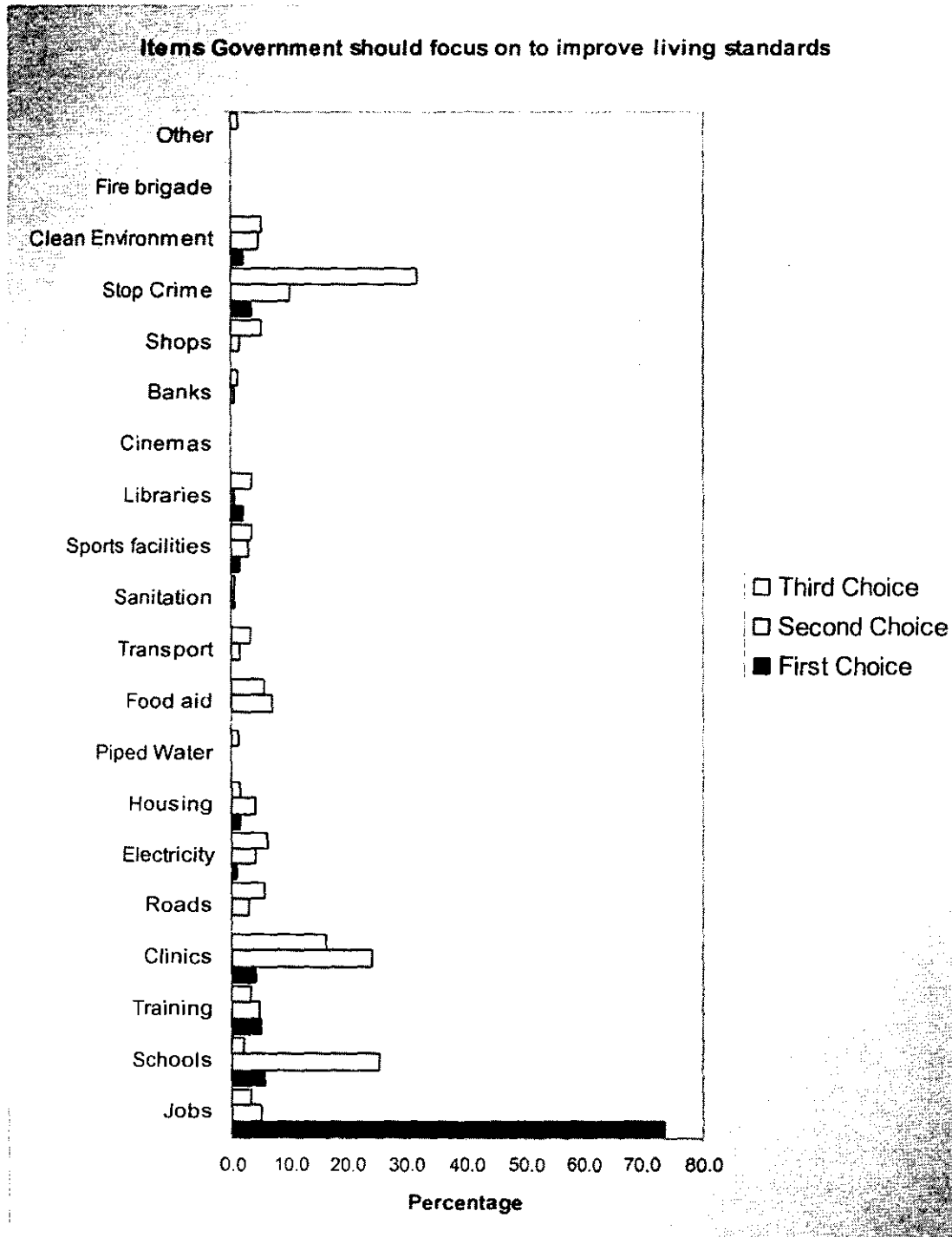
Figure 4.37: Situation compared to those of parents in Evaton West - 2003



Source: Mokoena (2003)

Most of the households feel poorer due to lack of access to certain resources and amenities they believe are required to live an acceptable life. The following Figure 4.38 shows the respondents perceptions of the actions the government should take to increase their level of living. It shows that jobs rank very high as a first choice. 73.7 percent rank job creation as the most urgent action the government should be focusing on. This perception is probably caused by the high unemployment rate in the area as stated above.

Figure 4.38: Items the government should focus to improve living standards: opinions in Evaton West - 2003

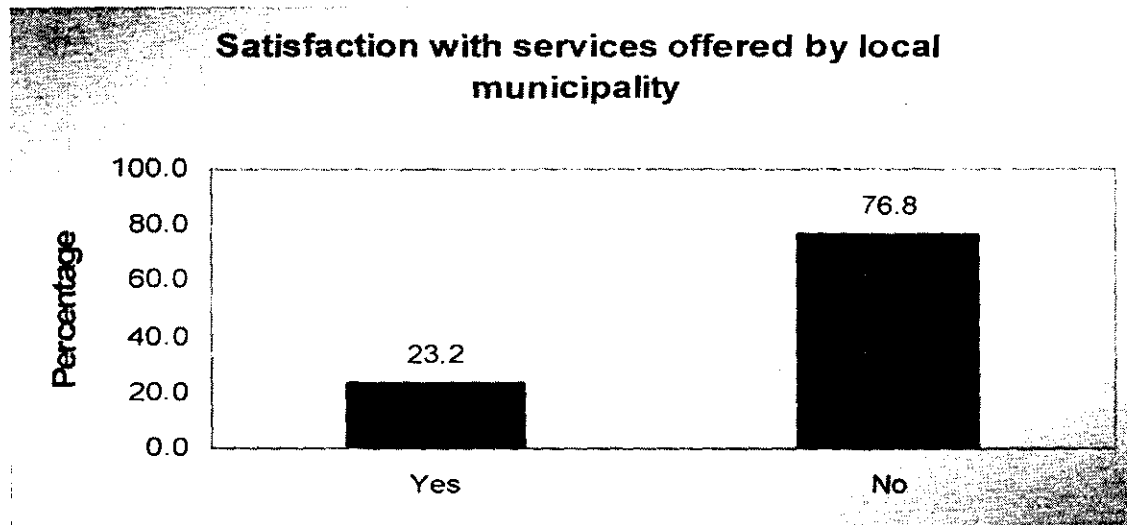


Source: Mokoena (2003)

Stopping crime ranks second in importance (32 percent) in the perceptions of the people of Evaton West. This is due to the feelings of lack of physical safety as well as the levels of crime discussed in 4.8 above. Schools and Clinics are also

ranked relatively high (25.4 percent for schools and 24.4 percent for clinics). This correlates to the idea of basic needs: security (jobs and crime), health (clinics) and education (schools). It is essential for policymakers to address these issues, especially in view of the following paragraph.

Figure 4.39: Satisfaction with services offered by the local municipality in Evaton West - 2003



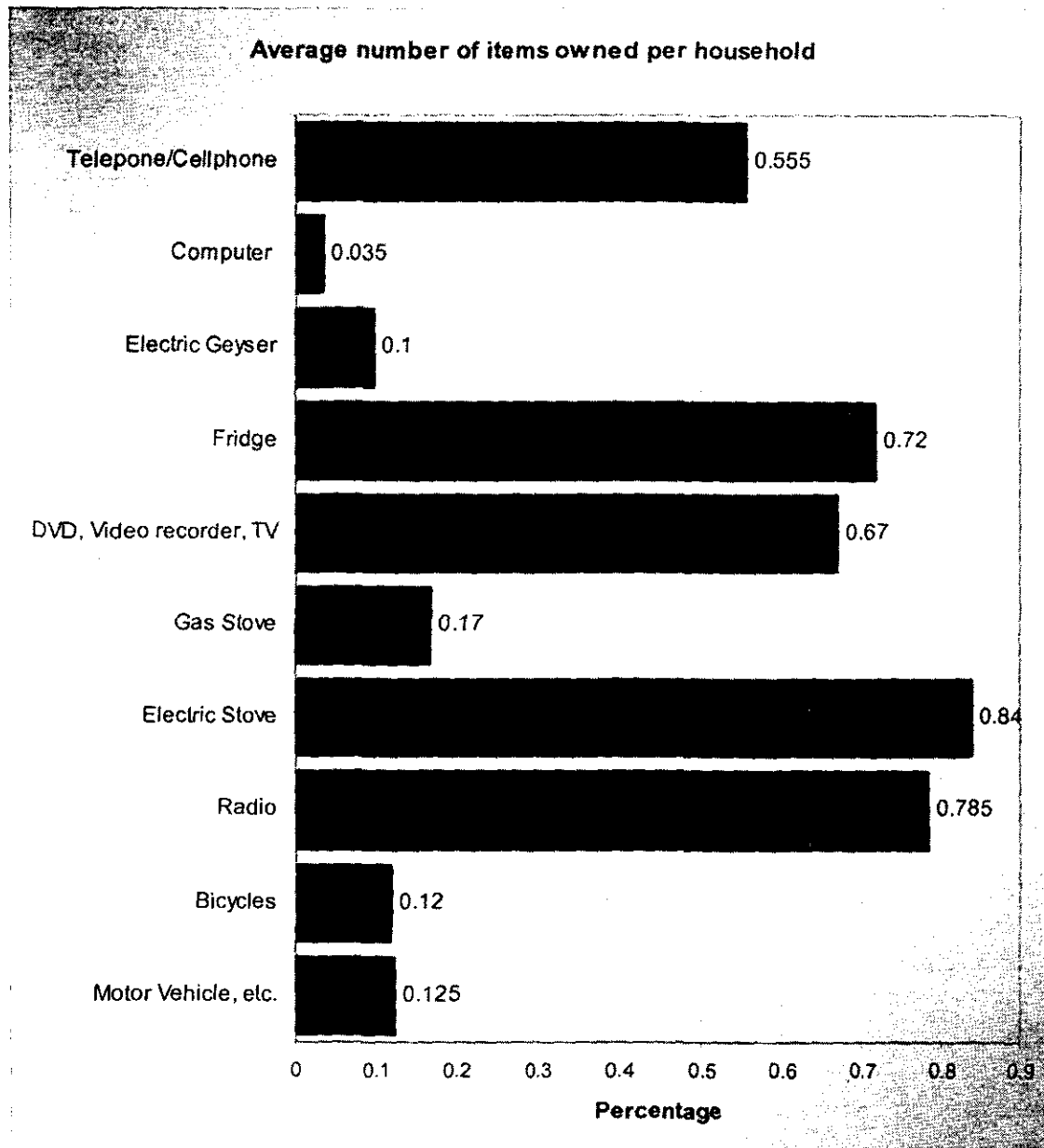
Source: Mokoena (2003)

Most households indicated that they are dissatisfied with the services offered by the Local Municipality (Figure 4.39). 76.8 percent indicated that they are dissatisfied with the services offered by the Local Municipality. This is quite a high percentage. Such perceptions undermine the gains the Local Municipality may make and should therefore not be ignored by the authorities. 66.3 percent stated that they knew their ward councillor. It should still be worrying to the particular councillor that 33.7 percent of the ward constituents do not know him/her. This may mean that the councillor is not visible enough (for example does not hold community meetings).

#### 4.8.2 Asset ownership

The following figure (Figure 4.40) shows the number of selected items owned per household.

Figure 4.40: Average number of items owned per household in Evaton West - 2003



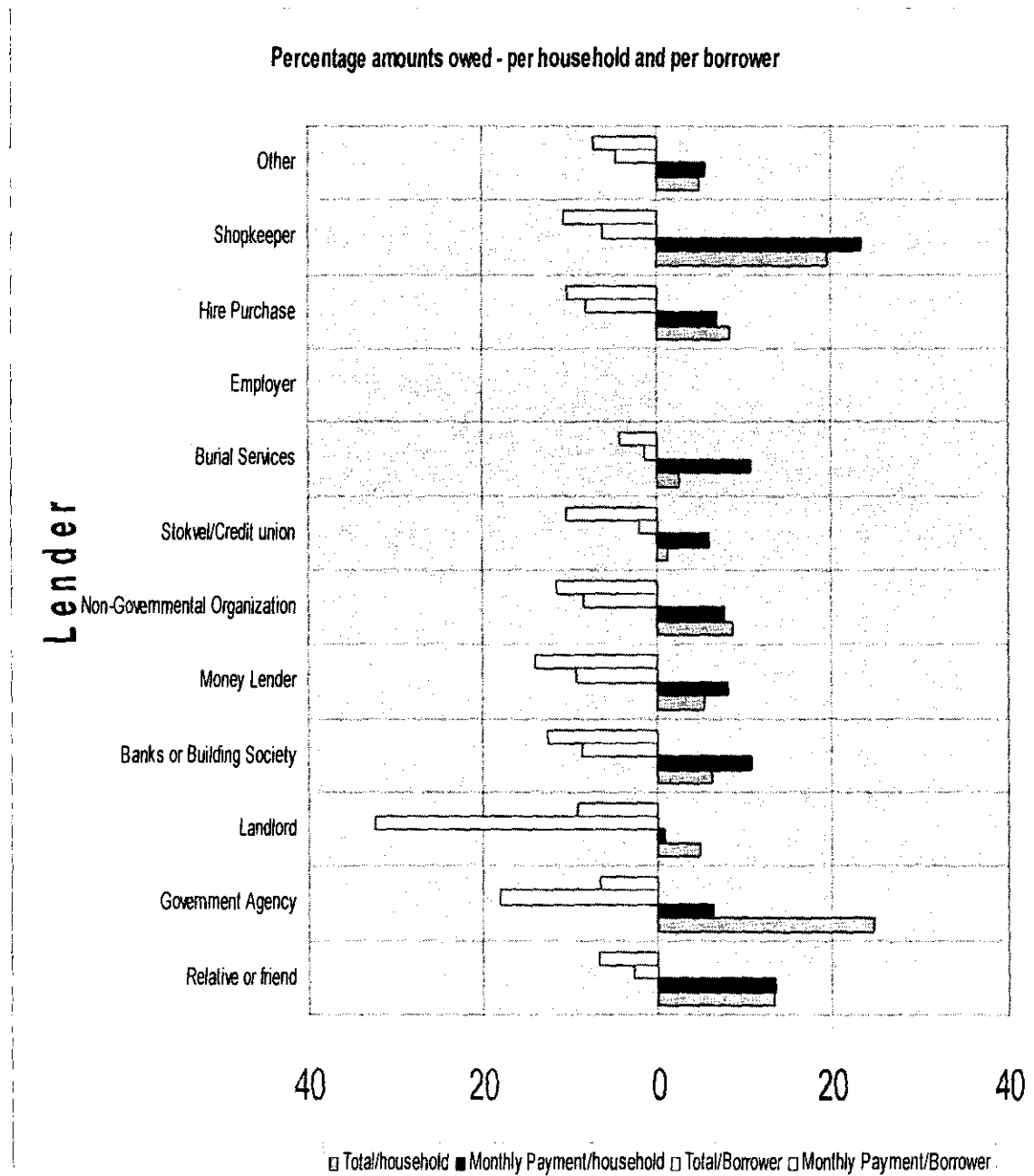
Source: Mokoena (2003)

The figure reflects a typical household as reflected in the sample. Some households may possess more of the one item than the others. The figure averages all items per household. It shows that almost each household has an electric or gas stove. Almost three-quarters of Evaton West households possess a radio. This makes radio an effective way of communicating with the community. About half of the respondents possess a telephone and/or a cellular phone. Few

households own cars and even fewer own computers. The 'luxury' items most owned are TV's, VCR's and DVD's. Many also own refrigerators.

### 4.8.3 Indebtedness

Figure 4.41: Percentage amounts owed per household and per borrower: Evaton West - 2003



Source: Mokoena (2003)



Figure 4.41 shows the level of indebtedness in the community. It shows percentage indebtedness averaged per household and percentage averages per borrower. The figure shows that the relative contribution to total debts of some government agency, of friends and relatives and of shopkeepers is the highest in the case of borrowers. In terms of monthly repayments, borrowers pay back relatively low amounts to the government agencies even though their total debts to them are the highest. Repayments to shopkeepers are the highest. The contribution of banks is relatively low, raising questions regarding access and trust of the community to banks, small business finance and loans. There may also be aversion to the level of interest rates and the subsequent regular payments associated with bank loans.

Analysis of contributions per household show that indebtedness to landlords is the highest per household, followed by indebtedness to some government agency. Monthly repayments are relatively low compared to repayments to money lenders and banks. An insignificant number owes money to employers. The survey data (Mokoena, 2003) showed that on average, each household owes R1013.91 at a monthly repayment rate of R114.31. It also shows that on average, each borrower owes R30964 at a monthly repayment rate of R2265.

#### **4.8.4 Housing adequacy**

Cheru (2002: 168) points that the housing problem in urban Africa has assumed massive proportions involving a maze of complex policy issues that defy clear strategic responses; these include income and employment, land tenure, access to credit and legal reform. Cheru (2002: 168) further states that increased squatting is an indicator of the housing mayhem, were an inappropriate government response denies squatter citizens their full rights subjecting them instead to sporadic forced evictions. Many of these problems have found their way into the South African arena as well.

Table 4.3 shows the characteristics of housing units in Evaton West. It shows that the main housing units are brick houses and only half a percent are shacks. This is to be expected since these are standard RDP low-cost houses built by the

local government. Most of the houses have a single bedroom (78.7 percent) and only a few have a second bedroom (14.2). With an average household size of 3.8, this could present problems.

Table 4.4 Characteristics of housing units in Evaton West in 2003

	Characteristics	Percentage
<b>Characteristics of the Main Housing Unit</b>	Brick Building	99.5
	Shacks	0.5
	Asbestos	0.0
	Other	0.0
	Total	100.0
<b>Number of Bedrooms</b>	1	78.7
	2	14.2
	3	5.6
	4	1.5
	5	0.0
	Total	100.0
<b>Number of other rooms (excluding toilets/bathrooms)</b>	0	6.0
	1	57.0
	2	22.0
	3	4.5
	4+	10.5
	Total	100.0
<b>Number of toilets</b>	1	98.0
	2	2.0
	Total	100.0
<b>Type of toilet</b>	Fully Mechanised sewage system	99.5
	Septic tank	0.5
	Bucket	0.0
	Other	0.0
	Total	100.0
<b>Where is the toilet situated</b>	Inside	99.0
	Outside	0.5
	Both inside & outside	0.5
	Total	100.0
<b>Type of roof of house</b>	Tile	9.9
	Corrugated iron	13.8
	Asbestos	75.4
	Other	1.0
	Total	100.0
<b>Water System</b>	Communal Tap	51.5
	Full in-house plumbing	41.1
	No water System	6.9
	Other	0.5
	Total	100.0

Source: Mokoena (2003)

The number of other rooms (excluding bedrooms toilets) shows that at least 57 percent of the dwellings have one other room and 22 percent have two other rooms. Most units therefore seem to have only two rooms. The survey data (Mokoena 2003) has shown that people who can afford to do so, extend their houses. This accounts for a small percentage of houses with more than two rooms. Most of the houses have one fully automated in-house toilet. All households have a toilet facility. Most houses have asbestos or corrugated iron sheet roofing (89.2 percent), only a very small percentage have tiled roofing.

#### **4.9 Snapshot of Indicators**

This chapter assessed household-level indicators of poverty and welfare in Evaton West. Some of the indicators assessed included the following:

Gender distribution of the population:	51.1 percent male and 48.9 percent female.
Youth (0 to 34 years of age):	73.1 percent male and 70.0 percent female.
Qualifications of people out of school:	32.2 percent in Evaton West have grade 12 or higher.
<u>Labour force:</u>	
Informally employed:	27.4 percent
Formally employed:	11.2 percent
Unemployed:	61.4 percent
Sector where most are employed:	Community, social and personal services.
Unemployed for 5 or more years:	55.2 percent
Youth unemployment	55.4 percent male, 68.0 percent female
<u>Poverty:</u>	
Headcount index:	69.5 percent (0.695)
Subjective poverty:	77.0 percent
Poverty gap ratio:	66.0 percent (0.66)
Lower 65 percent households earn:	10 percent of incomes
Upper 20 percent households earn:	75 percent of incomes

Gini coefficient: 0.53

The poor:

Gender distribution: 50.1 percent male, 49.9 percent female

Youth (0-35 years of age) in poverty: 73.7 percent male, 69.6 percent female

Qualification of out of school population: 25.2 percent with grade 12 or higher.

Employed poor:

Informally employed: 11.8 percent

Formally employed: 19.6 percent

Sector of employment: 59.4 percent

Poor unemployed: 68.6 percent

Unemployed poor:

Youth (14-35 years of age): 53.3 percent male, 67.5 female

Unemployed for 5 years and more: 55 percent

Other indicators:

Main source of income: Salary

Where products are normally bought: In townships

Main expenditure items: Food, clothing and transport

Affected by crime: 25.8 percent

Prominent crimes: Theft and robbery

Physical safety: Less inside and outside the home

Most owned assets: Electric stoves, radio, fridge and TV

Least owned assets: Cars and computers

Level of indebtedness: High

Typical house: One bedroom, brick building with one toilet inside house with asbestos roofing and one other room.

Quality of life:

Dissatisfied with the quality of life: 52.8 percent

Worse off than parents: 46.5 percent

Government priority should be: 73.7 percent job creation

Local municipality service level: 76.8 percent dissatisfied

Environment opinions:

Littering:	Polluted and dirty, something should be done about it (by municipality and community)
Air and noise:	Affected more by air than noise pollution.
Heating and cooking technology:	Mostly electricity

All the indicators above show a very poor community judged by the household-level indicators presented above. Chapter 5 will discuss community-level indicators.

#### **4.10 Summary**

This chapter utilized various household-level indicators to assess the level of poverty, unemployment and quality of life in Evaton West. This was done primarily in comparison with Bophelong, a similar and adjacent township. The chapter has shown that Evaton West experiences high levels of poverty and unemployment based on the indicators employed. It also shows that compared to Bophelong, most indicators show that Evaton West is worse off.

Chapter 4 concentrated on household level indicators. The next chapter will focus the discussions on the community-level indicators, comparing these with the same indicators three years earlier. While chapter 4 focussed on a snapshot of flow measures such as income, chapter 5 will evaluate stock measures such as bulk services over a period of time.

## Chapter 5

### Analysis of community indicators in Evaton West in 2003/4 compared to 2000/1

#### 5.1 Introduction

In the previous chapter (Chapter 4), a cross-sectional comparison of Evaton West with Bophelong was tabled and discussed. The two communities were compared with respect to employment, poverty, environment and crime. It is important to distinguish between Chapter 4 and Chapter 5 of this study. The following diagram shows the differences between the two chapters:

Table 5.1 Comparisons between Chapters 4 and 5

Chapter 4	Chapter 5
1. Evaluates <i>household-level</i> indicators.	1. Evaluates <i>community-level</i> indicators.
2. Uses mainly <i>private</i> consumption and income.	2. Assesses mainly <i>publicly provided</i> goods and services.
3. <i>Snapshot</i> approach – evaluates indicators at a point in time and compares against another township.	3. <i>Timeline</i> approach – evaluates indicators over time comparing Evaton West against itself in an earlier period.
4. Concentrates mostly on <i>flow measures</i> – especially income and consumption	4. Concentrates more on <i>stock measures</i> – especially social capital and physical assets

Source: Own Construction

The intention in this chapter is to compare key aspects of the Evaton West community currently (in 2003/2004) with similar aspects in 2001. This will test whether there has been an improvement in these aspects over the past three years. The current profile was obtained through the use of a focused group interview (FGI) of the Evaton West Community Development Forum (EWCDF) members, as well as through a community assessment questionnaire survey conducted among 20 leaders, professionals and politicians in Evaton West. The FGI took place in Evaton West and was conducted with eight respondents who

are members of the EWCDF. The respondents were chosen on the basis of their participation in both the CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup> project and the Eindhoven Municipality projects. The focus group interview was aimed at soliciting information and views on the two programmes and the state of Evaton West in relation to the indicators discussed in this chapter.

The community questionnaire survey was conducted with 20 “influential” people in Evaton West who knew the area and its dynamics. The 2001 data was sourced from the work of Dr. Philip Frankel on Evaton West commissioned by the Eindhoven Municipality (Frankel, 2001). The information sources used by Frankel (2001) included the following:

- Initial focus groups conducted around general issues of community development like the delivery of bulk services with key stakeholders in the area (e.g. women and the youth).
- Strategic interviews conducted with key community leaders across the political spectrum.
- Random interviews conducted with members of the general public of Evaton West. (Frankel 2001: 3-4)

Oelofse (2003: 268-269) provided a good premise upon which this chapter could be based when stating: “The definition of urban poverty needs to be widened beyond conventional income-based or consumption-based definitions to include the health, social and environmental aspects of deprivation.”

Oelofse (2003: 268-269) further stated that absolute poverty consists of five interrelated deprivations:

- inadequate and unstable income;
- inadequate or risky asset base (of both material and non-material resources);

- lack of or poor quality basic public services and housing;
- limited or no rights to make demands within the political or legal system;  
and
- discrimination, particularly against women.

These forms of poverty contribute to levels of risk experienced by individuals and communities in urban areas.

## 5.2 Community characteristics

In Chapter 2, various theoretical aspects of poverty and inequality were discussed. One of these aspects was social exclusion. This primarily refers to poverty as measured by how much people have access to various civil society benefits. Lack of access to items like bulk services, political participation, law and order and clean environments is indicative of a poor society. Poverty cannot continue to be defined merely in consumption/income terms; vulnerability and lack of access to social capital have to be taken into account in any reasonable definition of poverty.

Prowse (2003: 18-19) stated that: "Vulnerability ... has also been associated with the concept of social capital... define[d] as being a form of mutual assistance [or] ... the 'asset' in "social relationships [which] facilitate access to information, finance, state services, equipment, food and goods that raise the capacity of households to survive and prosper". The following excerpt from Sen (2000: 1) emphasises these points:

"Those who like to keep issues straight and narrow tend to resist broadening the definition of poverty. Why not just look at incomes and ask a question like "How many people live on less than, say, \$1 or \$2 a day?" This narrow analysis then takes the uncomplicated form of predicting trends and counting the poor. It is a cheap way of telling "the future of the poor." But human lives can be impoverished in many different ways. Politically unfree citizens - whether rich or poor - are deprived of a basic constituent of good living. The same applies to such social deprivations



as illiteracy, lack of health care, unequal attention to the elementary interests of women and of young girls and so on.”

Oelofse (2003: 269) also maintained that environmental problems in cities can be reduced by altering the condition of poverty in its broadest sense. These forms of deprivation lie within the ambit of tasks that local authorities are responsible for. Quality of life can be improved by improving access to an asset base, or providing basic services and infrastructure, rather than just dealing with the problem of income.

This chapter therefore approaches the evaluation of poverty in Evaton West from the perspective of social inclusivity. It tests community access to various civil liberties and services expected to be available in any normal community. The community of Evaton West will be judged as poor or non-poor depending, not only on household affordability as discussed in Chapter 4, but also on whether the essential community (social) capital exists in the area. This section characterises the community in terms of population movement, employment activities, roads, public transport, housing adequacy, quality of life and trust in the community.

### **5.2.1 Population**

The population of Evaton West has increased in the last three years, according to 79 percent of the respondents to the community questionnaire. Of those who said that the population has increased, most indicated that availability of more houses, increased birth rate and hope for further developments in the area are the major reasons for such increase (Table 5.1).

Frankel (2001: 18-19) states that in 2001, there was a markedly higher female population than male population. This, Frankel maintained, led to many women surviving as sex workers due to high unemployment in the area. In addition, many women drifted to part-time or occasional prostitution as a survival mode. It was postulated that many “outsiders” also manipulate women into transitory relationships with the object of extracting sexual favours from them. This was

cross-checked with the EWCDF members who pointed out that this is still the case. This may therefore explain the claim of “increased birth rate”. The demographics presented in Chapter 4 also confirm quite a young population in Evaton West. For example, the fact that 50 percent of the male population is younger than 20 years of age.

Table 5.1: Reasons for an increase in the population in 2003

Reason	Percentage
Hope for further development	25.0
Proud of owning land	12.5
Increased birth-rate	29.2
Migration	4.2
Availability of houses	29.2
Total	100.0

Source: Community survey (Mokoena, 2003)

StatsSA (2001) counted approximately 11000 units in the area at the time of the census. Only Section 11 (popularly known as ‘Mkhelele’) existed in 1997/8, while the newer sections including what was dubbed ‘Mpho-le-Mphonyana’, were erected later. This has been confirmed by members of the EWCDF. There have thus been more houses built in this area in the previous years than have been realised. This may account for the “availability of houses” reason.

There seems to be much more participation of women in community projects and personal empowerment programmes than asserted by Frankel (2001: 19) (who stated that there was not), even though a higher proportion of women still feel disempowered, abused and unsafe. The LED group, the Environmental group and the Health group, all formed through the initiative of the Eindhoven Municipality group, had quite a high female representation (well over 50 percent). Other projects run by other institutions (like the Vaal University of Technology); confirm this - one such as the vegetable garden project has over 50 percent of women participants.

## 5.2.2 Employment activities

Table 5.2 shows the different types of economic activities that most people engaged in (in 2003 as per the community survey).

Table 5.2: Economic activities for men and women in 2003

	<b>Activity</b>	<b>Percentage</b>
Economic Activities for men	Construction-related	33.3
	Spaza shops/Tuckshop	36.7
	Social clubs	3.3
	Taverns/Shebeens	3.3
	Motor mechanics	3.3
	Business	13.3
	Gardening	3.3
	Taxi driver/owner	3.3
	<b>Total</b>	<b>100.0</b>
	Economic Activities for women	Sewing
Spaza shops/Tuckshop		18.5
Social clubs		11.1
Taverns/Shebeens		11.1
Prostitution		3.7
Business		18.5
Nanny		3.7
Involved in Projects		3.7
<b>Total</b>		<b>100.0</b>

Source: Community survey (Mokoena 2003)

The table shows that the economic activities for most men are construction-related and running home-based 'spaza' shops. The reference to business probably refers to running a small-business in the area. The main reason for such a high reference to construction-related activities may be due to the high number of houses being extended in the area. Main economic activities for women are sewing (dressmaking and curtain-making were indicated as the primary sewing activities), running a tuck-shop, running a shebeen and running social clubs. The majority feel that employment availability in the area has worsened in the last 3 years (58 percent) as opposed to those who answered that employment opportunities have improved.

It is worth noting that the type of employment in Evaton West is clearly volatile, non-permanent and also low-income in nature. Jobs have been created, especially through the EWCDF, in local development projects of a short duration

and non-sustainable. Frankel (2001: 30-31) found a similar trend in 2001. He found that most jobs created through the EWCDF appeared to be semi-permanent and *ad hoc* rather than being sustainable employment opportunities. He further stated that evidence suggests that the EWCDF's activities have not been entirely successful in creating long-term, permanent and successful employment for more than an infinitesimally small proportion of the Evaton West unemployed, despite their best intentions. This situation does not seem to have changed much currently.

Unemployment in Evaton West was estimated at 86.8 percent by Frankel (2001: 33), part-time employment at 6.8 percent, full-time employment at 3.4 percent and retired and students at three percent. This shows that only a very small proportion of the population were in full-time employment. StatsSA (2001) estimated unemployment at 60.6 percent for 2001. The difference in these figures may stem from the definition of unemployment utilised. The current survey estimated unemployment at 61.4 percent which is closer to the 2001 census figure. These figures show a very high unemployment figure for Evaton West, both in 2001 and in 2003.

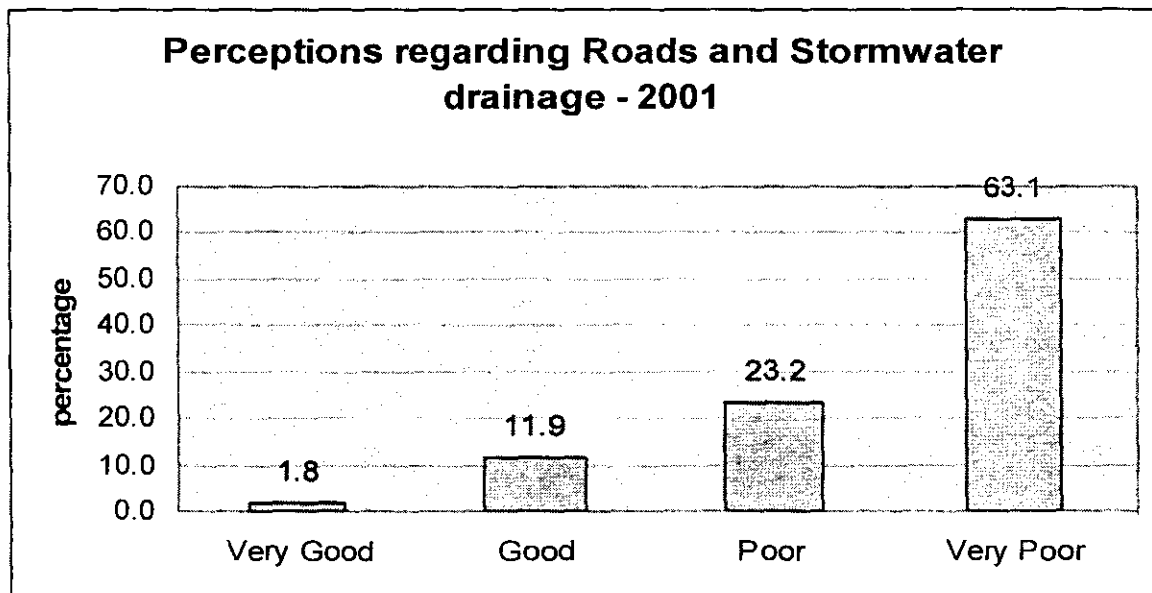
The reasons for this high unemployment rate seem to be the same in 2003 as explained by Frankel (2001: 34-35) in 2001: Firstly, there are quite low skill levels in Evaton West, especially skills required for the local industries. This can be discerned from the types of employment most of the residents are in (42.2 percent employment in services (mostly domestic workers and gardeners)). Over and above this, the residents have to compete with people from other townships in the Vaal Triangle for the scarce job-opportunities. Secondly, as mentioned in Section 4.4, Evaton West is geographically displaced from main sources of employment in the Vaal area. It is surrounded by other poor residential areas with no major industrial developments in the area. The sheer distance to the towns in the area is discouraging. It therefore becomes difficult for poor people to afford the high transport costs to go looking for a job in a town, continuously, until they find it. This leads to a low propensity and inclination to work and to a culture of unemployment. Thirdly, large industries like ISCOR have been shedding jobs in the area, increasing some unemployment and exacerbating poverty.

### 5.2.3 Roads

Main arterial roads into Evaton West are paved ('tarred') with most of the secondary streets still consisting of dirt ("gravel") roads. All respondents indicated that over the last three years, the state of roads has remained the same. The state of roads in the area makes Evaton West reasonably accessible, making development at least possible. It is relatively easy to reach all sections of Evaton West by paved roads.

Figure 5.1 shows inhabitants perceptions of the roads and stormwater drainage system in Evaton West. It shows that in 2001, over 86 percent of the respondents to the Frankel (2001) survey were of the opinion that these services were poor to very poor.

Figure 5.1: Perceptions regarding roads and stormwater drainage in 2001



Source: Adapted from Frankel (2001: 41, 42)

The following issues with regard to roads and storm water drainage stem from issues raised by Frankel (2001: 109-110):

- The 'Golden Highway' poses a hazard to the community since there are no designated pedestrian crossings or pedestrian bridges with which to cross this extremely busy road. This leads to road accidents. There are

also no traffic calming measures on the road, leading to high speeds of traffic (especially since the road is a double carriageway).

- The building and servicing of local roads is done in such a way that local labour is considered. This includes cleaning and paving of walkways (pavements) along the roads.
- The area is served by a partial underground stormwater system and an overland escape system. Refuse and strongly overflowing water damage this system.

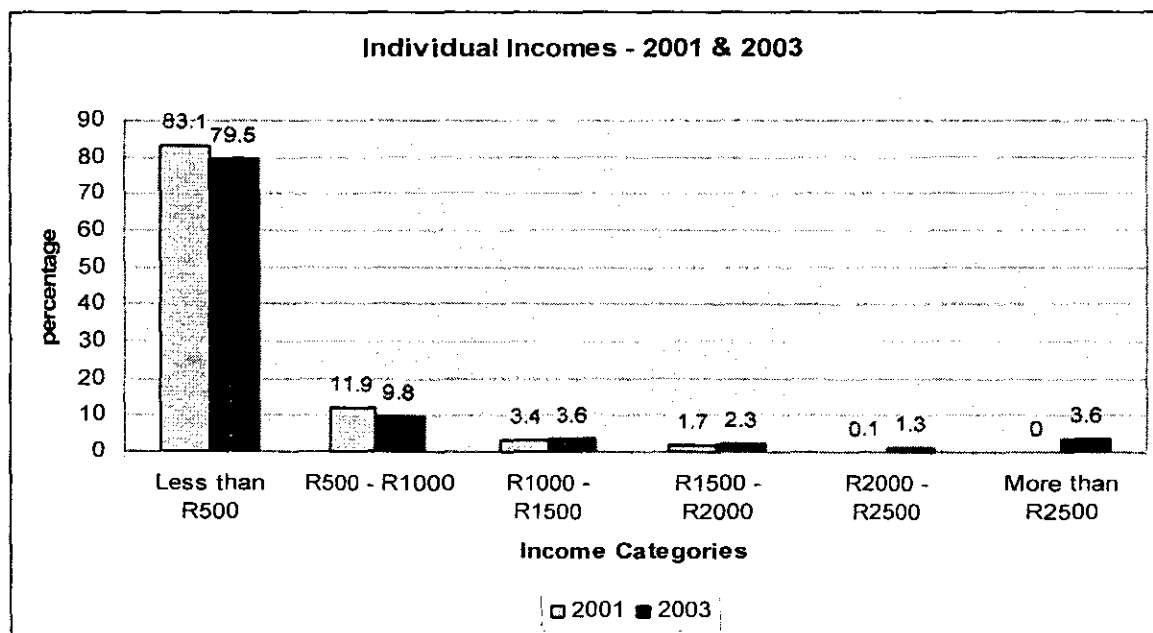
All of the above issues in 2003/4 are still as described in 2001.

#### **5.2.4 Income**

Income was discussed in Chapter 4 (Section 4.4) in comparison to incomes in Bophelong and it was found that incomes in Bophelong exceeded those in Evaton West on average. This section seeks to compare incomes in 2003 with incomes in 2001.

Figure 5.2 shows individual monthly incomes for 2001 and 2003 in Evaton West. It shows that, according to Frankel (2001), 95 percent of income earners earned incomes less than R1 000 in 2001 compared to 89.3 percent in 2003 according to the survey data. There is only a six percent difference between the two years. No respondents were found having incomes higher than R2 500 in 2003, while 3.6 percent earned such incomes in 2003.

Figure 5.2 Individual Incomes in 2001 and 2003



Source: Adapted from Frankel (2001: 37-38) and Survey data

According to StatsSA (2001) 99.1 percent of individual earners earned incomes less than R3 200. Incomes of Evaton West residents are therefore very depressed. There has been some improvement since 2001 as can be seen from Figure 5.2, but the improvement is very small, with 92.9 percent of earners still earning incomes of less than R1 500 per month. Even though there has been a marginal increase in individual incomes, the effect of inflation would outstrip these gains, actually leaving the earners worse-off. This perpetuates poverty in the area.

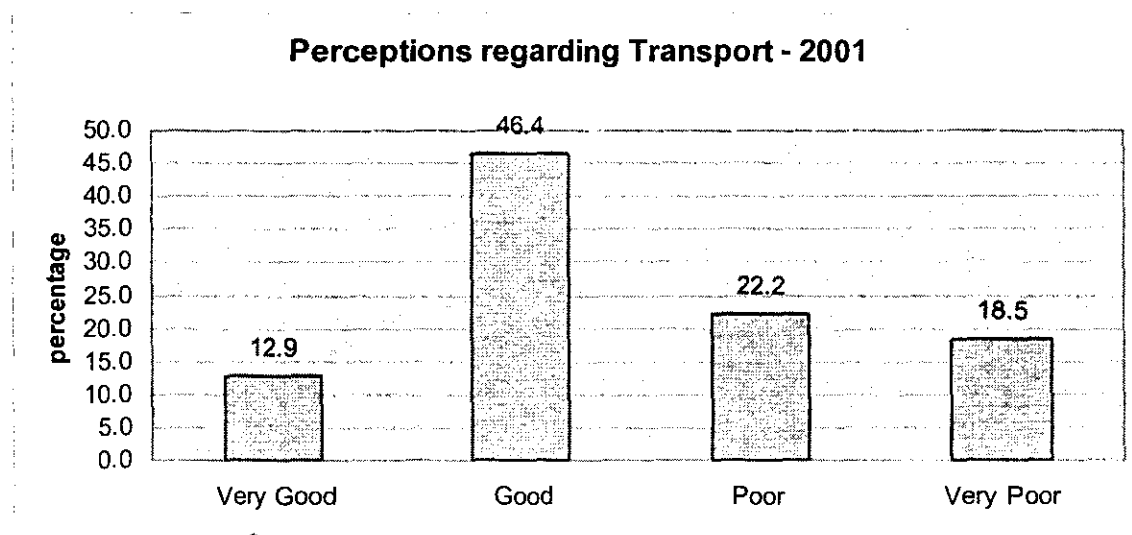
Frankel (2001: 36) points out that most of the people in the income bracket "less than R250" are indigent without any definable source of income. This has also been observed with the current survey. There is quite a large proportion of the population that depends purely on family and friends for hand-outs and some social grants. Frankel (2001: 36) observed that there was also a tendency to pool incomes on a familial or buy-in basis through the so-called 'Stokvels'. This tendency is common practice in penurious communities in the area and is aimed at lightening the burden of poverty and creating a kind of a social safety net for the community.

While in the past Evaton West, being a new settlement, had lacked a sense of communality and a tradition of collective interest (Frankel 2001: 38), this situation appears to have changed considerably thanks to the EWCDF, the Eindhoven Municipality group and CoLtAPiA®. A number of community organisations and groups have been formed that have assisted in bringing the community together in a collective purpose. This helps in creating some form of coping mechanism against the endemic poverty in the Evaton West.

### 5.2.5 Public Transport

Public and other transport is readily available in Evaton West. It consists of buses and minibus taxis, with these taxis the predominant type of transport. The area is quite far from a train or commuter station and thus trains are hardly utilised. Figure 5.3 shows the perceptions of respondents to Frankel's survey regarding transport in 2001 which showed quite a divided picture.

Figure 5.3: Perceptions regarding transport in 2001



Source: Adapted from Frankel (2001: 41, 42)

In 2003 as in 2001, there is still a lack of a central taxi terminus which can bring orderly management of this type of transport in the area. Local procurement of taxis is still not sufficiently encouraged. This would go a long way to encouraging local business. Such stimulation of local business would in turn help alleviate poverty as more people would find employment.



### 5.2.6 Housing Adequacy

Oelofse (2003: 269) writes that in confronting poverty, the urban poor need to secure land for housing and gain access to and manage environmental infrastructure and resources. These activities occupy a large portion of the time and energy of low-income urban communities in South Africa.

StatsSA (1999: 3) provides a picture of housing in Gauteng, stating that 25 percent of African-headed households were in informal settlements (the figure is 16 percent for South Africa as a whole), whereas very few African-headed households lived in traditional dwellings (fifteen percent for South Africa as a whole). The majority of houses in Gauteng had four or more rooms (55 percent).

Evaton West can be seen as a formal low-cost housing settlement. It is largely residential with formal, low-cost and detached units owned primarily by their occupants. There are those that are rented out to tenants, though this practice is discouraged (but seemingly tolerated) by the local and other authorities. Most of the houses have only two rooms. There is therefore quite a high floor space problem in the area. Most respondents to the community survey (Mokoena 2003) also concurred that housing in Evaton West is spatially inadequate. There have been marginal improvements in the form of formal or informal extensions to the existing units, but these are barely noticeable.

Reasons given for the improvement of housing in the area are shown in Table 5.3.

Table 5.3: Reasons for improved quality of housing in 2003

Reason	Percentage
Houses extended	51.5
Houses plastered and painted	30.3
Wall fence erections, security windows and doors	15.2
Building social clubs	3.0
Total	100.0

Source: Community survey (Mokoena 2003).

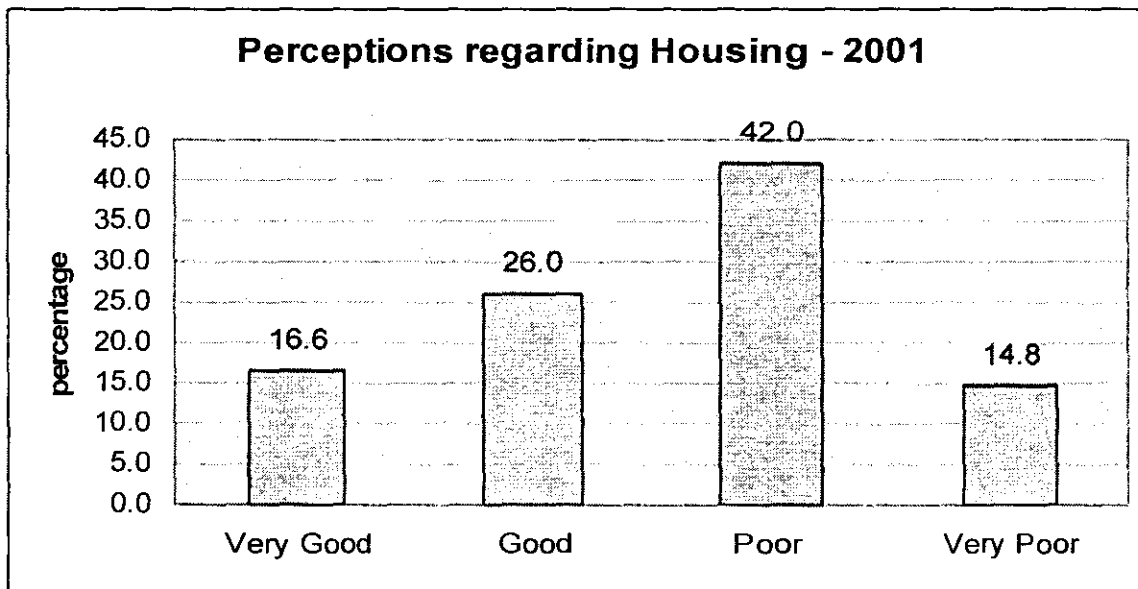
The table shows that the extensions and improvements (plastering and painting) made to existing houses led to the improved quality of the houses. Residents themselves pay for such increases and renovations. The table also shows that some add security features (walls, security windows and doors) to their houses. This leads to an increased sense of physical safety inside the house. Notwithstanding these issues, the point raised by Frankel (2001: 43) seems to hold nonetheless, namely that the great majority of people live in the barest of conditions with little possibility of upgrading under the current conditions of unemployment and poverty. The poverty of most residents precludes normal maintenance of their houses, leading to degradation of these houses.

Figure 5.4 shows quite a divided opinion on the Evaton West community's attitudes towards housing. Most of the salient issues underlying the dissatisfaction with housing that were pointed out by Frankel include: lack of privacy, child molestation (household members having to sleep in one room), domestic violence (irritability due to lack of space) and youths aimlessly wandering in the streets attributable to poor and cramped housing. The sub-economic housing built with low quality material led to poor physical structure of these houses. To people who have come from even worse housing conditions (e.g. shacks), the houses might be seen as satisfactory, but to those with large households or those who formerly stayed in better conditions, the houses will be seen as inadequate. These perceptions are a function of the frame of reference of the respondents.

Most of the issues raised by Frankel (2001: 45-47) can be assessed as follows from the current survey:

- The allocation and issue of houses, formerly fraught with inconsistencies and corruption, has been taken over by the Development Forum and is managed according to an agreed system with residents. This has reduced the confusion and the perceived and real corruption in housing allotments.

Figure 5.4: Perceptions regarding housing in 2001



Source: Adapted from Frankel (2001: 41, 42)

- The houses are still perceived to be poorly built and poorly serviced. Although there seems to be minimal assistance with housing advice (mainly from the Development Forum), there is still no financial assistance for housing improvements and maintenance.
- The housing stock is still homogeneous and standardized as low cost housing is, not allowing for individual choices and preferences. Residents have taken it upon themselves to extend their houses in such a way that their preferences are taken into account.
- The EWCDF has played a major role in offering assistance to residents on such issues as the legalities of housing and housing ownership, land tenure, land use, zoning rules and property registrations and transfers.
- The issue that the RDP houses in Evaton West violate the basic principles of integrated development (meaning ensuring easy access to amenities like schools and shopping areas) may no longer hold in that there are currently schools in the area, shops (for example, a Spar Supermarket)

and churches. There is still a lack of facilities such as recreational facilities.

- Housing developments, thanks to the EWCDF, are based on the principle of affirmative local procurement. All building projects in the area employ local labour and as far as possible other local resources (like transportation). This was clear in the building of the supermarket. This supermarket's workers are currently mostly local residents.

On a whole, therefore, there seems to have been more positive developments regarding housing in the area than there were three years ago. There remains a lot still to be achieved, as will be indicated and discussed in Chapter 6.

### 5.2.7 Quality of life

57.9 percent of the respondents to the community survey (Mokoena 2003) pointed out that in the past 3 years, the quality of life (in whichever way they define it) in Evaton West has improved, a few (26.3 percent of the respondents) pointed out that they feel that the quality of life has indeed worsened. Reasons for this improvement/worsening are shown in Table 5.4.

Table 5.4: Reasons for improved quality of life in 2003

	<b>Reason</b>	<b>Percentage</b>
Reasons for improvement in quality of life	People working together for development	31.8
	Sector Policing Forums and CPF	27.3
	Training	4.5
	Community Projects	22.7
	People cleaning dumping areas	9.1
	People know each other	4.5
	<b>Total</b>	<b>100.0</b>
Reasons for worsening/remaining the same of quality of life	No police station	13.3
	High crime rate	33.3
	Unemployment	33.3
	No development	6.7
	No clinic	6.7
	Lack of education	6.7
<b>Total</b>	<b>100.0</b>	

Source: Community survey (Mokoena 2003).

Table 5.4 shows that people working together for development, increased policing and various community projects have assisted in increasing the quality of life in the area, especially the fact that people are working together to develop the area. On the other hand, the high crime rate, unemployment and lack of a police station in the area militate against an improvement in the quality of life.

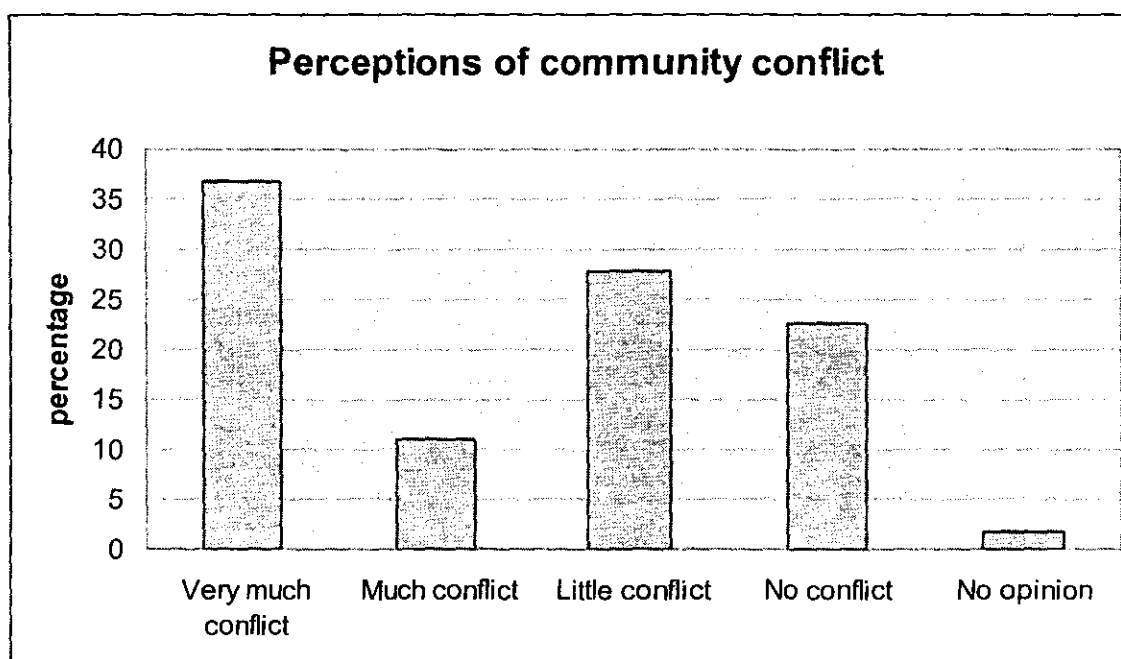
In term of levels of living, 57.9 percent of respondents characterised the level of living of the community as poor to very poor in 2003, while 36.8 percent felt that the level of living is average. "Average" implies that the level of living is no different than in surrounding communities, which means that if they are poor, so is Evaton West.

### **5.2.8 Trust and conflict in the community**

An almost equal number of respondents of the community survey (Mokoena 2003) felt that trust in the community in lending/borrowing matters is either there or not there. Almost 50 percent felt that people in the community do not generally trust one another in such matters, while the other half felt that people do trust one another. 47 percent indicated that in the last 3 years, the level of trust in the community has improved, while only 15 percent said it has worsened. Most also indicated that, compared to other communities, trust in Evaton West is either better or the same as in those other communities. People in Evaton West look out for the welfare of their own families and they are concerned with community welfare.

Frankel (2001: 152) points out that the local developmental culture in South African communities is dominated by notions of "the struggle", inherited from the recent resistance to apartheid and the continued difficulties of the historically disadvantaged to eke out a basic existence. Conflict becomes the prism through which they view social existence. The perceptions in the current survey (Mokoena 2003) indicated a low propensity for conflict in the area. There is a much higher sense of mutuality and co-operation in the community. This was enforced by the various campaigns where people had to work together on issues of mutual interest.

Figure 5.5: Perceptions of community conflict in 2001



Source: Adapted from Frankel (2001: 152)

Figure 5.5 shows the Frankel survey respondents' perceptions regarding conflict in 2001. It shows a divided picture of such perceptions; almost as many people felt there was little or no conflict as those that felt there was much conflict. There may also have been a misunderstanding of community conflict versus personal/individual conflict. The current perceptions are more in favour of little or no conflict.

### 5.3 Principal services

Global Urban Observatory (2003: 3) states that efficient provision of public services can lower the income that a household needs to have access to those services (by reducing the necessary expenditures). Public services are largely available, especially in big cities, but often not to the poor because of the price. Regulatory and policy frameworks constrain service provision to informal areas. Urban poor in many countries have to pay informal service providers more than they would have paid for formal provision, and/or connect themselves illegally and have to pay bribes to officials.

### 5.3.1 Electricity

Most of the community has electricity in their homes. In the past three years, the electricity service has remained the same. There is a strong perception that the quality of electricity in the area is poor to very poor due to problems with the supply of electricity. Table 5.5 shows these problems.

Table 5.5: Problems with electricity service in 2003

Problem	Percentage
Weak power supply	15.2
No prior notice of power cuts	27.3
Off during windy/rainy weather	27.3
If off, not attended to immediately	9.1
Cable theft	3.0
No money to recharge	6.1
Far from pay-point	12.1
Total	100.0

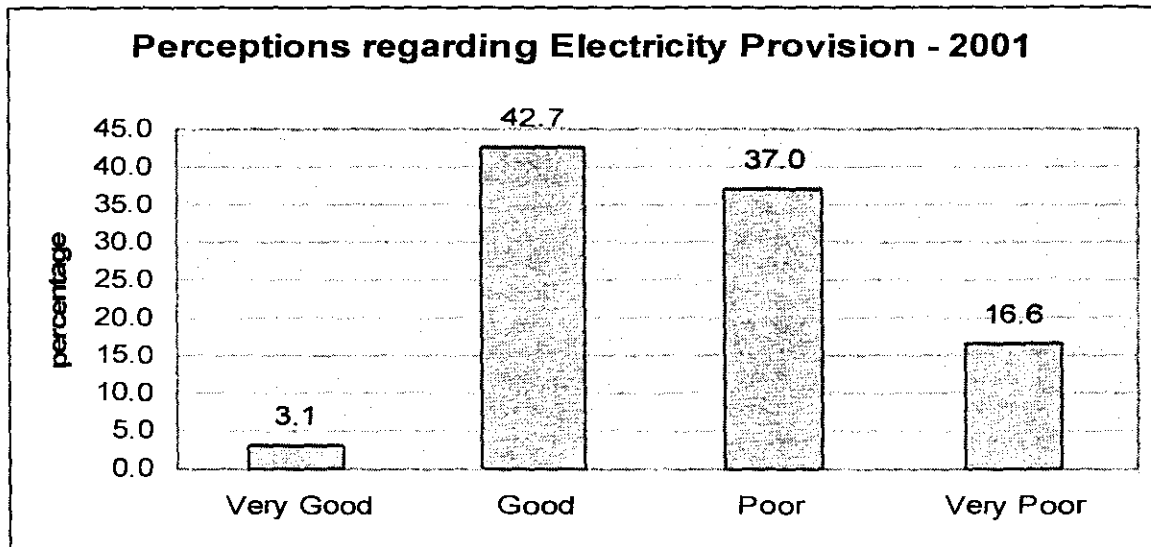
Source: Community survey (Mokoena 2003).

Residents complain that power 'trips' off during windy and rainy weather and that when there are scheduled power cuts, they are not informed in advance. The power supply is also seen as weaker than in other areas.

Figure 5.6 shows the perceptions of residents regarding electricity provision in 2001. It shows a divided picture of perceptions in this regard. These views will predominantly stem from people's backgrounds and frame of reference.

Frankel (2001: 49) points out that there were a number of illegal connections and vandalism of the electrical reticulation in Evaton West in 2001. This problem did not surface in the current survey. The bulk supply of electricity seems to be adequate although, as pointed out earlier there also seems to be an overload situation, especially during winter.

Figure 5.6: Perceptions regarding electricity provision in 2001



Source: Adapted from Frankel (2001: 41, 42)

The cost of electricity is still seen as too expensive to residents. The cutting of electricity due to non-payment is seen as unfair by the residents. The lack of an office where complaints regarding electricity can be logged is also seen as a problem. This leads to problems not being attended to in time. Insecure installations also lead to problems such as cable theft and vandalism.

### 5.3.2 Public lighting

Evaton West has no street lighting and has never had from the beginning. Frankel (2001: 52) also identified high mast street lighting as a priority area. This has a direct bearing on the feeling of lack of physical safety outside the home at night. There are also a number of criminal acts (especially muggings and rapes) that happen due to this lack of street lights. This came up strongly during one of CoLtAPIA<sup>®</sup>'s community profiling processes. All respondents to this question identified irresponsibility of the council or councillor as the cause of this lack of street lights.

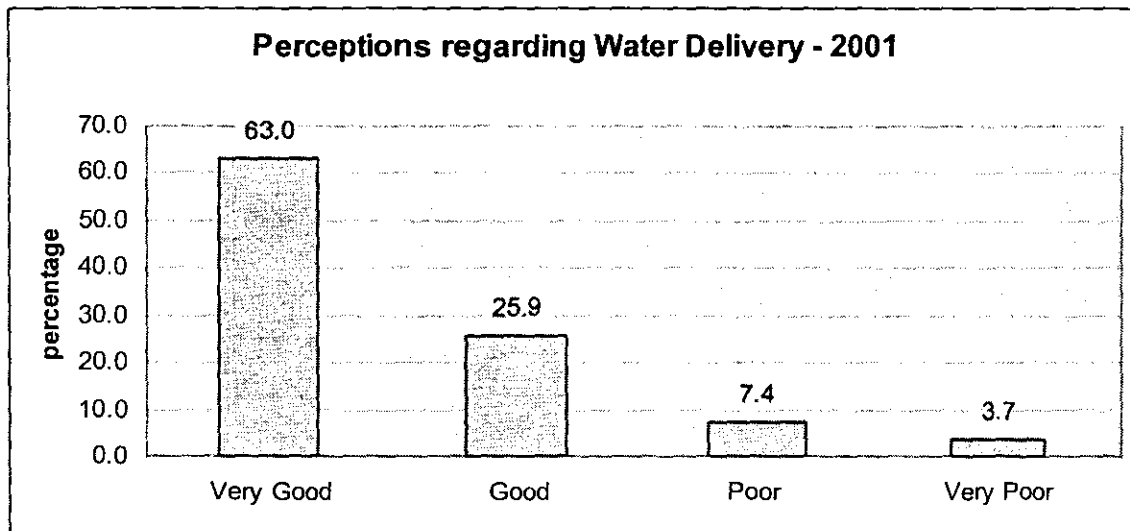
### 5.3.3 Drinking water

StatsSA (1999: 3) approximated that in 1999 99 percent of Gauteng households already had their water piped into the dwelling, piped onto the site or obtained from a public tap, compared with 83 percent nationally. It is clear from the



community responses that in Evaton West, the entire community has access to pipe-borne water and/or to public stand-pipes and has had for the past three years. Residents also felt that the quality of water is between good and very good. None stated any problems with the quality of water.

Figure 5.7: Perceptions regarding water delivery in 2001



Source: Adapted from Frankel (2001: 41, 42)

Figure 5.7 shows a very high positive response to perceptions regarding water delivery systems in Evaton West. This response is similar to responses in the current survey. Only 11.1 percent indicated poor to very poor services regarding water delivery meaning that most were happy with the provision of this service.

#### 5.3.4 Home Telephone Services

StatsSA (1999: 4) reported that Gauteng had the second highest proportion (47 percent), after the Western Cape (61 percent), of households with a telephone or a cellular phone in 1999, quoting the October Household Survey of 1999. This was higher than the national figure of 34 percent. In Evaton West, less than half of households have telephones. The quality of the telephone service is also seen as very poor.

### 5.3.5 Communication Service

#### 5.3.5.1 Public telephone services

Evaton West has on average eleven public telephones. These are either landlines or cellular telephone services. On average, the walking distance from the nearest telephone for the residents is 15 minutes. Over the last three years, the public telephone service in this community has improved, according to responses. Currently, the public telephone service in this community is average to good.

Problems with public telephones are shown in Table 5.6.

Table 5.6: Problems with public telephones in 2003

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Percentage</b>
Paying for emergency calls	9.1
Poor sound quality	18.2
Close early	12.1
Long queues	12.1
Network failure	30.3
Not enough public phones	12.1
Not enough space/cramped up	6.1
Total	100.0

Source: Community survey (Mokoena 2003).

The table shows that network failures (especially in the case of cellular phones) are the biggest problems experienced with public telephones. Poor sound quality is also seen as a serious problem. Closing early, long queues and insufficiency of public phones are ranked third as serious problems. All these problems impact on the efficiency of the service offered and eventually on the communication system in the area.

#### 5.3.5.2 Postal/mail service

Evaton West has no post office. The nearest post office is on average one and a half hours away on foot. The mail service in the area consists of a number of post boxes under a roof in Extension 11. The mail service is perceived to have

worsened in the past three years. Currently, mail service is rated from poor to very poor. Table 5.7 shows the problems with mail service in Evaton West.

**Table 5.7: Problems with the mail service in 2003**

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Percentage</b>
Letters placed in wrong boxes (mixing addresses)	24.1
Late deliveries	44.8
Shortage of mailboxes	13.8
No keys for mailboxes (leading to vandalism)	17.2
Total	100.0

Source: Community survey (Mokoena, 2003).

It shows that late delivery of letters is the main problem with the mail service, followed by letters placed in wrong address boxes. The two problems may actually be related. Many letter boxes also do not have keys, with most people unable to afford the key replacement fee. This leads to vandalism (people stealing and damaging other people's letters).

### **5.3.5.3 Internet service**

There is no access to a public internet service in Evaton West. The nearest public internet service is approximately three hours away on foot.

### **5.3.6 Sewage**

StatsSA (1999: 3) states that in 1999, 88 percent of households in Gauteng had access to a flush or chemical toilet compared with 56 percent nationally. In Evaton West, the entire community is served by a public sewage system. In the last three years, the quality of sewage service has improved or remained the same, according to respondents.

Currently the public sewage system is rated by respondents as good to very good. There are some persons who quoted problems with the sewage system as shown in Table 5.8.

Table 5.8: Problems with the sewage service in 2003

Problem	Percentage
Frequent blockage	42.9
No offices to report blockages	14.3
Leaking	42.9
Total	100.0

Source: Community survey (Mokoena, 2003).

It shows that frequent blockages and leaking are the main problems. Some indicated that smells emanating from these blockages and leaks are the main problems, especially when it rains or on windy days.

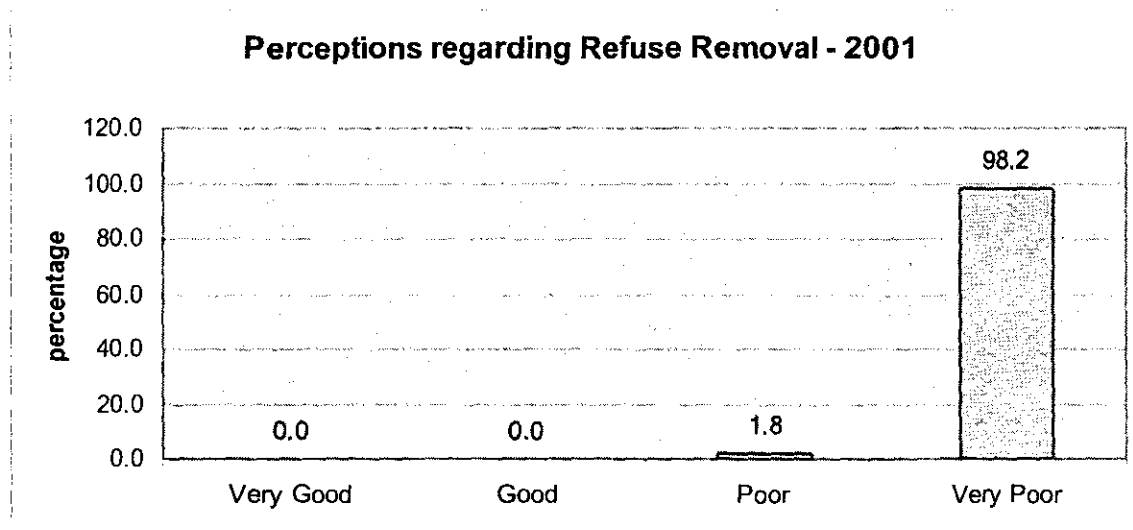
The streets of Evaton West do not have sufficient sewers. Other sewage and waste water systems used in the community include pit latrines.

### 5.3.7 Refuse Collection

StatsSA (1999: 4) assert that in 1999, 84 percent of Gauteng households had access to formal refuse removal services, with the national figure at 55 percent. In Evaton West, residents indicated that there is no formal refuse removal service. Each individual is therefore responsible for disposing of their household refuse. This situation has remained the same over the past three years. Alternative solid waste removal systems include burning and recycling. Campaigns have also been organised where the community was mobilised to collect and dispose of solid waste, clear dumping areas and plant trees and grass on these sites (non-designated dumping areas). This was organised by the Evaton West Community Development Forum (EWCDF).

Figure 5.8 shows that perceptions regarding refuse removal in 2001 were very poor. Residents felt that these services were very poor. This tallies with the current survey.:

Figure 5.8: Perceptions regarding refuse removal in 2001



Source: Adapted from Frankel (2001: 41, 42)

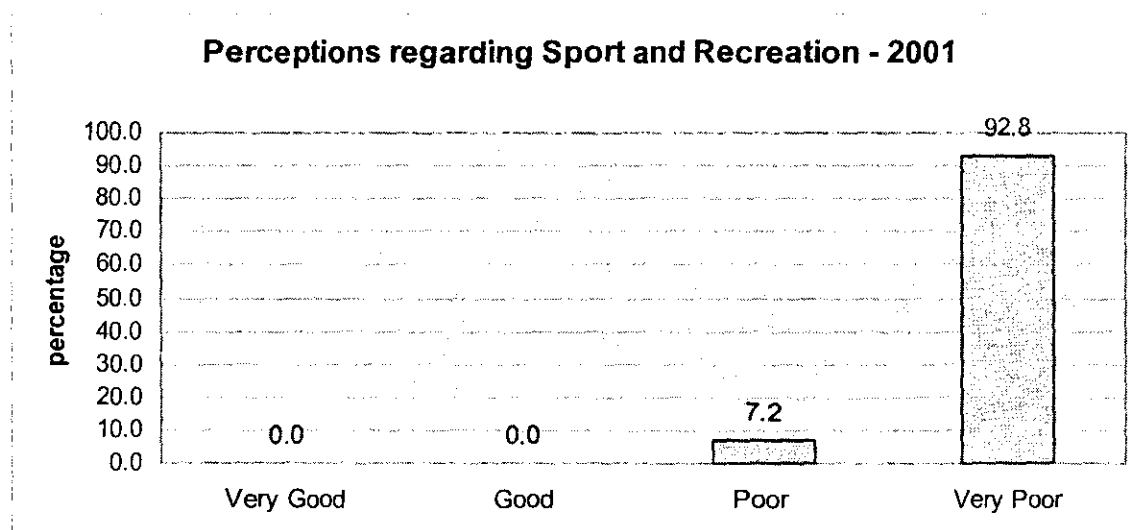
The following issues were raised by Frankel (2001: 113-118) regarding the environment and were updated for this thesis as follows:

- Litter is still a major problem in the Evaton West in 2003. The EWCDF has organised cleaning and greening campaigns through the newly-formed Environmental group. Formal dumping sites are still not designated.
- In 2003, working with SOLID (Saltsping Organization for Life Improvement and Development, a Canadian organisation working especially with HIV-infected people), food gardens were developed in the area to teach residents to make use of the piece of land they have access to for food production. More people in Evaton West have since been following this example. Plans are underway to involve Food-and-Trees-for-Africa, SOLID, the VUT and the EWCDF in developing a commercial food garden on one of the unused sites in Evaton West.

#### 5.4 Recreation

All respondents answered that the community does not have sport and recreation areas. There are no separate children's play areas and there have never been any in the past three years. Figure 5.9 shows perceptions concerning sport and recreation facilities in 2001 in Evaton West.

Figure 5.9: Perceptions regarding sport and recreation in 2001



Source: Adapted from Frankel (2001: 41, 42)

It shows that by far, people rated these facilities very poorly. This is the same finding in the current survey. Some of the issues behind this perception are as follows:

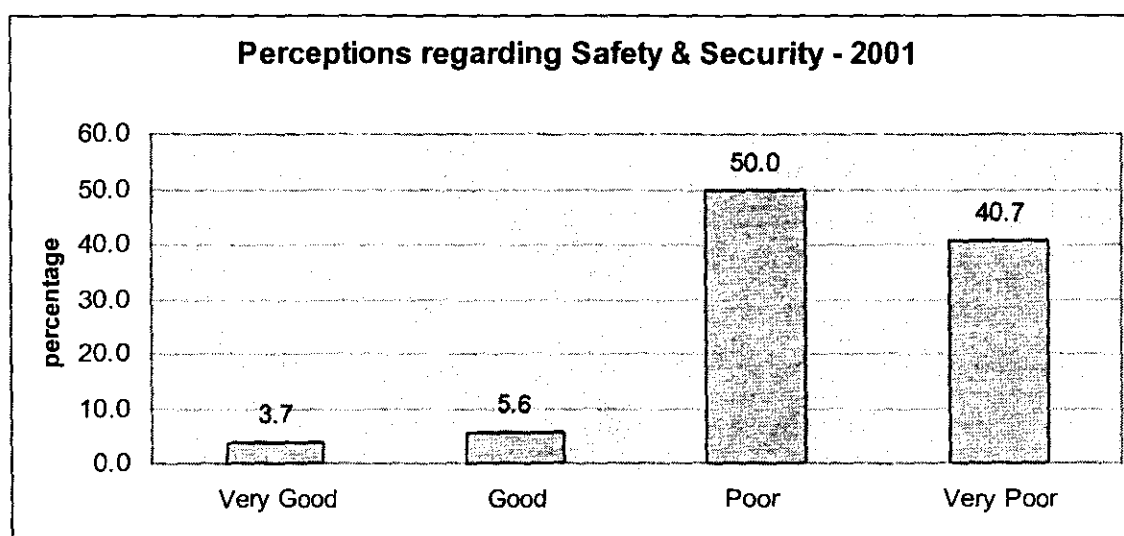
- There is still no library in the area. The availability of a library would assist in developing a culture of learning as well as supporting the education endeavours in the area.
- There is currently still no Multi-Purpose Community Centre (MPCC) in Evaton West as is found in some of the adjacent townships. Such a centre would ensure that indoor sports, cultural activities and art and crafts take place and are properly resourced. Sport fields such as soccer grounds, need to be revamped and appropriately resourced as well.

## 5.5 Safety and Security

Mahmood (2000: 229) states that poverty and inequality "... are at the root of violence, social strife and economic breakdowns in developing countries".

Evaton West still did not have a police station in 2003. The police service is nevertheless available. The community itself has organised security units working with the police to ensure safety and security in the area. Most of the community has access to this service. In the past three years, this service has improved, especially with the formation of the Community Policing Forums (CPFs), as well as the sector policing units in the area.

Figure 5.10: Perceptions regarding safety and security in 2001



Source: Adapted from Frankel (2001: 41, 42)

Figure 5.10 shows 2001 perceptions regarding safety and security in Evaton West. It shows that 90.7 percent of residents felt that safety and security services in the area were poor to very poor. Some issues raised by Frankel (2001: 98-99) can be updated as follows:

- Crime is addressed in an integrated and holistic way in Evaton West in 2003. The close co-operation between the residents and the Evaton West Community Development Forum has ensured that crime is dealt with.
- There is still no properly equipped police station that can deal with petty crimes and refer others to more equipped stations. This frustrates the efforts of the residents in dealing with crime.

## 5.6 Labour migration

Global Urban Observatory (2001: 3) states that lack of access to job markets and opportunities, geographical isolation (e.g., for residents of peri-urban slums) and lack of access to information channels exacerbates the income poverty. This is true of Evaton West. Evaton West is relatively far from towns and industry. It was also mentioned in Section 5.3.5 that there is a relative lack of access to information (for example internet) and efficient communication (for example quality telephone) systems in the area. This goes to aggravate the poverty problem.

Both men and women members of this community go to other places to work. Almost all those who go elsewhere for work, work in the nearby town and cities (Vanderbijlpark, Vereeniging, Meyerton and Sasolburg).

Table 5.9: Principal jobs men and women leave Evaton West for, daily (2003)

	<b>Job</b>	<b>Percentage</b>
Principal jobs women leave for	Domestic work	52.8
	Sewing	5.6
	Factory work	11.1
	Sales work (store)	19.4
	Prostitution	2.8
	Messenger	2.8
	Restaurant & catering	5.6
	<b>Total</b>	<b>100.0</b>
Principal jobs men leave for	Construction	27.8
	Manufacturing	8.3
	Gardening	16.7
	Driving (especially taxis)	30.6
	Security	5.6
	Vender	2.8
	General Labour	8.3
	<b>Total</b>	<b>100.0</b>

Source: Community survey (Mokoena, 2003).

There are very few members of other communities working in the Evaton West community. This will mainly be professionals (like doctors and lawyers) who work but do not stay in Evaton West. Table 5.9 show the principal jobs that men and women leave Evaton West for daily. It shows that jobs women leave for are primarily domestic work, followed by working in stores and factories. The jobs men leave for include driving (especially taxis) and construction-related work.



Working in gardens is also seen as a large category of employment. These are some of the low-wage jobs perpetuating poverty in Evaton West.

## **5.7 Education**

GUO (2003: 4) states that crime and violence, insufficient school places and inability to afford school expenses are generally the main problems keeping children from attending school. Castro-Leal (1999: ii) found that "...school expenses are the most important reason that keep parents from sending children to school. Most families have to spend a significant amount for school fees, uniforms, transport, meals and books and stationary: Poor families pay more than 40 percent of per capita non-food household expenditures per child in primary school compared to only six percent for non-poor families." These problems are also evident in Evaton West as indicated by the respondents to the community questionnaire.

### **5.7.1 Preschool**

There is no public pre-school in Evaton West, resulting in those parents wanting to take their children to a pre-school sending them to other areas where there is one or sending them to private pre-schools. The distance to the nearest pre-school is, 45 minutes on foot. The number of pre-schools as well as the number of teachers running them, is not sufficient to service the whole community. The physical condition of those that are available in the area is seen as average, that is no different from others in nearby communities. It appears that about half or less of young children attend pre-schools. The problems attached to low attendance rate at pre-schools are shown in Table 5.10. It shows that lack of affordability of fees, the sheer distance to pre-schools and lack of confidence in teachers are the main problems preventing parents from sending their children to pre-schools in Evaton West.

### **5.7.2 Primary school**

There is a public primary school in Evaton West. The distance to the school from various points in Evaton West is on average 40 minutes on foot. The school is not large enough for the entire school-going population of Evaton West. The ratio

of pupils to teachers is seen by the respondents to the community survey (Mokoena 2003) as insufficient, i.e. too few teachers for the number of children. The physical condition of the school is seen as very good and most children attend the school. Table 5.10 shows the reasons for lack of regular attendance to school. It shows that illnesses and negligence are the primary reasons for irregular attendance. Domestic violence, orphans, and living with grandparents are also seen as contributing to low attendance.

### **5.7.3 Secondary school**

The first public secondary school is currently under construction in Evaton West. The distance from the school is on average 45 minutes on foot. The school, when completed, will not be large enough to accommodate all children from Evaton West. No comments can as yet be made regarding sufficiency of teachers at the school. The school's physical condition is anticipated to be good judging from the standards of schools in the nearby areas. Most local children who attend secondary schools attend in nearby areas, especially "old" Evaton. This leads to heightened costs due to transport and food (cannot go home for lunch). It also adds to problems of low attendance. Less than half of the children of secondary school-going age actually attend school. Reasons for low school attendance are shown in Table 5.10.

It shows that teenage pregnancies, substance abuse and gangsterism are the most pronounced problems affecting attendance at secondary school by the school children of Evaton West. Interestingly, affordability of fees is ranked lowest in the case of secondary schools.

Table 5.10: Reasons for low attendance rates at schools in 2003

	<b>Reason</b>	<b>Percentage</b>
Preschool, reasons for low attendance	Parents prefer to look after their own children	7.4
	Parents cannot afford fees	51.9
	Sicknesses	7.4
	Too far	14.8
	Lack of confidence in teachers	14.8
	No public preschool in the area	3.7
	<b>Total</b>	<b>100.0</b>
	Primary school, reasons for low attendance	Children look after the house
Children look after young ones (siblings)		9.1
Living with grandparents		12.1
Domestic violence		12.1
Negligence		15.2
Sicknesses/Disabilities		21.2
No birth certificates		3.0
Orphans		12.1
Community too large for one school		6.1
<b>Total</b>		<b>100.0</b>
Secondary school, reasons for low attendance	Gangsterism	13.5
	Looking for work early	5.4
	Drug & alcohol abuse	18.9
	Teenage pregnancies	32.4
	HIV/Aids & other sicknesses	8.1
	Too far	8.1
	Can't afford fees	2.7
	Prostitution	5.4
	Dropout	5.4
	<b>Total</b>	<b>100.0</b>

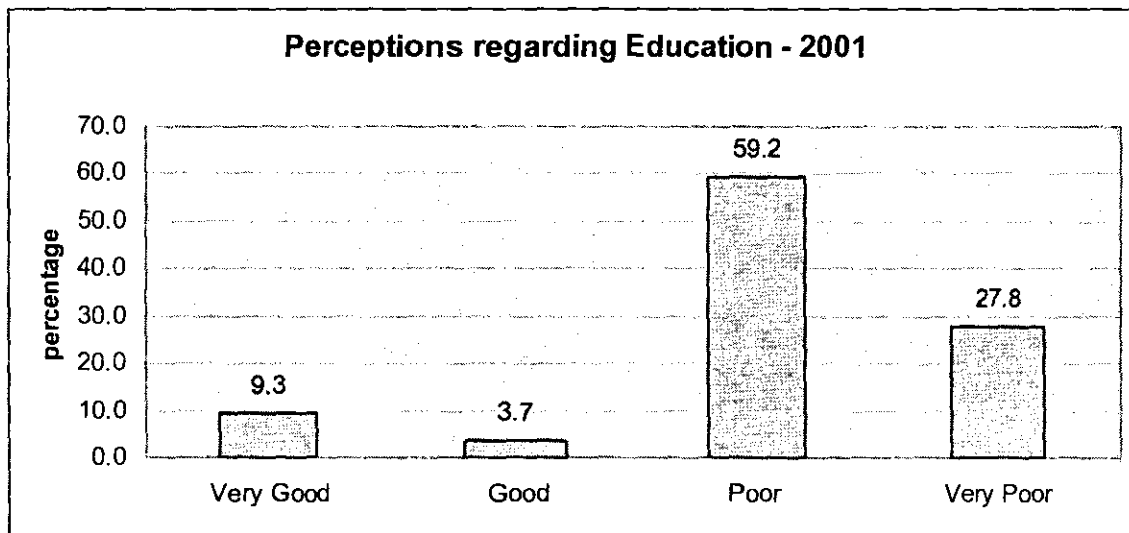
Source: Community survey (Mokoena, 2003).

#### 5.7.4 Adult education

Adult basic education and training (ABET) literacy programmes are run and campaigned for in Evaton West. Few job training programmes are offered in the community, too few and too far in-between. Most are offered outside the community in further education and training (FET) colleges, community colleges and higher education institutions (for example the Vaal University of Technology's Community Centre).

The perceptions of residents regarding education in 2001 are shown in Figure 5.11. 87 percent of the respondents indicated that the education service in Evaton West is poor to very poor.

Figure 5.11: Perceptions regarding education in 2001



Source: Adapted from Frankel (2001: 41, 42)

Some of the key issues pointed out by Frankel (2001: 65-70) in 2001 can be updated as follows for 2003:

- Maintenance of schools in Evaton West and nearby was raised as an issue in 2001, with most schools being dirty with blocked toilets, no rubbish bins and toilets for teachers. This situation has certainly improved, especially with regards to the primary school in Evaton West.
- The primary school, Matome, is well secured with perimeter fencing and barbed wire. This has proven relatively effective in preventing vandalism at the school.
- There is still a lot of apathy to school attendance among many young people. There is still a need for inculcation of positive attitudes towards school and learning. Absenteeism by teachers and learners needs to be addressed as well.

## 5.8 Health

Sidley (2002: 405) points out that health is both a resource for as well as an outcome of sustainable development. The goals of sustainable development

cannot be achieved when there is a high prevalence of debilitating illness and poverty, and the health of a population cannot be maintained without a responsive health system and a healthy environment. GUO (2001: 3) quotes the fact that illness of a family member imposes huge costs on the rest of the household, both in terms of loss of income, especially if the main income earner is sick, and from the cost of treatment. This is especially true in the case of HIV/AIDS which is quite prevalent in many urban areas.

Table 5.11: Health problems in Evaton West in 2003

	Health problem	Percentage
Health problems for children under six	Malnutrition	32.5
	Diarrhoea	15.0
	Chicken pox	20.0
	Flu & Fever	12.5
	HIV/AIDS	5.0
	Tonsils	5.0
	Allergies	5.0
	Stomach problems	5.0
	<b>Total</b>	<b>100.0</b>
	Health problems for women	STD/STIs
HIV/AIDS		19.4
Cervical Cancer		19.4
Pneumonia		2.8
High BP		16.7
Tuberculosis		5.6
Labour complications		2.8
Diabetes		2.8
Age		5.6
Heart problems		5.6
<b>Total</b>		<b>100.0</b>
Health problems for men	STD/STIs	22.2
	HIV/AIDS	19.4
	Prostrate Cancer	8.3
	Pneumonia	8.3
	Tuberculosis	13.9
	Lung inflammations	8.3
	Diabetes	2.8
	Heart problems	11.1
<b>Total</b>	<b>100.0</b>	

Source: Community survey (Mokoena, 2003).

Table 5.11 shows the different health problems in Evaton West. The table shows that the main health problems for children under six years of age in the area are

primarily malnutrition, chicken pox, diarrhoea and flu and fever. Health problems for most women are indicated as sexually transmitted diseases / infections (STD/STI), HIV/AIDS and cervical cancer with high blood pressure also playing a role. For men, the most common problems include STD/STI, HIV/AIDS, Tuberculosis and heart problems. The problems therefore range from chronic and opportunistic diseases to common ailments.

There is no hospital in Evaton West and the nearest hospital (Kopanong hospital) is about 30 minutes away by ambulance or taxi. The only clinic available is a mobile unit. This service is not sufficient to service the whole of Evaton West. Residents have complained several times regarding this situation. There is no family planning service in the area, except that offered by the mobile unit. Table 5.12 shows the perceptions of sufficiency of different items at the clinic.

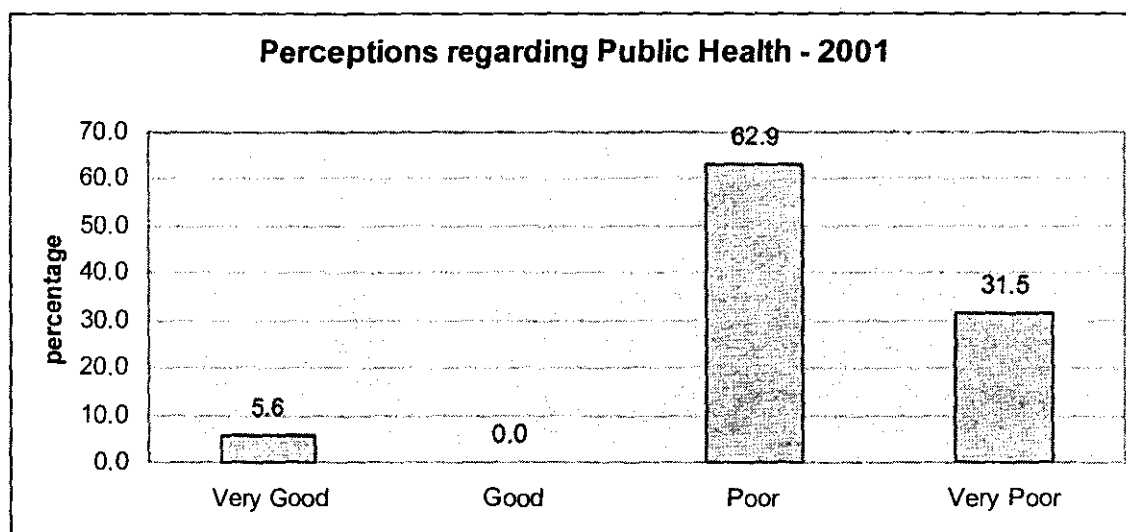
Table 5.12: Sufficiency of various items in 2003

Basic medicines	Barely sufficient
Equipment/instruments	Barely sufficient
Patient beds	None
Ambulances	None
Physicians	Insufficient
Nurses	Insufficient
Other health staff	Insufficient

Source: Community survey (Mokoena, 2003).

It can, therefore, be concluded that the health and medical services in Evaton West itself are not sufficient.

Figure 5.12: Perceptions regarding public health in 2001



Source: Adapted from Frankel (2001: 41, 42)

Figure 5.12 shows 2001 perceptions regarding public health. It shows an overwhelmingly low perception of this service in the area. The issues mentioned by Frankel (2001: 75-82) influencing these perceptions include the following:

- There is clearly a problem of access to health services, apart from the one clinic in the area. This situation has not changed in 2003. Transport costs are still a problem. The aged and disabled, who need these services most, find it difficult to reach them.
- There is still an absence of a reliable, regular and dedicated ambulance system in the area in 2003. This propounds the problem of distance and cost. There is still a dire need for upgrading of skills of health workers servicing the area, especially in mental health, child health and HIV/AIDS care.
- The establishment of a Health group by the Eindhoven Municipality group and the EWCDF in 2003 has ensured that health programmes are people-centred. Home-based care, communication of health awareness issues and regular health campaigns has been undertaken by residents

themselves through this group. The next step for this group could be to ensure that basic paramedic and emergency skills are developed among residents. This could include First-Aid training for teachers, school children and volunteer health workers.

## 5.9 Environmental issues

GUO (2003: 4) express the opinion that the urban poor are more exposed to environmental hazards than other groups, as they occupy the most polluted environments (e.g., near factories and waste dumps) and risk-prone sites, such as dump sites, river-beds and hillsides. It has already been indicated that there are no formal solid waste removal services in Evaton West. Table 5.13, which shows the main actions to improve the environment, also confirms this. Waste/Refuse removal ranks highest among actions desired to improve the environment. Planting trees ranks second, followed by teaching the community to recycle and creating parks in the area.

Most solid waste in the area consists of household waste dumped in illegal dumping areas. The environmental conditions in the area are seen as average to poor. According to respondents, the condition of the environment has improved over the past three years.

Table 5.13: Main actions to improve the environment

Action	Percentage
Planting trees	20.0
Waste/Refuse removal	37.1
Teach community to recycle	17.1
Create dumping sites	5.7
Cleanup campaigns	5.7
Create parks	14.3
Total	100.0

Source: Community survey (Mokoena, 2003).

## 5.10 Small, micro and medium enterprises (SMME's)

GUO (2003: 3) states that regulatory constraints on small enterprises perpetuates informality of work available to the poor, discourages asset accumulation and access to credits, and increases vulnerability of workers. Aliber (2001: 56), on the other hand, states that there is a probability that formal sector



employment will fail to expand dramatically in the near future. Prospects are especially bleak for unskilled work. This implies that if chronic poverty is to be reduced, then the SMME sector will have to pick up the slack. This calls for more support (through enabling regulatory framework) for SMMEs. Aliber (2001: 56)'s assertion states:

“A ... challenge to addressing chronic poverty is the probability that formal sector employment will fail to expand dramatically in the near future. Prospects are especially bleak for unskilled work. This implies that if chronic poverty is to be reduced then the SMME sector will have to pick up the slack. The fact that the SMME sector is only partially able to do so now (among Africans and coloureds, there are more than 5 times as many unemployed people as there are employed or self-employed in the informal sector, excluding domestic workers), suggests as a necessary condition that government and civil society will have to step up their efforts considerably from what they are presently. Whether this will be a sufficient condition, however, is doubtful. A key question is whether markets for the goods and services that SMMEs provide are sufficiently large. Another key question is whether an increasing number of SMMEs can move beyond the 'survivalist' mode and thereby provide actual escapes from poverty.”

There are a number of reasons that many SMME stay in the survivalist mode referred to by Aliber (2001: 56) above, including the fact that

- Small business owners are normally people skilled in the particular areas (like building and painting), and are not really skilled in the entire business management field.
- It is also true that whilst these people move about soliciting customers, a lot of time that could have been spent on production is wasted.
- Pricing of products is also done arbitrarily and not consistently. All these and other problems may be addressed through a co-operative approach.

The economic base of Evaton West is very small compared to other more established areas. Table 5.14 shows the contribution of the different areas

towards the Vaal Triangle's economy. Pellupessy (1998: 6) stated that most townships were, in 1998, even in nominal terms, worse off than in 1993. The most marked declines could be observed in Evaton, Sharpeville and Sebokeng, where there are the highest concentrations of unemployed people. When the types of activities in the townships are examined it does not seem likely that formal activities have been substituted by informal unregistered economic employment.

Table 5.14: Contributions of the different towns and townships to the economy of the Vaal

	1993	1998
Vereeniging	39.71	43.75
Vanderbijlpark	50.99	45.16
Meyerton	8.49	10.65
<b>Subtotal towns</b>	<b>99.19</b>	<b>99.56</b>
Evaton North	0.05	0.03
Evaton	0.18	0.10
Roshnee	0.10	0.10
Rust-ter-Vaal	0.02	0.01
Sharpeville	0.14	0.01
Boipatong	0.02	0.01
Bophelong	0.03	0.01
Sebokeng	0.28	0.17
<b>Subtotal townships</b>	<b>0.81</b>	<b>0.44</b>
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>100</b>
<b>Total (Rmil)</b>	<b>14,844</b>	<b>21,687</b>

Source: Pelupessy (1998: 6)

Table 5.15 shows the different types SMMEs in Evaton West. It shows that tuckshops are the primary small businesses, followed by hawkers and shebeens.

Table 5.15: Principal SMME activities in 2003

Activity	Percentage
Tuckshop	33.3
Tavern/Shebeen	25.0
Hawker	29.2
Contractor	2.1
Sewing	8.3
Taxi business	2.1
Total	100.0

Source: Community survey (Mokoena, 2003).

SMME, Local, Primarily, products are sold in Evaton West itself. Few products are also sold in markets in neighbouring areas. Problems experienced in getting products to the markets and therefore restricting access to more markets are shown in Table 5.16. It shows that high transport cost and the lack of business skills contributes most to problems in accessing markets. Some of the business skills mentioned here refer to marketing and pricing skills. The point on lack of understanding between these SMMEs refers to lack of co-operation in especially the sharing of transport costs and the regulation of activities in the area.

Table 5.16: Main problem in getting products to markets in 2003

Problem	Percentage
Unfair competition	8.8
Lack of business skills	26.5
Transport	41.2
Community not supportive	5.9
No understanding between business people	5.9
Vegetables/fruits not fresh	2.9
Middlemen	8.8
Total	100.0

Source: Community survey (Mokoena, 2003).

Most SMMEs in Evaton West do not receive any technical assistance from any type institution (private or public). There was a disagreement among respondents as to the availability of co-operatives in the area. It then became clear that there was little understanding as to the meaning or work of a co-operative. There is in fact no co-operative in Evaton West at the moment. SMMEs in this area either have no access to any source of credit/loans or they are not making use of any. None of the respondents indicated use of any credit/loans for business purposes. Over the past three years, the number and variety of SMME products have

increased in the area, so has the volume of sales of these products, notwithstanding the stated problems. These points to potential of SMMEs as a viable source of income for the Evaton West residents.

Table 5.17: Vocational Preferences - 2001

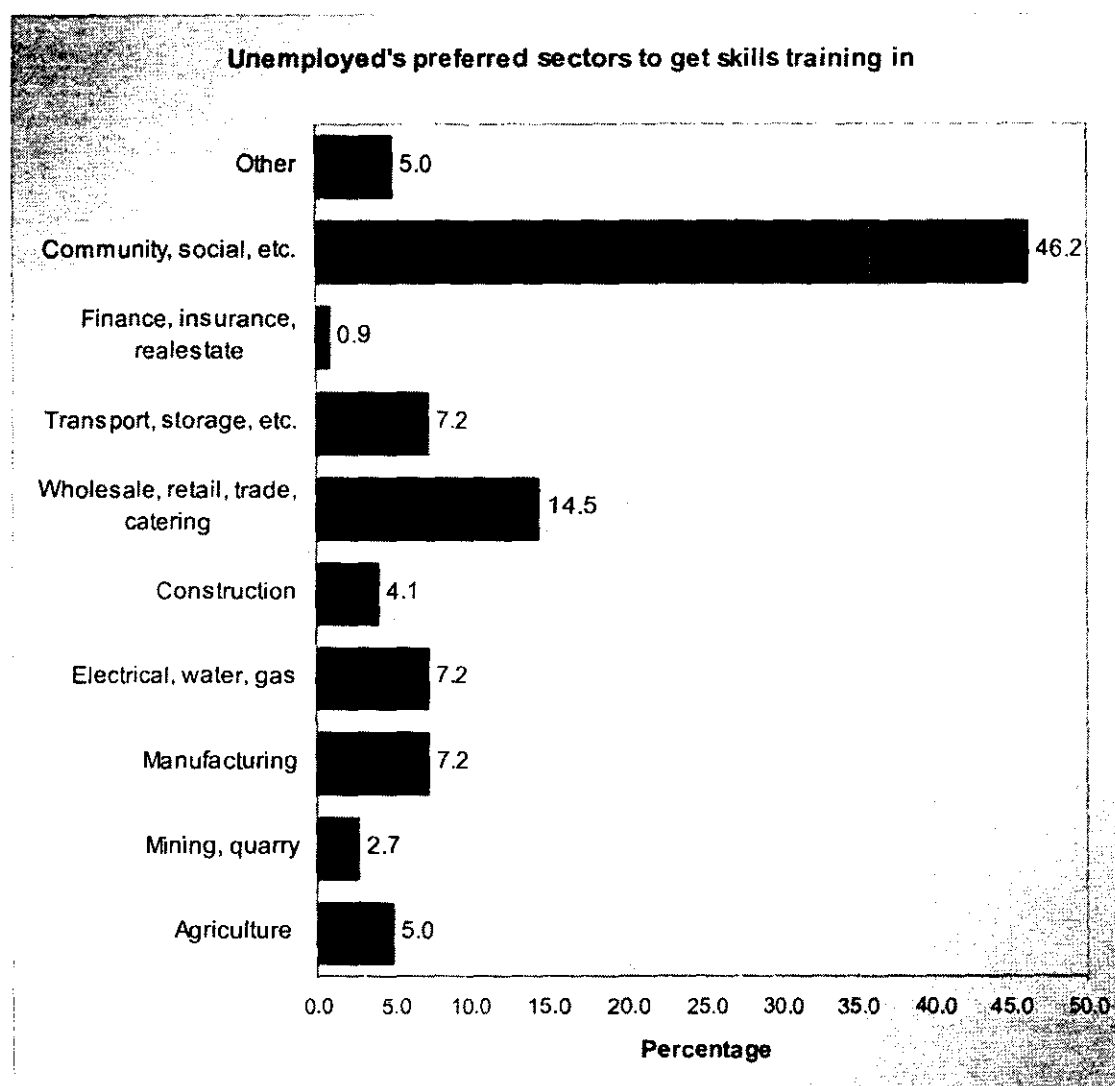
<b>Preference</b>	<b>Very Interested %</b>	<b>Interested %</b>	<b>Uninterested %</b>
Factory Work	58.1	21.9	20.0
Small Business	56.9	25.5	17.6
Farming	16.3	12.0	29.0
Mining	10.0	8.0	37.0
Service Work	29.0	14.0	11.0
Transport	18.0	12.0	24.0
Technical Work	16.0	12.0	26.0
Education	21.0	12.0	20.0
Government	38.0	6.0	10.0

Source: Adapted from Frankel (2001: 135)

Table 5.17 shows the responses of residents in 2001 to preferences of business ventures or employment areas. Most respondents indicated interest in factory work and small business. Service work and government work were also rated quite high.

In comparison to Table 5.17, Figure 5.13 shows the preferences of residents in 2003 arranged according to the various sectors of the economy.

Figure 5.13: Unemployed's preferred sectors to get skills in - 2003



Source: Survey data

The figure shows that the community, social and personal services sector is by far the most preferred sector for employment. This is followed by wholesale, retail, trade and catering. Frankel (2001: 137) makes the point that because of endemic unemployment, job preferences and employment realities are profoundly misaligned, and for most respondents, the work they would like to do remains hypothetical.

The following issues are raised by Frankel (2001: 135-142) and compared as follows with the current survey:

- The possibilities of tourism in the area, although seemingly a promising prospect, have not been investigated. All produce sold in the area is meant almost entirely for local consumption. The prospects of tourism stem from the ideal location of Evaton West; it lies along two major routes for tourists travelling either south to places like Vanderbijlpark, the Free State Province, The Eastern Cape and the Western Cape, and to the north (greater Gauteng and Limpopo).
- Affirmative local procurement involving people and services in Evaton West for local projects is encouraged.
- Key problems of lack of business skills and access to finance are still present in the community. This stifles initiatives in the area.

### **5.11 Community support**

The following community organisations or groups existed in Evaton West in 2003:

- a. Community development committee – The Evaton West Community Development Forum.
- b. LED Group (Local Economic Development)
- c. Parent-teacher association (PTA)
- d. Health committee
- e. Youth group
- f. Sports group
- g. Cultural group
- h. Civic group

All these groups consist primarily of residents. In some cases (like in the LED group), representatives of the local council are also included. These groups are supported by the following institutions primarily:

- a. Religious organisations
- b. School / teachers
- c. Non-governmental organisations
- d. Business group

These community groups/organisations make use primarily of the following places to hold meetings:

- a. Community center
- b. Personal homes
- c. Homes of other local leaders
- d. Health center/school
- e. Open grounds

The people who participate most in these organizations/groups are men and women equally, mostly adults and unemployed. Within the last three years, the community has organised itself to address the following issues: Health (especially HIV-AIDS), the environment, LED and crime prevention. These initiatives were highly successful. The main problems facing the community as indicated by respondents to the community survey (Mokoena, 2003) are shown in Table 5.18.

Table 5.18: Main problem in the community in 2003

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Percentage</b>
Street lights	8.8
Unemployment	20.6
Illiteracy	11.8
Crime	35.3
Build more schools	5.9
Health	2.9
Business development	2.9
Recreational facilities	2.9
Political tolerance	2.9
Waste management	2.9
School dropout	2.9
Total	100.0

Source: Community survey (Mokoena, 2003).

It shows that crime, unemployment and illiteracy are the main problems identified.

The following institutions/organizations offer assistance to the community: Eindhoven Municipality, CoLtAPIA® (in conjunction with the VUT), police service (SAPS) through CPF and Zivuseni government project.

Table 5.19 shows the most important problems in the community and the groups most affected by these problems as indicated by the respondents to the community survey (Mokoena 2003). The number indicate the percentages of respondents that showed that they believe the particular group is most affected by the corresponding crime.

Table 5.19: Problems in the community and the groups most affected by these problems

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Mainly young</b>	<b>Mainly old &amp; young</b>	<b>Mainly women</b>	<b>Mainly men &amp; women</b>	<b>Mainly workers</b>	<b>Mainly un-employed</b>	<b>All groups</b>
Burglaries					5.9%		88.2%
Robberies	5.9%			5.9%	17.6%		76.5%
Assaults	17.6%	11.8%		5.9%			70.6%
Gangs	76.5%						23.5%
Vandalism	11.8%						88.2%
Violent disputes	11.8%	5.9%	17.6%	23.5%			52.9%
Alcohol Abuse	35.3%	17.6%		52.9%			11.8%
Substance abuse	94.1%			5.9%			-
Teen pregnancy	82.4%	5.9%	17.6%				5.9%
Domestic violence	23.5%	5.9%	17.6%	5.9%			52.9%
Child abuse	29.4%	17.6%				17.6%	35.3%
Prostitution	23.5%	11.8%	29.4%	11.8%		17.6%	23.5%
HIV/AIDS	5.9%	11.8%	5.9%	5.9%			76.5%
Rapes	35.3%	23.5%	35.3%				17.6%
Other							11.8%
Average	32.4%	8.0%	8.8%	8.4%	1.7%	2.5%	42.4%

Source: Community survey (Mokoena, 2003).

The table shows that most problems affect the whole community equally, as is shown in the 'All groups' column. Many problems also affect mainly the young people, especially violent crimes and substance abuse. On average, young people, as a single group, are the most affected by all crimes at 32.4 percent. The Evaton West population is primarily young. Lack of sufficient organisations and institutions working with youth in the area lead to a number of problems such as falling prey to gangs, substance abuse, teen pregnancies and child abuse.



Lack of employment and opportunities for women ensures that they stay poor and this makes them susceptible to abuse and illegal ways of earning incomes. Frankel (2001: 95) states that relative to other township areas in the Vaal area, the level of reported crime did not appear to be particularly high in the Evaton West. The situation has remained like this, primarily due to the sector policing initiatives and the community police forum established in the area with the help of the EWCDF.

## 5.12 Snapshot of indicators in this chapter

This chapter discussed community level indicators to establish if the community is better-off currently than it was in 2000/1. Some of the indicators used include the following:

### Community Characteristics:

#### Main employment activities:

For men:	Construction-related and spaza shops/tuckshops
For women:	Sewing and spaza shops/tuckshops
Roads:	Not enough storm water drainage system
Individual incomes:	79.5 percent earn less than R500 per month
Public Transport:	Available, no central terminus for buses or taxis
Housing adequacy:	Houses too small and inadequate for most households
Quality of life:	1. 57.9 percent say it improved; people are working together for development. 2. Crime is still too high and so is unemployment
Trust and conflict:	47.0 percent say there is trust in the community

### Principal services:

Electricity:	Most houses have electricity although they feel the quality thereof is poor
Drinking water:	Community has access to pipe-borne water
Home telephone service:	Less than half of households have home telephones
Public telephone service:	Not enough public telephones
Postal/mail service:	Poor service

Internet service: Non-existent  
Sewage: Good, although there are frequent blockages  
Refuse collection: Poor service

Other indicators:

Recreation: No facilities, poor service  
Safety and security: No police station, only the community policing forum (CPF)  
Labour migration: Exists due to Evaton West being geographically displaced

Education:

Preschools: No public pre-school  
Primary schools: 1 primary school, servicing 11000 households  
Secondary schools: None  
Adult education centre: None

Health:

Clinic: None, only mobile unit  
Ambulance service: No dedicated service  
Home-based care: Not fully realised  
Most health problems: 1. Malnutrition and chicken pox for children under six  
2. HIV-AIDS, STI's and cervical cancer for women  
3. HIV-AIDS, STI's and TB for men

Environment:

Waste management: No dedicated service  
Greening: community responsible

SMME's:

Most types of activities: Tuckshops, taverns/shebeens and hawkers  
Most problems: Lack of business skills  
Preferred sector for training: Community, social and personal service

Community support:

Community groups: Available (e.g. Youth groups, women's groups)  
Primary problems: Unemployment, crime, illiteracy  
Predominant crimes: Burglaries and robberies

The above indicators show that even though the community has access to a number of services, there is still a lot to be done before the community as a whole can be seen as a non-poor community.

### **5.13 Summary**

Chapter 5 discussed several community-based indicators as they apply in Evaton West. These were then compared to results of a study undertaken in 2001. The aim was to establish whether Evaton West has improved with regards to these indicators over time. The indicators considered included bulk services, education, health and the environment.

Chapter 4 and 5 assessed Evaton West on the basis of household and community characteristics. This was done with the aim of assessing whether Evaton West is better-off based on these characteristics or worse-off. Such conclusions will be drawn in Chapter 6.

# **Chapter 6**

## **Summary, conclusions and recommendations**

### **6.1 Introduction**

The previous chapters of this thesis gave a profile of the study area, namely Evaton West (which is in the Emfuleni district of Gauteng Province) and based this profile on a number of well-researched indicators. This chapter provides a summary of the main points of this thesis and draws pertinent conclusions from the findings in the other chapters. It also focuses attention on some recommendations stemming from the conclusions presented.

The chapter contains a brief evaluation of the various indicators and compares these findings to either those of Bophelong (a similar township) or their levels in Evaton West as determined three years before. This assisted the reader and the researcher in evaluating the hypothesis set at the beginning of this thesis. Chapter 6 will conclude with some recommendations based on these indicators and the practical results of the survey work done in Evaton West.

### **6.2 Summary of thesis**

Chapter 1 of this thesis dealt with the problem and its setting, explaining the motivation for this study, outlining the research problem and setting the hypothesis. This then provided a solid basis for the ensuing chapters.

In Chapter 2, there was a short discussion on the major issues underlying this thesis, as well as a review of the theory and literature upon which the thesis is based. It was shown that poverty should not be simply about the level of income obtained by households or individuals, nor that it is only about lack of access to social services. Factors such as the inability to participate in society are also important, and that economical, social, cultural and political factors also play a part. Poverty is indeed all this and more: it will always be dependent on whoever is studying poverty and why they are studying it.

Poverty calculations are usually based on representative sample data of income or consumption gathered from the target area, and related to a poverty line. This, in turn, is established with reference to minimum consumption as in the case of absolute poverty. Defining minimum consumption is not easy. Other measures of poverty are more qualitative and/or more location-specific, and cannot so easily be aggregated. When poverty is multi-dimensional, problems arise with the weighting of different components (cf. Maxwell, 1999). These apparent contradictions are dealt with in the text.

Community-driven development (CDD), which refers to the participation of the community in their own developments efforts also received attention, as did unemployment, with reference to both the official and the unofficial unemployment rates.

Chapter 3 built on the theoretical discussion started in Chapter 2. It provided the expanded profile of Evaton West using data from Census 2001 as well as giving a brief background sketch as to the two prominent poverty alleviation initiatives in the area, namely the CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup> and the Eindhoven Municipality programmes.

CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup> was described as an NGO working with communities towards poverty alleviation and leadership training. The Eindhoven Municipality's involvement came as a result of the twinning of cities in the Netherlands and in the Vaal Triangle in South Africa. Three local community groups have already resulted from this co-operation with Evaton West, namely the Health group, the Local Economic Development (LED) group and the Environmental group. A significant finding of this chapter showed that of the total population of 30079 in 2001, 72.9 percent of the population could be classified as 'youth' (i.e. between the ages of 0 and 35). It also showed that the total labour force in 2001 was 13653 individuals with 8268 unemployed.

**Table 6.1 Summary of findings – Chapter 4**

INDICATOR	EVATON WEST	BOPHELONG	EVATON WEST BETTER-OFF OR WORSE-OFF
Gender distribution	51.1% male 48.9% female	46.5% male 53.5% female	-
Youth (0-35 years)	73.1% male 70.0% female	- -	- -
Grade 12 and higher education attainments (out of school populace)	32.2%	22.8%	Better-off
<b>1. Labour Force</b>	<b>Net effect:</b>		<b>Worse-off</b>
Unemployment rate	61.4%	55.0%	Worse-off
Formally employed	11.2%	34.9%	Worse-off
Informally employed	27.4%	10.1%	
Sector where most employed	Community, social & personal services	Community, social & personal services	Similar
Unemployed for 5 years & longer	55%	45.5%	Worse-off
Age distribution of unemployed	20 – 40	20 – 40	Similar
Youth (15-35 years of age) unemployment	55.4% male 68.0% female	- -	- -
Educational attainment of unemployed (Grade 11 & higher)	over 40%	over 40%	Similar
<b>2. Poverty</b>	<b>Net effect:</b>		<b>Worse-off</b>
Headcount index	69.5%	62.0%	Worse-off
Households falling below 50% of their HSL	65.5%	45.8%	Worse-off
Poverty gap ratio	66%	48%	Worse-off
Gini coefficient	0.53	-	Unequal*
<b>3. Profile of the poor</b>	<b>Net effect:</b>		<b>Worse-off</b>
Gender distribution	50.1% male 49.9% female	44.2 male 55.8 female	-
Youth (0-35 years of age) in poverty	73.7% male 69.6% female	- -	- -
Educational attainment of poor post-school population (Grade 11 & higher)	25.20%	16.9%	Better-off
Age distribution of unemployed poor (20-35 years)	55.70%	58%	-
Unemployment rate of the poor	68.6%	68.3%	Marginally Worse-off
Unemployed up to 5 years	53.0%	59.3%	Marginally Better-off
Formally employed	19.6%	24.9%	Worse-off
Informally employed	11.8%	6.7%	
Educational attainment (grade 12 and higher)	23.3%	22.7%	Marginally Better-off
Unemployed poor youth	53.3% male 67.5% female	- -	- -
Unemployed for 5 years or more	55%	48.6%	Worse-off
<b>4. Income and Expenditure</b>	<b>Net effect:</b>		<b>Worse-off</b>
Average household income	R1 288	R1 497	Worse-off
Main source of income	Salary	Salary	Similar
Where products are bought	Townships	Township	Similar
Main expenditure item	Food, clothing & transport	Food, transport & furniture	Similar
<b>5. Other Indicators</b>	<b>Net effect:</b>		<b>Worse-off</b>
Affected by crime	25.8%	23.0%	Worse-off
Prominent crimes	Theft & robberies	Theft & robberies	Similar
Physical safety	Less inside & outside the home	-	Worse-off*
Most owned assets	Electric stoves, radio, fridge, TV	-	Worse-off*
Least owned items	Cars & computers	-	
Level of indebtedness	High	-	Worse-off*
<b>6. Social cost of pollution</b>	<b>Net effect:</b>		<b>Worse-off</b>
Air pollution	R7,2 mil	R3,9 mil	Worse-off
Environmental pollution	R11,8 mil	R7.1 mil	Worse-off
Noise pollution	R5,6 mil	R1,8 mil	Worse-off
<b>7. Quality of life</b>	<b>Net effect:</b>		<b>Worse-off</b>
Dissatisfied with the quality of life	52.8%	-	Negative*
Worse off than parents	46.5%	-	Negative*
Government priority should be	Job creation (73.7%)	-	-
Local municipality service level	76.8% dissatisfied	-	Negative*

\* - Evaton West only

Source: Own construction

An explanation and summary of the findings related to the various indicators was the main thrust of this chapter. The chapter also compared the selected indicators to those in Bophelong, the adjacent township. A comparison was then made as to whether Evaton West is better-off or worse-off than Bophelong. Where no comparison could be made, the indicator was judged on its own.

**Table 6.2: Summary of findings – Chapter 5**

INDICATOR	Comment	Improvement from 2000/1 to 2003/4
<b>1. Community characteristics</b>	<b>Most indicators show improvements</b>	<b>Net Improvement</b>
Population	More houses built	Increase
Participation of women in the community	More women involved	Improved
Economic activities for men and women	mediocre activities	Similar
Unemployment	remains high	Similar
Individual incomes	Increases undermined by inflation	Marginally improved
Roads	remains the same	Similar
Public transport	Available, no central terminus	Similar
Housing adequacy	Inadequate, slight improvements through extensions, More houses built.	Marginally improved
Quality of life	Improved, yet crime still too high	Improved
Trust within the community	Improved	Improved
<b>2. Principal services</b>	<b>Indicators remain the same</b>	<b>No marked improvement</b>
Electricity	Most houses with electricity	Similar
Public Lighting	Insufficient	Similar
Drinking Water	Relatively available	Similar
Home telephone service	Not enough	Similar
Public telephone service	Insufficient	Similar
Post/Mail service	Inadequate	Similar
Internet	Unavailable	Similar
Sewage	Inadequate	Similar
Refuse collection	Relatively available	Similar
<b>3. Other indicators</b>	<b>No marked improvement in indicators</b>	<b>Similar</b>
Recreation	Inadequate, no facilities	Similar
Safety and security	Poor, only community policing forum	Similar
Labour migration	Exists	Similar
<b>4. Education</b>	<b>One primary school, no preschool, secondary school or adult centre</b>	<b>Marginally improved</b>
<b>5. Health</b>	<b>One indicator at least improved</b>	<b>Marginally improved</b>
Clinic	Still no permanent clinic	Similar
Ambulance service	No dedicated service	Similar
Home-based care	Not fully realised	Improved
<b>6. Environmental issues</b>	<b>Community actively involved</b>	<b>Improved</b>
Waste management	No dedicated service	Similar
Greening	Community responsible	Improved
<b>7. SMMEs</b>	<b>Net increase</b>	<b>Marginally improved</b>
Most types of businesses	Survivalist, more businesses available	Marginal improvement
<b>8. Community Support</b>	<b>Slight improvements</b>	<b>Marginally improved</b>
Community groups	More available	Improved
Primary problems	Unemployment, crime, literacy	Similar

Source: Own construction

Chapter 5 dealt with an array of data and provided an analysis of community indicators in 2003/4 and compared these to similar indicators from 2000/1. The tables provided summarise results and also assess whether there has been an improvement of conditions measured by the various indicators. These tables also have importance in relation to the Conclusions reached and the Recommendations made in this chapter and this thesis.

From the tables it can be concluded at a glance that Bophelong, on a comparative basis, is better-off than Evaton West when judged through most indicators. It may also be concluded that compared to three years back, Evaton West has improved, *albeit marginally*. Recommendation will be made on how to improve the situation in the short, medium and long-term.

### **6.3 Conclusions**

The study conducted for the purposes of this thesis has shown that on a whole, Evaton West is better-off after the participatory programmes described in the text were run there than before. Although the improvement is marginal, Evaton West still appears to be worse-off than Bophelong, which was not subjected to the same poverty alleviation programmes. *The null hypothesis is therefore rejected.* The study found, especially from the Focus Group Interview (FGI), that the initiatives need a great deal of refining, yet the positive aspects stemming out of these initiatives far outstrip any required refinement thereof. The projects are worth pursuing and this will receive attention in the Recommendations section of this chapter.

More specifically, the CoLtAPIA<sup>®</sup> project does not seem to have been fully completed in Evaton West. This project was aimed at poverty alleviation through proper leadership and community involvement through community-driven development programmes. The fact that the project has not yet been brought to its logical conclusion seems to still affect the levels of poverty. It has therefore not been very effective in achieving its objective. The Eindhoven Municipality project, on the other hand, has gone a long way in establishing projects organised around health, local economic development and the environment.



These projects have the potential to go a long way in assisting the community to alleviate the poverty situation in Evaton West. The only real drawback is the fact that these projects are still in their infancy and therefore their effects are not yet fully realised. It is believed (and fervently hoped) that their long-term effects may show a different picture altogether and that the results of the investigation given in this thesis will provide significant base data on which to report progress over time.

Poverty is still high in Evaton West, even in the face of these initiatives aimed at alleviating it. This thesis is, nevertheless, not an indictment of these initiatives, as with time and maybe a little restructuring, much may be gained towards positive poverty alleviation and, perhaps one day, the eradication of poverty altogether.

#### **6.4 Recommendations**

More research needs to be undertaken after the application of these initiatives to comprehensively evaluate, the further effects and successes of such programmes and to develop even more specific recommendations over time. The Recommendations outlined hereafter will be restricted to specific developmental issues and aspects. These recommendations are divided into:

- A. General Recommendations and
- B. Specific Recommendations.

They are all equally important and deserve attention of policy makers and the Evaton West community.

#### **A. GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS**

The following General Recommendations are made with specific reference to the various developmental aspects in Evaton West.

##### ***Recommendation 1: Skills Development***

*It is recommended that: Broad-based skills development initiatives need to be undertaken in Evaton West.*

Residents are mostly unskilled and they have to compete with other unskilled workers from other areas for very few jobs in a volatile employment situation. Being skilled in areas most needed for the local economy will make people more employable. This may be achieved through the government's Expanded Public Works Programmes (EPWP) or the Department of Labour's Learnership programmes. Such training can also be run by the Eindhoven Municipality, the Vaal University of Technology and SOLID.

### ***Recommendation 2: Communication***

*It is recommended that: An information and communication technology centre (ICT centre) or a telecentre within a Multi-Purpose Community Centre (MPCC) be created for Evaton West.*

The benefits of such a centre include:

- Support for the ability of local enterprises to succeed,
- Improves civic life,
- Provides open access to information and resources,
- Internet access for the community and
- Training in information technology and other technologies.

### ***Recommendation 3: Safety & security***

*It is recommended that: A police station is provided for the community of Evaton West.*

The community has already done a great deal with regards to dealing with crime in the area, including the establishment of a community policing forum. The assessment of the area shows that a police station or at least a satellite police station is urgently needed.

#### **Recommendation 4: Land and housing**

- *It is recommended that: A programme to support residents with funds and services to extend their existing houses is developed.*

The housing units in Evaton West are generally two-roomed units (the rooms are themselves very small). Such services may include:

- Financial assistance for housing extensions
- Access to housing plans and building services

- *It is recommended that: The existing stock of houses should be increased to accommodate more residents.*

This may be done using the Department of Housing's People's Housing Programme (PHP) which is aimed at people being assisted to build their own houses.

- *It is recommended that: As much as possible local procurement of labour and material should be actively encouraged for all future housing projects in Evaton West.*

This will lead to employment of local labour and assist in skills development of the community.

#### **Recommendation 5: Electricity**

- *It is recommended that: There needs to be an office available for residents to report faults, pay bills, buy top-up prepaid supply and general queries.*

The absence of such an office leads to frustrations and a good solution would be to house such a facility within a Multi-Purpose Community Centre (MPCC).

- *It is recommended that: Installations need to be better secured to prevent illegal connections and vandalism.*

This will reduce electrical faults and down-times. Illegal connections are also dangerous to the community as electrocution of people may result from such connections.

- *It is recommended that: Irregular and erratic service provision needs to be investigated and appropriate action taken to regularise supply.*

Facilities may require upgrading such that a higher load of electrical requirements may be carried.

### ***Recommendation 6: Water and sanitation***

- *It is recommended that: Fire hydrants need to be supplied at strategic places in Evaton West.*

In the absence of a fire and other emergency services the risk of fire destruction is very high. The use of paraffin, gas and other such highly flammable materials exacerbates this risk.

- *It is recommended that: A water and sanitation education programme needs to be offered to residents.*

This will teach them the importance of saving water and increased health due to proper sanitation.

- *It is recommended that: Water reticulation systems need to be attended to in order to minimize wastage.*

Such actions should include storm water drainage system being erected and properly and regularly serviced.

### **Recommendation 7: Environment**

- *It is recommended that: Greening of open spaces through planting of trees and shrubs should be actively encouraged.*

This will lead not only to beautification and increase in the aesthetic appearance of Evaton West but also to a healthier environment. Evaton West also hosts a number of visitors from Canada, Holland and other areas in South Africa. Greening the environment can attract even more visitors/tourists.

- *It is recommended that: An effective waste management system needs to be developed in the area and the provision of refuse bins should also be considered.*

The community can be assisted to handle waste themselves. This should include money-generating recycling initiatives for the community through, for example, Collect-a-Can<sup>®</sup> and other initiatives.

- *It is recommended that: The development of a dumping site at a convenient point for all residents and linked to the recycling initiatives should be considered.*

There is currently no central dumping site. This leads to residents dumping refuse at any open space. Such refuse is then never collected or dealt with, leading to health hazards.

- *It is recommended that: A culture of small-scale urban agriculture should be inculcated in residents.*

This will ensure that as many yards as possible in the area are used for vegetable growing. This will assist residents with food harvested from their own backyards.

### **Recommendation 8: Health**

- *It is recommended that: Proper home-based care for people needing such help (especially HIV/AIDS sufferers) needs to be intensified.*

This can be achieved through training of health volunteers as identified by the Evaton West Community Development Forum (EWCDF). Willing partners like SOLID should then be brought in to assist in such training.

- *It is recommended that: A dedicated clinic needs to be erected for Evaton West with proper facilities.*

This needs to be combined with an improved referral facility and an accessible and reliable ambulance service.

- *It is recommended that: Awareness campaigns, counseling facilities and prevention strategies need to be implemented on such health issues as HIV/AIDS and TB.*

This should include the identification and training of sex workers in the area as they form the group most at risk of infections and infecting others.

- *It is recommended that: Assistance for HIV-Aids orphans, child-headed households and HIV infected children needs to be intensified.*

Although the Evaton West Community Development Forum is already doing something regarding this problem through the Health Group, it is essential that Local Government and other authorities assist in dealing with this problem.

### **Recommendation 9: Sport and Recreation**

*It is recommended that: A Multi-Purpose Community Centre (MPCC) needs to be built in Evaton West.*

Such a facility may be used for a number of recreational activities such as indoor sports, arts, culture and various skill-based training efforts. A library facility could also be housed in the MPCC and even a mobile library should also be considered.

## **B. SPECIFIC RECOMMENDATIONS**

The following are specific recommendations aimed at poverty alleviation in Evaton West. This section considers some practical recommendations in dealing with the problems of Evaton West. Most of the discussions on poverty in this study have focused on income-poverty. This section also concentrates mostly on income generating activities.

### **Recommendation 10: Small business development**

*It is recommended that: The development of sustainable new ventures in Evaton West receive urgent attention as a way to develop the economy of the area and adjacent areas and to ensure longer circulation of money in the area.*

Chapter 4 (especially 4.4) and Chapter 5 (5.10) showed that there is a relatively high dependence on small businesses in Evaton West, for example due to its distance from towns and big businesses. Residents spend most of their incomes locally. There appears therefore, to be a need to assist such small businesses in the area (and indeed to stimulate and create them), both as a job-creation mechanism and as a way of bringing markets closer to residents.

#### **Recommendation 10.1: Co-operative approach to SMME development**

*It is recommended that: The creation of co-operatives or similar structures is actively pursued with a view to implementation.*

The Evaton West Community Development Forum (EWCDF) can help in identifying specific gaps and nichés the Evaton West economy can fill, and promote a diversified range of specialised industry clusters drawing on local advantages to serve local, national and global markets. Such co-operatives would take the burden off the shoulders of the small businesses in the following ways, for example:

- Sales and marketing
- Financing and Accounting
- Procurement and contracting – bulk buying

Since many residents spend most of their income on mainly food items in the area, there is a strong case to support such businesses. One way of doing this is by backward integration. This means that production of these items that are bought in Evaton West can also take place locally; many more jobs can be created and supported by the local economy in this way. Further recommendations are listed below and have been supported mostly from the work of Cole, Kelly, Corbett and Sprowls (2001).

- *It is recommended that: An overt policy of inward industrialisation and local focus needs to be pursued in Evaton West and its periphery.*

Because each community's most valuable assets are the ones they already have, and existing businesses are already contributing to their home communities, economic development efforts should give first priority to supporting existing enterprises as the best source of business expansion and local job growth. Luring businesses away from neighbouring communities is a zero-sum game that doesn't create new wealth in the regional economy. Community economic development should focus instead on promoting local entrepreneurship to build locally-based industries and businesses that can succeed among national and international competitors.



- *It is recommended that: A local procurement policy needs to be pursued.*

There needs to be a strong policy promoting local procurement especially with regards Extended Public Works and other programmes (especially housing projects) taking place in the Evaton West area. This policy will lead to the stimulation of the local economy, promotion of local products and the creation of jobs for local people. It will also lead to increased circulation of money in the area which will lead to the improvement of Evaton West economy.

- *It is recommended that: Skills development needs to be applied for small business entrepreneurs.*

Continuous development of skills in various areas of interest is imperative if enterprise development is to be a success. Primary skills (actual production-based skills like building and fence-making), as well as secondary skills (such as business and marketing skills) need to be given particular attention. This would need the active involvement of the training institutions in the region and support by local, provincial and national government.

- *It is recommended that: Information and Communication Technology Centres (ICT's) and telecentres to assist new ventures need to be developed.*

Access to information, international markets and business opportunities and trends as well as training and guidance can be made possible through the establishment of ICT's and/or telecentres. Such facilities and centres will make telephones, faxes, photocopy machines, computers and access to the internet available to the Evaton West community and contribute to poverty

alleviation. The EWCF would be well-advised to solicit funding to invest in technology that supports the ability of local enterprises to succeed, improves civic life, and provides open access to information and resources. The postal service would also need to be improved.

- *It is recommended that: An Integrated approach to new venture development needs to be applied.*

Government, business, education, and the local Evaton West community should work together to create a vibrant local economy. This can be done through a long-term investment strategy that encourages local enterprise, serves the needs of local residents, workers and businesses, promotes stable employment and revenues by building on local competitive advantages, protects the natural environment, increases social equity, is capable of succeeding in the global marketplace.

- *It is recommended that: Regional collaboration should be considered.*

Regional industries, transportation, land uses, natural resources and other key elements of a healthy economy need government, communities and the private sector co-operate in creating regional structures to promote a coherent metropolitan whole that respects local character and identity.

#### **Recommendation 11: Social grants – the basic income grant (BIG)**

*It is recommended that a basic income grant (BIG) be considered for all South African citizens above the age of 14 years.*

Though there have been a number of debates and disagreements with regards such a grant, the impact of such a grant on poverty alleviation is highly positive. The addendum to Chapter 6 shows in

detail how such a grant would assist in alleviating poverty in Evaton West. Due to the number of the poor that have no access to any of the existing social grants, BIG is seen as an essential complementary grant that will reach all South Africans and therefore bring relief to the poverty-stricken.

## **Chapter 6 - Addendum**

### **The basic income grant (BIG) and its effect on poverty in Evaton West**

#### **6A.1 Introduction**

The issue of grants almost always leads to disagreements. On the one hand, there is a system of social grants emanating from the Department of Social Development that aims to prevent certain people from slipping into total destitution. On the other hand, there is an avowed intention by Social Development, as well as by other departments, to deliberately move away from "welfarism" and towards "development", by which people will be empowered to lift themselves out of poverty. There is always a fear that social grants may promote a dependency syndrome even though there is general agreement that there needs to be a social system of grants aimed at the poor and destitute (see Samson 2003: 1). Samson (2003: 1) states that clearly argued and well-researched debate is needed on how best to structure grants to avoid dependency and welfare traps as found in some countries. Extensive research clearly documents that comprehensive social security reform can effectively reduce poverty while potentially contributing to social development and economic growth (Samson, 2003: 1). Following on this, South Africa has developed a proliferation of social grants aimed at poverty alleviation and welfare improvement. Table 6.3 shows the social grants that have been disbursed in South Africa from April 2000 to February 2003.

The table shows that the Child Support Grant accounts for the greatest increase in the number of beneficiaries. The number of children in payment has increased from 348,532 in April 2000 ago to over 2.5 million in February 2003. This grant has increased by more than 2.1 million between April 2000 and February 2003. (DoSD, 2003: 2).

Table 6.3: Social grants disbursed in South Africa ( in numbers).

Type of grant	April 2000	April 2001	April 2002	February 2003
Old Age	1,848,726	1,882,188	1,903,085	2,002,320
Disability	607,537	631,758	707,920	895,937
Care dependency	22,789	30,269	36,065	56,173
Foster care	49,843	61,268	69,423	133,400
Child support	348,532	1,078,884	1,810,977	2,517,021
Parent allowance	144,870	296	115	-
Child allowance	193,772	153,114	40,842	-
War Veterans	7,908	6,062	5,234	3,670
Grant in aid	8,570	9,715	10,442	12,281
<b>Total</b>	<b>3,232,547</b>	<b>3,853,554</b>	<b>4,584,103</b>	<b>5,620,802</b>

Source: DoSD (2003: 2)

### 6A.2 The proposed BIG

The remainder of this section will focus attention only on the currently proposed Basic Income Grant (BIG) in South Africa. The currently proposed BIG is a monthly cash transfer payment of approximately R110 to R120 to all South African citizens. Pekane (2001: 1) gives the following benefits of such a grant: the Basic Income Grant would provide a universal, stable, and reliable income source; cash transfers into households would increase and stabilise demand, consumption and savings. Spending is likely to be concentrated on basic, locally produced goods. This will boost local markets and stimulate job creation. Natrass (2001: 17) cautions, though: although there is talk about a 'basic income grant', the numbers being bandied about are tiny (R100 a month), and it is questionable whether the political will exists to pay the associated tax bill.

In terms of some of the problematic points with regards the BIG, especially the source of the funding for such a grant, Natrass (2001: 17) points out that:

'It would cost R52 billion per year to provide every person [older than 14] in South Africa with a grant of R100 a month. This comes to about 21 per cent of total government spending – i.e. well over twice the amount currently spent on welfare. They argue that R24 billion can be reclaimed from higher earners through the income tax system through adjustments to marginal tax rates and income thresholds. This leaves the net cost of transfer at R28 billion to be financed through further increases in taxation.

Given that South Africa's top income earners are already highly burdened, it is thus likely that significant and sustainable increases in tax revenues could only come about through either adding to the income tax burden of households in, especially, the seventh and eighth income deciles (i.e. the labour movement's chief constituency) or increasing value-added tax. If the burden falls mainly on value-added tax, then the redistributive impact of the basic income grant will be reduced, as the poor will be paying for part of it every time they spend it on goods and services. At present both the trade union movement and the Democratic Party (representing most of the rich) profess support for a basic income grant, but both seem to anticipate that their constituencies will not shoulder the financial burden.'

### **6A.3 BIG in Evaton West**

The possible effect of BIG on poverty in Evaton West is now considered. If the BIG is set at R120 per citizen above the age of 14 as proposed, and it is accepted that there are about 11000 households in Evaton West with on average 2.5 persons over 14 years of age per household (according to the survey data (Mokoena 2003)), then there is a monthly injection of approximately R3.3 million (or R39.6 million per annum) into Evaton West, giving the following effects on poverty levels.

The effect of an injection of R120 per person into households, *ceteris paribus*, is that the headcount index which is currently 69.5 percent reduces to 64.5 percent, a reduction of five percent in the poverty rate of the area.

The impact on the poverty gap would be a reduction of R246,76 (from R957,99 to R711.23) which is a decrease of 0.17 in the poverty gap ratio (from 0.66 to 0.49). There appears, therefore, to be a more significant reduction in the poverty gap ratio than in the headcount index. This means that although the number of the poor might be reduced by an insignificant number, most of the poor will not be destitute (they would move closer to the poverty line).

If the amount of BIG is increased to R300 per month, then there would be a significant impact overall on poverty. The headcount index would be about 44.5 percent (from 69.5 percent - a change of 25 percent) and the poverty gap ratio would be 0.33 (from 0.66).

#### **6A.4 BIG Summary**

Due to the number of the poor that have no access to any of the existing social grants, BIG is seen as an essential complementary grant that will reach all South Africans and therefore bring relieve to the poverty-stricken.

In addition to the BIG suggested above, there have been suggestions of the establishment of an unemployment grant targeted at the economically active population currently unemployed. In Evaton West, the impact of such a grant on poverty levels would also be significant. If such a grant is pitched at R120 (same level as BIG), the impact on the headcount index would be a reduction of two percent (from 69.5 percent to 67.5 percent) and the poverty gap ratio would decrease from 0.66 to 0.57. At a level of R300, the headcount index would decrease from 69.5 percent to 62 percent (seven percent difference) and the poverty gap ratio would decrease from 0.66 to 0.47 (0.19 difference). These grants (BIG and unemployment grant) were considered separately above. It stands to reason that if both are introduced, the impact on poverty would be even more distinct.

## Bibliography

ADEYA, C.N. 2003. ICTs and poverty. A literature review. ACACIA. Ottawa: International Development Research Centre.

AFRICAN DEVELOPMENT BANK. 2002. Achieving the Millennium Development Goals in Africa: Progress, prospects, and policy implications. Global Poverty Report, 2002. ADB & The World Bank. Jun.1-32.

AFRICAN NATIONAL CONGRESS. 1994. The Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP). Johannesburg: ANC.

ALCOCK, P. 1997. Understanding poverty. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. London: MacMillan Press.

ALCOCK, P. & CRAIG, G. 2000. Local poverty profiles and local anti-poverty work (*In: Bradshaw, J. & Sainsbury, R. (eds.). 2000. Experiencing poverty. Aldershot: Ashgate Publishing Ltd).*

ALIBER, M. 2001. Study of the incidence and nature of chronic poverty and development policy in South Africa: An overview. Background Paper 3. London: Chronic Poverty Research Centre. 1-67.

ANANZI ROAD MAPS. [Web:] <http://www.brabys.com/ananzimapping.asp> [Date of access: 12 Mar. 2004].

ANAS, A.Z.M. 2003. Poor infrastructure services threaten I-PRSP targets: WB. *The Independent*, Jun. 17. Bangladesh.

ASIAN DEVELOPMENT BANK (ADB). 2003. Policy on education. [Web:] <http://www.adb.org/Documents/Policies/Education/> [Date of access: 13 Mar. 2004].



ATKINSON A.B. AND BOURGUIGNON F. 1999. Poverty and inclusion from a world perspective. ABCDE Europe Conference. 1-30.

ATKINSON, A.B. 1991. Measuring poverty and differences in family composition. *Economica*. Feb. 59: 1-16.

BADAWI, A. A. 2003. Abdullah: Education the way out of poverty. *New Straits Times – Management Times (Malaysia)*. WorldSources, Inc. Jul.

BELL, M. 2002. Inquiring minds and post-colonial devices: examining poverty at a distance. *Annals of the Association of American Geographers*. 92(3): 507–523. Blackwell Publishing.

BHORAT, H. 1999. Why poverty's more than sums. *Mail & Guardian*. Johannesburg. May 28 –Jun. 3.

BIBLE. 1970. The Holy Bible: Authorized (King James) version. Tulsa: Oral Roberts University.

BINNS, T. & NEL, E. 2002. Supporting local economic development in post-apartheid South Africa. *Local Economy*. Routledge Publishing. 17(1): 8–24.

BINSWANGER, H.P. & Aiyar S.S. 2003. Scaling up community-driven development: Theoretical underpinnings and program design implications. *World Bank Policy Research Working Paper 3039*, May.

BLACKBURN, R.M.1999. Understanding social inequality. 19 (9/10/11):1-22.

BLANKWATER, Y. 2002. IDP pilot project Evaton West – Annual Report 2002. 1-30.

BLANKWATER, Y. 2003. IDP pilot project Evaton West – Annual Report 2003. 1-39.

BLOOM, G. & LUCAS, H. 2000. Health and poverty in Sub-Saharan Africa. *IDS Working Paper*. Institute of Development Studies. (103):1-42.

BRADY, D. 2003. Rethinking the sociological measurement of poverty. *Social Forces*. The University of North Carolina Press. 81(3): 715-752. Mar.

BUDLENDER, D. 2000. Earnings and inequality in South Africa, 1995-1998. (*In: StatsSA. 2000. Measuring poverty in South Africa. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa*).

CARTER, M. R. & MAY, J. 1999. One kind of freedom: Poverty dynamics in post-apartheid South Africa. University of Wisconsin. Madison: Land Tenure Centre. 1-39.

CASTRO-LEAL, F. 1999. Poverty and inequality in the distribution of public education spending in South Africa. *Informal discussion paper series*. Washington DC: The World Bank.

CHAMBERS, R. 1998. *Whose reality counts? Putting the first last*. London: ITDG Publishing.

CHAMBERS, R. 1999. Notes for the session on participatory methods of poverty measurement. Values, norms and poverty. A consultation on WDR 2000/1: Poverty and Development. Johannesburg. Jan. 1-7.

CHAUBEY, P.K. 1995. Poverty measurement – Issues, approaches and indices. New Delhi: New Age International (P) Limited.

CHERU, F. 2002. African renaissance: Roadmaps to the challenge of globalization. London: ZED Books.

CHERU, F. 2001. Overcoming apartheid's legacy: the ascendancy of neoliberalism in South Africa's anti-poverty strategy. *Third World Quarterly*. London: Carfax Publishers. 22(4): 505–527.

CLARK, S., HEMMING, R. & ULPH, D. 1981. On indices for the measurement of poverty. *The Economic Journal*. Jun. 91: 515-526.

COLE, R., KELLY, T., CORBETT, J. & SPROWLS, S. 2001. Ahwahnee Principles for Smart Economic Development: An Implementation Guidebook. Sacramento: Local Government Commission.

CoLtAPiA®. 2001. Project methodology. (Notes issued as part of the poverty alleviation training course at the Vaal University of Technology in 2001.) Vanderbijlpark. (Unpublished.)

COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT FOUNDATION (CDF). 2001. What is community development? [Web:] <http://www.cdf.org.uk/html/whatis.html> [Date of access: 17 Jul. 2003].

COSTA, M. 2002. A multidimensional approach to the measurement of poverty. IRISS Working Paper Series. (2002-05). Luxembourg: CEPS/INSTEAD, Differdange, G.-D.

CURTAIN, R. 2002. Youth in extreme poverty: Dimensions and country responses. Sep. Draft paper. (Unpublished).

DAS GUPTA, M., GRANDVOINNET, H. & ROMAN, M. 2001. State-community synergies in development: Laying the basis for collective action. Development Research Group, World Bank.

DATT, G., JOLLIFFE, D. & SHARMA, M. 2001. A profile of poverty in Egypt. *African Development Bank*. Blackwell Publishers. 202-237.

DE GREGORIO, J. & LEE, J. 2002. Education and income inequality: new evidence from cross-country data. *Review of Income and Wealth*. Sep. 48(3): 395-416.

DEATON, A. 1997. The analysis of household surveys - A microeconomic approach to development policy. Baltimore and London: The Johns Hopkins University Press for the World Bank.

DECALUWÉ, B., PATRY, A. SAVARD, L. 1998. Income distribution, poverty measures and trade shocks: A computable general equilibrium model of a archetype developing country. Research paper 9812. CRÉFA.

DEFINA, R.H. 2000. Changing population weights in a decomposable poverty index. *Journal of Economic and Social Measurement*. IOS Press. 26 (2000): 1–10.

DEFINA, R.H. 2002. Does lower unemployment reduce poverty? *Business Review*. Q3: 34-41.

DEMOMBYNES, G. & ÖZLER, B. Crime and local inequality in South Africa. World Bank Policy Research Working Paper 2925. Washington: The World Bank. Nov.

DEPARTMENT of Social Development see SOUTH AFRICA. Department of Social Development.

DERCON, S. 2001. Vulnerability to poverty: A framework for policy analysis. DfID. [Web:]  
[www.economics.ox.ac.uk/members/stefan.dercon/](http://www.economics.ox.ac.uk/members/stefan.dercon/) [Date of access: 17 Nov. 2003].

DERCON, S. 2002. Income risk, coping strategies and safety nets. Discussion paper no. 2002/22. New York: UNU/WIDER.

DESAI, M. & SHAH, A. 1988. An econometric approach to the measurement of poverty. *Oxford Economic Papers*. 40: 505-522.

DEVEREUX, S. 2002. Can social safety nets reduce chronic poverty? *Development Policy Review*. Overseas Development Institute. Blackwell Publishers. 20(5): 657-675.

DONGIER, P. VAN DOMELEN, J., OSTROM, E., RYAN, A. WAKEMAN, W., BEBBINGTON, A., ALKIRE, S. ESMAIL, T. & POLSKI, M. 2003. Community-driven development. Chapter 9. Vol 1 – Core Techniques and Cross-Cutting Issues. Washington, D.C.: World Bank.

DUCLOS, J. & GRÉGOIRE, P. 2003. Absolute and relative deprivation and the measurement of poverty. Working Paper 03-02. CIRPÉE.

DUCLOS, J. & MAKDISSI, P. 1999. Sequential stochastic dominance and the robustness of poverty orderings.

[Web:] <http://www.ecn.ulaval.ca/w3/recherche/cahiers/1999/9905.pdf> [Date of access: 21 Jul. 2002].

ECONOMIST, THE. 1998. The war over poverty. *The Economist*. Apr 25. 346(8065): 16.

FERRER-I-CARBONELL, A. & VAN PRAAG, B.M.S. 2001. Income satisfaction inequality and its causes. Tinbergen Institute Discussion Paper. Amsterdam: Tinbergen Institute.

FISHER, G.M. 1997. From Hunter to Orshansky: An Overview of (unofficial) poverty lines in the United States - from 1904 to 1965. Poverty measurement working papers. Washington: US Census Bureau.

FOSTER, J., GREER, J. AND THORBECKE, E. 1984. A Class of decomposable poverty measures. *Econometrica*, 52: 761–767.

FRANK, F. & SMITH, A. 1999. The community development handbook - A tool to build community capacity. [Web:] <http://www.hrhc-drhc.gc.ca/community> [Date of access: 13 Jun. 2003].

FRANKEL, P. 2001. Evaton West forensic community analysis for integrated development planning. Report prepared for the Bureau Internationale Coordinatie of the Eindhoven Municipality (the Netherlands). (Unpublished report).

GARFINKEL, I & HAVEMAN, R. 1976. Earnings capacity, economic status, and poverty. *Journal of Human Resources*. XII(1): 49-70.

GELB, S. 2003. Inequality in South Africa: Nature, causes and responses. DfID Policy Initiative on Addressing Inequality in Middle-income Countries. Johannesburg: The EDGE (Economic Development: Growth & Equity) Institute.

GEORGE, V. & LAWSON, R. 1980. Poverty and inequality in common market countries. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul.

GIBSON, N. 2001. The pitfalls of South Africa's "Liberation". *New Political Science*. 23(3): 371-387.

GLOBAL URBAN OBSERVATORY (GUO). 2001. Urban poverty technical notes. Nairobi: UNCHS (Habitat).

GODSELL, B. & BUYS, P. 1992. Growth and poverty – towards some shared goals. (*In*: Shrire, R. (ed.) *Wealth or poverty? Critical choices for South Africa*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press).

GPN (GLOBAL POVERTY NETWORK). 2000. Highlights of current labor market conditions in South Africa. Johannesburg: NALEDI (National Labour & Economic Development Institute). [Web:] [www.GlobalPolicyNetwork.org](http://www.GlobalPolicyNetwork.org) [Date of access: 17 Jun. 2003].

GRAHAM, W.J., FITZMAURICE., A. E., BELL J. S. & CAIRNS, J. A. 2004. The familial technique for linking maternal death with poverty. *The Lancet*. Jan. 363:23– 27.

HAGENAARS, A. 1987. A class of poverty indices. *International Economic Review*. Oct. 28(3): 583-607.

HAGENAARS, A.J.M. 1986. The perception of poverty. Amsterdam: Elsevier Science Publishers B.V.

HAZLITT, H. 1973. The conquest of poverty. New York: Arlington House.

HOLMAN, R. 1978. Poverty: Explanation of social deprivation. London: Robertson.

JEGASOTHY, K. 1999. Population and rural-urban environmental interactions in developing countries. *International Journal of Social Economics*. MCB University Press. 26(7/8/9): 1027-1041.

JHA, R. & SHARMA, A. 2003. Spatial distribution of rural poverty in the last three quinquennial rounds of NSS. *WP*. 2003/002.

JUDGE, K. & PATERSON, I. 2001. Poverty, income inequality and health. Treasury Working Paper 01/29. New Zealand Treasury.

KAKWANI, N. 1993. Statistical inference in the measurement of poverty. *The Review of Economics and Statistics*. 632-639.

KAMANU, G & MORDUCH, J. 2002. Measuring vulnerability to poverty. Discussion paper no. 2002/58. New York: UNU/WIDER.

KANBUR, R & SQUIRE, L. 1999. The evolution of thinking about poverty: Exploring the interactions. Washington DC: The World Bank.

KERAPELETWE, C.K. & MOREMI, T. 2001. Poverty and democratization: the case of Botswana. (In Wilson, F., Kanji, N. & Braathen, E. (eds) *Poverty*

reduction – what role for the state in today's globalized economy? Cape Town: CROP International Studies on Poverty).

KLASEN, S. 2000. Measuring poverty and deprivation in South Africa. *Review of Income and Wealth*. Mar. 46(1): 33-58.

KOSSOUDJI, S. & MUELLER, E. 1983. The economic and demographic status of female-headed households in rural Botswana. *Economic Development and Cultural Change*. The University of Chicago. 831-859.

LAM, D. & LEIBBRANDT, M. 2003. What's happened to inequality in South Africa since the end of Apartheid?

[Web:] <http://www.wdi.bus.umich.edu/events/ceds.htm> [Date of access: 14 Mar. 2004].

LAMALE, H. H. 1965. Poverty: The word and the reality. *Monthly Labor Review*. Jul. 822-827.

LAMPARD, R. 2000. Measuring inequality in a cross-tabulation with ordered categories: from the Gini coefficient to the Tog coefficient. *International Journal of Social Research Methodology*. Taylor & Francis Ltd. 3(1): 1-14.

LANDMAN, J. P., BHORAT, H., VAN DER BERG, S. VAN AARDT, C. 2003. Poverty and inequality in South Africa 2004 - 2014: Current trends, issues and future policy options. Stellenbosch: EFSA. 17.

LITCHFIELD, J.A. 1999. Inequality: Methods and tools. Text for World Bank's Web Site on Inequality, Poverty, and Socio-economic Performance. [Web:] <http://www.worldbank.org/poverty/inequal/index.htm> [Date of access: 20 Feb. 2004].

LOK-DESSALLIEN, R. 1998. Poverty profiles: Interpreting the data. Poverty Elimination Programme, UNDP. 1-5.



[Web:] [http://www.undp.org/poverty/publications/pov\\_red/Poverty\\_Profiles.pdf](http://www.undp.org/poverty/publications/pov_red/Poverty_Profiles.pdf)  
[Date of access: 13 Jun. 2003].

LYONS, M. & SMUTS, C. 1998. Community agency in the new South Africa: A comparative approach. *Urban Studies*. 36(12): 2151-2167. Nov.

MAHMOOD, A. 2000. a review of CHOUSSODOSKY, M. 1997. The Globalisation of Poverty: Impacts of IMF and World Bank Reforms. *Journal of Economic Studies*. MCB University Press. 27(3): 222-229.

MAX-NEEF, M., ELIZALDE, M. & HOPENHAYN, M. 1989. Human scale development. *Development dialogue*. (1): 1-81.

MAY, J. 2000. Growth, development, poverty and inequality. (In May, J (ed). *Poverty and inequality in South Africa: meeting the challenge*. Cape Town: David Philip Publishers).

MAXWELL, S. 1999. The meaning and measurement of poverty. *Overseas Development Institute (ODI)*. (3): Feb. [Web:] <http://www.odi.org.uk> [Date of access: 15 May 2004].

MINISTRY OF HOUSING (SA). see SOUTH AFRICA. Ministry of Housing.

MOKOENA, T.D. 1994. Poverty: A look at the position of the Vaal Triangle townships. Unpublished research essay. Vanderbijlpark: Vista University.

MOKOENA, T.D. 2003. Results of a survey conducted in Evaton West in 2003, comprising household questionnaire, a community questionnaire and a focus group interview.

MUNICIPAL DEMARCATION BOARD. 2000. Determination of the outer boundary of Ward 26 of the Local Municipality GT421 in terms of item 5(2) of Schedule 1 of the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act , No. 17 of 1998.

[Web:] [http://www.demarcation.org.za/info\\_Index.aspx](http://www.demarcation.org.za/info_Index.aspx) [Date of access: 17 Oct. 2003].

MYLES, J. & PICOT, G. 2000. Poverty indices and policy analysis. *Review of Income and Wealth*. Jun. 46(2): 161-179.

NARAYAN, D. & PETESCH, P. 1999. An empowering approach to poverty reduction. (In: Narayan, D. Patel, R., Schafft, K., Rademacher, R. & Koch-Schulte, S. 1999. Can anyone hear us? Voices from 47 countries. Voices of the poor : From Many Lands.1. Washington: The World Bank Group).

NARAYAN, D. PATEL, R., SCHAFFT, K., RADEMACHER, R. & KOCH-SCHULTE, S. 1999. Can anyone hear us? Voices from 47 countries. Voices of the poor. (1). Washington: The World Bank Group.

NATRASS, N. 2001. High productivity now: a critical review of South Africa's growth strategy. *Transformation*. 45: 1-24.

O'BOYLE, E.J. 1998. Transitions into and out of poverty. *International Journal of Social Economics*. MCB University Press. 25(9): 1411-1424.

OELOFSE, C. 2003. A critical realist perspective on urban environmental risk: a case study of an informal settlement in South Africa. *Local Environment*. Carfax Publishing. Jun. 8(3): 261-275.

ORSHANSKY, M. 1965. Counting the poor: another look at the poverty profile. *Social Security Bulletin*. 28(1): 3-29

OSBERG, L. & XU, K. 1999. Poverty intensity: How well do Canadian provinces compare? *Canadian Public Policy*. XXV: 179-198.

OXFAM. 2003. Evian G8: Time to declare a war on poverty in Africa. Oxfam Briefing Paper No. 47. May. Oxfam International.

PANOS. 2002. *Reducing Poverty: Is the World Bank strategy working?* London: The Panos Institute.

PEKANE, J. 2001. The economic effects of a Basic Income Grant and its financial sustainability. Cape Town: Cosatu. [Web:] [http://www.cosatu.org.za/press/2001/South\\_Africans\\_for\\_a\\_Basic\\_Income\\_Grant--729.html](http://www.cosatu.org.za/press/2001/South_Africans_for_a_Basic_Income_Grant--729.html) [Date of access: 23 Mar. 2004].

PELUPESSY, W. 2001. Industrial restructuring and employment in the South African townships of Emfuleni. Published article. Tilburg: Development Research Institute (IVO).

POST, T. 2001. Testing for stochastic dominance with diversification possibilities. *ERIM Report Series: Research In Management*. Erasmus Research Institute of Management. Nov. 1-32.

POTGIETER, J. F. 1999. The Household Subsistence Level in the major urban centres of the Republic of South Africa: September 1999. Port Elizabeth: Institute for Planning and Research.

POVERTY GROUP, THE. 2001. *Looking Beyond Averages: A Research Program on Poverty and Inequality*. Washington: DECRG

PRADHAN, M. & RAVALLION, M. 1998. Measuring poverty using qualitative perceptions of Welfare. Washington: The World Bank.

PRESSMAN, S. 2003. Feminist explanations for the feminization of poverty. *Journal of Economic Issues*. Jun. 37(2): 353-362.

PROWSE, M. 2003. Towards a clearer understanding of 'vulnerability' in relation to chronic poverty. CPRC Working Paper No 24. Chronic Poverty Research Centre.

QUISUMBING, A.R., HADDAD, L. & PEÑA, C. 1995. Gender and poverty: New evidence from 10 developing countries. Food Consumption and Nutrition Division Discussion Paper No. 9. Washington: International Food Policy Research Institute.

RAVALLION, M. 1998. Poverty lines in theory and practice. Living Standards Measurement Study Working Paper no. 133. Washington: The World Bank.

RAZAFINDRAKOTO, M & ROUBAUD, F. 2003. The multiple facets of poverty: the case of urban Africa. Paris: IRD

RAZAVI, S. 1999. Seeing poverty through a gender lens. *ISSJ*. 162: 473-482. UNESCO, Blackwell Publishers.

RECORD, B. 1999. Report on visit of Mr Brent Record to Eindhoven, Netherlands, 24 May to 5 June 1999. Vanderbijlpark. 1-20. (Unpublished).

REIN, M.1971. Problems in the definition and measurement of poverty. (*In*: Townsend, P.(ed.). 1971. The concept of poverty. London: Heinemann).

SAHN, D.E. 1999. None-income dimensions of poverty - A note of research findings and issues. WDR on Poverty and Development 2000/01. Stiglitz Summer Research Workshop on Poverty, Washington DC: The World Bank.

SAITH, R. 2001. Social exclusion: the concept and application to developing countries. Working Paper Number 72. *QEH Working Paper Series*.

SAMSON, M. 2003. Breaking the poverty trap. [Web:]  
<http://www.drc.org.za/docs/BIG%20-20Breaking%20the%20Poverty%20Trap.doc>  
[Date of access: 20 Mar. 2004].

SAUNDERS, P. 1997. Toward a better poverty measure. *Focus*. 19(2). Institute for Research on Poverty: University of Wisconsin-Madison.

SCHILLER, B. R. 1984. The economics of poverty and discrimination. New Jersey: Prentice-Hall.

SCOTT, J. 1994. Poverty and wealth: Citizenship, deprivation and privilege. New York: Longman Publishing.

SEDIBENG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY. 2003. Mid-term report. December 2000 to June 2003. Vanderbijlpark. 1-36.

SEN, A. 2000. Will there be any hope for the poor? Visions of the 21<sup>st</sup> Century. [Web:] [www.time.com](http://www.time.com) [Date of access: 22 Jan. 2004].

SEN, A. 1981. Poverty and famines – an essay on entitlements and deprivation. New York: Oxford University Press.

SEN, A.K. 1976. Poverty: an ordinal approach to measurement. *Econometrica*, 44: 219–31.

SHAH, A. 2001. Causes of poverty. [Web:] <http://www.globalissues.org/TradeRelated/Poverty> [Date of access: 17 Sept. 2003].

SIDDIQUI, S. 2003. Reach out and practice participation. Aid Workers Exchange. Jun. 25. [Web:] [www.aidworkers.net](http://www.aidworkers.net) [Date of access: 24 Mar. 2004].

SIDLEY, P. 2002. Health, poverty and sanitation to feature highly in world summit. *BMJ*. Aug. 24. 325.

SILLITOE, P. 2002. Participant observation to participatory development – making anthropology work. (In: Sillitoe, P., Bicker, A. & Pottier, J. (eds.). 2002. Participating in development – Approaches to indigenous knowledge. London: Routledge).

SLABBERT, T.J.C. 1997. Poverty among Black households in the Vaal Triangle Metropolitan Area: a micro analysis. Doctoral Thesis. Vanderbijlpark: Vista University.

SLABBERT, T.J.C. 2003. Bophelong: a socio-economic & environmental analysis. Research report no.12. Vanderbijlpark: Vaal Research Group.

SOREFEELINGS. Human Scale Development.

[Web:] <http://www.sorefeelings.com> [Date of access: 3 Mar. 2004].

SOUTHALL, R. 2003. Democracy in Africa: Moving beyond a difficult legacy. Democracy and Governance Research Programme, Occasional Paper 2. Pretoria: Human Sciences Research Council.

SOUTH AFRICA. Department of Social Development. 2002. Transforming the present, protecting the future - Consolidated Report. Report of the committee of inquiry into a comprehensive system of social security for South Africa. Pretoria: Government Printer.

SOUTH AFRICA. Department of Social Development. 2003. Fact Sheet: Social grants beneficiaries. [Web:] <http://www.welfare.gov.za> [Date of access: 20 Feb. 2004].

SOUTH AFRICA. Ministry of Housing. 2002. Keynote address by the Minister of Housing, Sankie Mthembu-Mahanyele to the Round-Table on Sustainable African Cities. WSSD. 27 Aug. 2002.

STATSSA see Statistics South Africa.

STATISTICS SOUTH AFRICA. 1999. Provincial profile 1999 – Gauteng. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.

STATISTICS SOUTH AFRICA. 2000. Measuring poverty in South Africa. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.

STATISTICS SOUTH AFRICA. 2001. Census 2001. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.

STATISTICS SOUTH AFRICA. 2003a. Bulletin of statistics. 37(4). Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.

STATISTICS SOUTH AFRICA. 2003b. Labour force survey. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.

STREETEN, P. 1998. Beyond the six veils: conceptualizing and measuring poverty. *Journal of International Affairs*. New York: The Trustees of Columbia University. 52 (1).

TARP, F., SIMLER, K., MATUSSE, C., HELTBERG, R. & DAVA G. 2002. The robustness of poverty profiles reconsidered. The University of Chicago. 2002: 77-108.

THIOUNE, R.M (ed). 2003. Information and communication technologies for development in Africa. Vol.1: Opportunities and challenges for community development. Ottawa: International Development Research Centre & Dakar: CODESRIA

THORNTON, P.K., KRUSKA, R.L., HENNINGER, N., KRISTJANSON, P.M., REID, R.S., ATIENO, F., ODERO, A.N. AND NDEGWA, T. 2002. Mapping poverty and livestock in the developing world. Nairobi: International Livestock Research Institute.

TSUI, K. 2000. Multidimensional poverty indices. *Social Choice and Welfare*. Springer-Verlag. 2002(19): 69-93.

TWELVETREES, A. 2002. Community work. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. New York: Palgrave.

TWOHEY, M. 2000. Poverty on the line. *National Journal*. National Journal Group, Inc. Apr. 32(16): 1216-1218.

GUIJT AND SHAH (eds.). 1998. The myth of community – gender issues in participatory development. London: Intermediate Technology Publications, Ltd.

UNDP. 1997. The Dimensions of poverty: From the Summit to the grassroots. *Social Watch*. [Web:] <http://www.undp.org/> [Date of access: 17 Jul. 2003].

UNDP: 2000. South Africa human development report: 2000. Washington: UN.

UNITED NATIONS. 2001. The Millennium Development Goals: How are we doing? Implementing the millennium declaration. [Web:] <http://www.un.org/millenniumgoals> [Date of access: 14 Feb. 2004].

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA). 1998. A Guide to implementation and benchmarking for rural communities. USDA Rural Development. Apr. 1-20.

UT LIBRARY ONLINE. South African Provinces Map. [Web:] [http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/africa/safrica\\_provinces\\_95.jpg](http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/africa/safrica_provinces_95.jpg) [Date of access: 4 Feb. 2004].

WHITE, H. & MASSET, E. 2003. The importance of household size and composition in constructing poverty profiles: An illustration from Vietnam. *Development and Change*. Institute of Social Studies. Blackwell Publishing Ltd. 34(1): 105-126.

WILSON, F. & RAMPHELE, M. 1991. Uprooting poverty – the South African Challenge. Cape Town: Philip.

WORLD BANK. 1994. South Africa, 1993-1994. 1993 LSDS. Africa Household Survey Databank: Standardized Welfare Indicators. World Bank: Africa Region Poverty Reduction & Social Development - Poverty Monitoring Unit.



WORLD BANK. 1999. Can the poor influence policy? The World Bank. [Web:] <http://www.worldbank.org/participation/methods2.htm> [Date of access: 16 Jul. 2002].

WORLD BANK. 2000. The community driven development approach in the Africa region: A vision of poverty reduction through empowerment. Dec. Africa Region, The World Bank. [Web:] [http://lnweb18.worldbank.org/ESSD/sdvext.nsf/09ByDocName/AFR\\_vision\\_en](http://lnweb18.worldbank.org/ESSD/sdvext.nsf/09ByDocName/AFR_vision_en) [Date of access: 17 Jul. 2003].

WORLD BANK. 2001. Poverty manual. Washington: The World Bank Group.

WORLD BANK. 2002. Millenium Development Goals: Eradicating extreme poverty. Progress towards the poverty goal and projections to 2015. [Web:] <http://www.developmentgoals.org/Poverty.htm> [Date of access: 12 May 2004].

WRIGHT, R.E. 1996. Standardized poverty measurement. *Journal of Economic Studies*. MCB University Press. 23 (4): 3-17.

XU, K. & OSBERG, L. 2001. How to decompose Sen-Shorrocks-Thon Poverty Index: A Practitioner's Guide. *Journal of Income Distribution*. Feb. 10(1-2) 77-94.

XU, K. & OSBERG, L. 2002. The social welfare implications, decomposability, and geometry of the Sen family of poverty indices. *Canadian Journal of Economics*. Canadian Economics Association. Feb. 35(1) 138-152.

ZHENG, B. 1997. Aggregate poverty measures. *Journal of Economic Surveys*. Blackwell Publishers. 11(2): 123-162.

## **Annexure 1**

### **Survey design and application**

#### **Questionnaires**

Two questionnaires were employed in soliciting data from households and the community in Evaton West: the Household Survey Questionnaire and the Community Survey Questionnaire. Both were carefully constructed to utilise specific indicators. They were compiled from a number of other questionnaires used in the field such as by Slabbert (2003) and the World Bank (2003). In total, 250 household questionnaires and 20 community questionnaires were employed.

Maps of Evaton West were obtained from the Emfuleni City Council and Trynamics cc. These were used to stratify the area and to allocate questionnaires evenly throughout. Household Questionnaires were completed on site. Details with regard to the site were listed, but no names were recorded with regard to the head of the household or other persons living at the site. This was done to ensure anonymity, thereby encouraging honest and reliable information.

Community Questionnaires were left with the respondents identified and collected later at an agreed time. Samples of both questionnaires are annexed as well as the names of the respondents to the community questionnaire.

#### **Fieldworkers**

Ten research fieldworkers were used for the household survey. They were initially trained in a group and subsequently some of them received further individual coaching. All had the opportunity of calling on the researcher if they encountered problems. The questionnaires were completed during late 2003. On receipt of questionnaires, spot checks were made on a random basis by the researcher. These checks were aimed at judging the degree of accuracy with which the questionnaires were completed. Where errors were found, further

cross-checking was done. Only a few questionnaires were rejected based on these checks.

### **Reliability of results**

It should be kept in mind that a properly conducted sample survey might yield useful estimates. Although every precaution was taken to minimize errors and to make sure that questions were well understood in order to obtain quality answers, they still might not give exact unquestionable values. Although every possible measure was also taken to limit possible errors, the following could have affected the reliability of the results of this survey .*Sampling errors*, because only a fraction of the population was interviewed; *survey errors*, stemming from memory errors and misunderstanding of questions; and *processing errors* of calculation in the processing of data.

### **Focus Group Interview (FGI)**

In addition to the above questionnaires, a focus group interview was held with 8 members of the Evaton West Community Development Forum to further elicit more information on the community and the community development initiatives in the area. The following is an outline of this process.

- **Purpose of the Interview**

To solicit information from Community leaders regarding the two main initiatives applied in the community towards poverty alleviation and community development.

- **Resources used**

The focus group interview was held on the 20<sup>th</sup> November 2003 at the Community Centre in Evaton West. 8 participants were interviewed. A voice recorder and a video camera was used during the interview. A list of 12 questions was compiled and used for the interview.

- **Selection of the interview team**

A team consisting of a facilitator (researcher) and a scribe (rapporteur) was used in the interview. Both persons are skilled and experienced in these tasks.

- **Selection of participants**

A group of six participants was selected to be interviewed. These are people who participated in the CoLtAPiA<sup>®</sup> project and who have been involved in the Eindhoven-driven initiatives. They are also all Community leaders in Evaton West engaged in programmes like Local Economic Development (LED), Health and Environmental Awareness.

- **Timing and location**

The interview took place at the Community Centre in Evaton West. This provided a natural setting for the participants and provided a relaxed atmosphere. It took place at 16h00 in the afternoon when all participants were available and had no pressing engagements. The interview took approximately 2 hours.

- **The discussion guide**

A guide containing 12 questions was prepared for the interview. It was arranged in such a way that comments and follow-up question space was left out between the questions to make it easy to conduct the interview without unnecessary breaks.

**HOUSEHOLD QUESTIONNAIRE: SUMMER 2003**

*N.B.: The information in this questionnaire will be treated in strict confidence.*

<b>EVATON WEST</b>	Section/Zone:	Date:	Questionnaire no:
Street:	House number:	Interviewer:	

Please note that the Head of the Household should preferably answer this questionnaire.

**A: BACKGROUND INFORMATION**

1. What is the position of the respondent in the Household? Cross \* /Tick?

Head of household	Other member of household	Extended Family member	Boarder
-------------------	---------------------------	------------------------	---------

2. How many housing Units are on the site?

3. How many people stay permanently on the site?

4. How long have you (respondent) stayed in the Vaal Triangle

(years)?

5. Before moving to the Vaal Triangle, where did you stay? \*

1. Born in the Vaal Triangle	2. In a town(ship) in the Free State / Gauteng / North W	3. On a Farm in the Free State / Gauteng / NW	4. In a town(ship) in another province	5. On a Farm in another province
------------------------------	--	---	--	----------------------------------

6. What was your main reason for moving to the Vaal Triangle? (Combination) \*

1. Seeking a better life / job	2. Had to leave the farm	3. Followed family	4. Low cost housing	5. Other, explain:
--------------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------	---------------------	--------------------

**B: ENVIRONMENTAL**

7. How do you feel about the environment in which you stay? (Mark 2 options) \*

1. It is clean and pleasant	2. It is polluted, untidy and dirty	3. Indifferent – No opinion	4. Something should be done to clean it	5. It can be left as it is
-----------------------------	-------------------------------------	-----------------------------	---	----------------------------

8. If you feel it should be cleaned up, who should take the initiative and responsibility? (\* More)

1. The Municipality	2. A street Committee	3. Every person should be made responsible	4. A campaign should be organised	5. Other: (explain)
---------------------	-----------------------	--	-----------------------------------	---------------------

9. If you would have the money, what would you be prepared to pay monthly to live in a clean environment?

live

10. Has any person in your household been a victim of crime in the last 12 months?

Yes	No
-----	----

11. What kind of crime? (Can mark \* more than one option)

1. Assault	2. Robbery	3. Rape	4. Murder	5. Abduction	6. Other
------------	------------	---------	-----------	--------------	----------

12. How do you experience, especially in winter, the smoke levels (air pollution) in your area? \*

1. Not affected	2. Slightly affected	3. Affected	4. Badly affected	5. Unbearable (Severely Affected)
-----------------	----------------------	-------------	-------------------	-----------------------------------

13. If you are making fire for cooking & heating purposes, would you like to be introduced to technologies that will reduce the smoke levels at your house? \*

1. Not making fire: using electricity for cooking & heating	2. Making coal / wood fire: but Not interested	3. Making coal / wood fire: And Interested	4. Using paraffin: Not interested	5. Using paraffin: interested
---	--	--	-----------------------------------	-------------------------------

14. If you would have the money, what would you be prepared to pay monthly to live in a smoke-free environment?  live

15. It is known that the burning of plastics & tyres had serious toxic & polluting effects. In order to restrict such pollution, do you think people who do that should be given a fine? \*

Yes |  No

16. Especially in the spring & summer some people are using amplifiers to make loud music. How are you affected by this in your area? \*

1. Not affected (quiet in the area)	2. I hear it but I don't care (accepting it)	3. I hear it and it is affecting me (don't like it)	4. I hear it and I am badly affected	5. I hear it and it is unbearable (severely affected)
-------------------------------------	--	---	--------------------------------------	---

17. If you feel that something should be done in your area to reduce the noise levels, who should be responsible and what should be done? (Mark \* more than one option)

1. The Municipality should control & restrict people to play loud music	2. The police should control & restrict people to play loud music	3. A street committee should control & restrict people to play loud music	4. People who disturb the neighbourhood with noise should be fined / punished	5. The instruments of those who disturb the neighbourhood should be confiscated
---	---	---	---	---

18. If you would have the money, what would you be prepared to pay monthly to live in a quiet environment?  live

**C: CONSUMPTION**

19. How much of the following items do you buy per week & about how much do you spend on these items per week?

Product	Kilograms / litres per week	Rand per week	Town ✓	Township ✓
1. Maize Meal				
2. Bread				
3. Meat / chicken				
4. Vegetables				
5. Milk				
6. Washing powder				
7. Coal				
8. Paraffin				

20. How does your household spend your income monthly?

Item	Rand p.m.	Name of Shop	Town x	Town- ship x	
Housing (Rent/Bond)					1
Water					2
Electricity					3
Food					4
Cigarettes & Tobacco					5
Beer, wine & spirits					6
Transport					7
Clothing					8
School					9
Entertainment					10
Medical Expenses					11
Investment/Unit Trusts/Insurance					12
Gambling:                      Lotto:					13
Casino:					14
Savings					15
Licenses (eg. TV, Vehicle)					16
Rates and taxes					17
Property tax					18
Income tax					19
Housekeeping Services (eg. Garden)					20
Telephone/Cell phone					21
Car Repayment					22
Loans					23
Furniture					24
Other:Specify:					25

**D: EMPLOYMENT & EDUCATION STATUS**

**21. Complete in respect of all members of the household (Refer to Code List)**

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1. Number of people in the household								
2. Composition of members (Father, Mother, Son etc)								
3. Age of each member in years								
4. Sex (Male = 1; female = 2)								
5. Marital Status								
6. Qualifications (still at school)								
7. Qualifications (not at school)								
8. Employment Status								
9. Sector of employment								
10. Duration of employment /unemployment in years								
11. Preparedness for Skills Training Unemployed & Underemployed								
12. Sector in which person would like to get Skills Training								
13. What the Unemployed doing presently								
14. Minimum wage expected (unemployed)								
15. Wages/salaries per month (Take home pay)								
16. Pension/Remittance								
17. Grant from Government for children								
18. Help (family/relatives/etc)								
19. Informal activities (eg. SMME)								
20. Subsidies (eg. Housing)								
21. Interest/dividends								
22. Other (Specify)								

22. Do you consider yourself poor?	Yes	1
	No	2

23. How much take-home pay should your household earn per month to consider yourselves non-poor?



**E: OWNERSHIP & WEALTH**

**24. How many of the following items does your household own?**

	NUMBER	CODE
Motor vehicle, including cars and bakkies		1
Bicycles		2
Radio		3
Electric Stove		4
Gas Stove		5
DVD, Video recorder, TV		6
Fridge		7
Electric Geyser (Warm water)		8
Computer		9
Telephone/Cellphone		10

**25. Do you owe money or goods to any of the following individuals and institutions?**

Who owed?	How much	Monthly payment
Relative or friend		
Government Agency		
Landlord		
Banks or Building Society		
Money Lender (eg cash loans)		
Non Governmental Organization (NGO)		
Stokvel/Credit Union		
Burial Services		
Employer		
Hire Purchase		
Shopkeeper Credit		
Other (Specify)		

**F: INCOME GENERATION**

**26. Is anyone in the family involved in SMMEs?**

Name the type of business(es) (eg. taxi): \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

Capacity (eg. Owner, manager, worker): \_\_\_\_\_

**G: SATISFACTION SURVEY**

**27. Taking everything into account, how satisfied is this household with the way it lives these days?  
 (Circle one response)**

- Very satisfied .....-1
- Satisfied.....-2
- Neither satisfied nor dissatisfied.....-3
- Dissatisfied .....-4
- Very dissatisfied ..... -5

28. In order of importance, which of the following items do you think the government should focus on to improve the standard of living in Evaton West (Choose only three most important)

Item	Rank	Code
Jobs		1
Schools		2
Training		3
Clinics		4
Roads		5
Electricity		6
Housing		7
Piped water		8
Food aid		9
Transport		10
Sanitation		11
Sports facilities		12
Libraries		13
Cinemas		14
Banks		15
Shops		16
Stop crime		17
Clean Environment (no smoke, no gabbage dumps)		18
Fire brigade		19
Other: Specify		20

#### H: SAFETY & SECURITY

29. Thinking about the last 3 years, how would you say your physical safety when you are inside your home has changed, if at all? Are you safer than you were 3 years ago, about the same, or less safe than you were 3 years ago?

More..... -1  
 The same ..... -2  
 Less ..... -3

30. Thinking about your physical safety when you are outside the home: How does it compare with 3 years ago? Do you feel safer than 3 years ago, about the same, or less safe than 3 years ago?

More..... -1  
 The same ..... -2  
 Less ..... -3

31. When you compare your situation with that of your parents, do you think you are richer, about the same, or poorer than they were?

Richer .....-1  
 The same.....-2  
 Poorer .....-3

32. Are you satisfied with the services offered by the local municipality? YES [ ] NO [ ]

33. Do you know your ward councillor? YES [ ] NO [ ]

**I: HOUSING**

34. Describe the main housing unit:	Brick building					1
	Shack					2
	Asbestos					3
	Other					4
35. Number of bedrooms	1	2	3	4	5	
36. How many other rooms (excluding toilets/bathrooms)	1	2	3	4	5	
37. How many toilets does the house have	1	2	3	4	5	
38. Type of toilet(s)	Fully mechanised sewage system					1
	Septic tank					2
	Bucket					3
	Other					4
39. The toilet is situated:	Inside house					1
	Outside house					2
	Both inside & outside					3
40. Type of roof of house	Tile					1
	Corrugated iron					2
	Asbestos					3
	Other					4
41. Water System	Communal Tap					1
	Full in-house plumbing					2
	No water system					3
	Other					4
42. Electricity	Full Electrification					1
	No electricity					2
	Other					3

Thank you for your cooperation.

**Community Questionnaire**

**1. COMMUNITY CHARACTERISTICS**

1.1 How many years has the community been in existence?

- More than 10 years            [   ]   1
- Between 5 and 10 years      [   ]   2
- Fewer than 5 years          [   ]   3

1.2 How many households are in this community?

- Fewer than 250              [   ]   1
- Between 250 and 500        [   ]   2
- Between 500 and 750        [   ]   3
- Between 750 and 1000      [   ]   4
- More than 1000              [   ]   5

1.3 In the last three years, the number of people living in this community has:

- Increased                    [   ]   1
- Decreased                    [   ]   2
- Remained the same         [   ]   3

1.4 What are the two main reasons for the increase, decrease, or lack of change?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

1.5 What are the two principal economic activities for men in this community?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

1.6 What are the two principal economic activities for women in this community?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

1.7 In the last three years, availability of employment has:

- Improved                    [   ]   1
- Worsened                    [   ]   2
- Remained the same         [   ]   3

1.8 What is the main route that inhabitants use to reach this community, both during rainy season and dry season?

	(a) <u>Rainy</u>	(b) <u>Dry</u>
Paved road	[ ] 1	[ ] 1
Dirt road	[ ] 2	[ ] 2
Mixed paved and dirt	[ ] 3	[ ] 3
Footpath	[ ] 4	[ ] 4
Horse trail	[ ] 5	[ ] 5
Sea	[ ] 6	[ ] 6
Other (specify)	[ ] 7	[ ] 7

1.9 In the last three years, the roads leading to this community have:

Improved	[ ] 1
Worsened	[ ] 2
Remained the same	[ ] 3

1.10 Does public transport pass by this community?

Yes	[ ] 1
No	[ ] 2

1.11 What is the mode of public transport?

Bus	[ ] 1
Train	[ ] 2
Taxi (minibus)	[ ] 3
Bus & Train	[ ] 4
Bus, Train & Minibus Taxis	[ ] 5
Bus & Minibus Taxis	[ ] 6
Train & Minibus Taxis	[ ] 7
Other	[ ] 8

1.12 The availability of housing in this community is:

Adequate	[ ] 1
Deficient	[ ] 2

1.13 In the last three years, the quality of housing in this community has:

Improved	[ ] 1
Worsened	[ ] 2
Remained the same	[ ] 3

1.14 What are the two main reasons that housing in the community has improved, worsened, or remained the same during the last three years?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

1.15 In the last three years, the overall quality of life of the people living in this community has: *(consider job availability, safety and security, environment, housing, etc.)*

Improved	[ ] 1
Worsened	[ ] 2
Remained the same	[ ] 3

1.16 What are the two main reasons that the quality of life in the community has improved, worsened, or remained the same during the last three years?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

1.17 Overall, the level of living of this community may be characterized as:

- |            |     |   |
|------------|-----|---|
| Wealthy    | [ ] | 1 |
| Well-to-do | [ ] | 2 |
| Average    | [ ] | 3 |
| Poor       | [ ] | 4 |
| Very poor  | [ ] | 5 |

1.18 Do people in this community generally trust one another in matters of lending and borrowing?

- |     |     |   |
|-----|-----|---|
| Yes | [ ] | 1 |
| No  | [ ] | 2 |

1.19 In the last three years, has the level of trust improved, worsened, or stayed the same?

- |                   |     |   |
|-------------------|-----|---|
| Improved          | [ ] | 1 |
| Worsened          | [ ] | 2 |
| Remained the same | [ ] | 3 |

1.20 Compared with other communities, how much do people in this community trust each other in matters of lending and borrowing?

- |                                      |     |   |
|--------------------------------------|-----|---|
| More trust than in other communities | [ ] | 1 |
| Same as in other communities         | [ ] | 2 |
| Less trust than in other communities | [ ] | 3 |

1.21 Do you agree or disagree with the following statement: People here look out mainly for the welfare of their own families and they are not much concerned with community welfare.

- |                   |     |   |
|-------------------|-----|---|
| Strongly agree    | [ ] | 1 |
| Agree             | [ ] | 2 |
| Disagree          | [ ] | 3 |
| Strongly disagree | [ ] | 4 |

**2. PRINCIPAL SERVICES**

**2A. Electricity**

2A.1 What fraction of the community has household electrical service?

- |                          |     |   |
|--------------------------|-----|---|
| The entire community     | [ ] | 1 |
| Most of the community    | [ ] | 2 |
| About half the community | [ ] | 3 |
| Less than half/very few  | [ ] | 4 |
| No one in the community  | [ ] | 5 |

2A.2 In the last three years, the electrical service to this community has:

- Improved [ ] 1
- Worsened [ ] 2
- Remained the same [ ] 3

2A.3 Currently, the quality of electrical service within the homes of this community is:

- Very good [ ] 1
- Good [ ] 2
- Average [ ] 3
- Poor [ ] 4
- Very poor [ ] 5

2A.4 What are the two main problems with the electrical service?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

**2B. Public Lighting**

2B.1 Does this community have street lights?

- Yes [ ] 1
- No [ ] 2

2B.2 In the last three years, the public lighting service has:

- Improved [ ] 1
- Worsened [ ] 2
- Remained the same [ ] 3

2B.3 Currently, the quality of public lighting service is:

- Very good [ ] 1
- Good [ ] 2
- Average [ ] 3
- Poor [ ] 4
- Very poor [ ] 5

2B.4 What are the two main problems with the public lighting in this community?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

**2C. Drinking Water**

2C.1 What part of the community has pipe-borne water?

- The entire community [ ] 1
- Most of the community [ ] 2
- About half the community [ ] 3
- Less than half/very few [ ] 4
- No one in the community [ ] 5

2C.2 What part of the community has access to public standpipes?

- The entire community [ ] 1
- Most of the community [ ] 2
- About half the community [ ] 3
- Less than half/very few [ ] 4
- No one in the community [ ] 5

2C.3 In the last three years, potable water service has:

- Improved [ ] 1
- Worsened [ ] 2
- Remained the same [ ] 3

2C.4 Currently, the potable water service is:

- Very good [ ] 1
- Good [ ] 2
- Average [ ] 3
- Poor [ ] 4
- Very poor [ ] 5

2C.5 What are the two main problems with the potable water service?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

**2D. Home Telephone Service**

2D.1 What fraction of the community has home telephone service?

- The entire community [ ] 1
- Most of the community [ ] 2
- About half the community [ ] 3
- Less than half/very few [ ] 4
- No one in the community [ ] 5

2D2 Currently, the home telephone service is:

- Very good [ ] 1
- Good [ ] 2
- Average [ ] 3
- Poor [ ] 4
- Very poor [ ] 5

**2E. Communication Services**

2E.1 Does this community have public telephones?

- Yes [ ] 1
- No [ ] 2 (go to question 2E.3)

2E.2 How many public telephones are in this community?



2E.3 What is the distance from this community to the nearest public telephone?

Distance (in walking minutes) \_\_\_\_\_

2E.4 In the last three years, the public telephone service in this community has:

- Improved  1
- Worsened  2
- Remained the same  3

2E.5 Currently, the public telephone service in this community is:

- Very good  1
- Good  2
- Average  3
- Poor  4
- Very poor  5

2E.6 What are the two main problems with the public telephone service in this community?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

2E.7 Is there a post office in this community?

- Yes  1
- No  2

2E.8 What is the distance from this community to the nearest post office?

Distance (in walking minutes) \_\_\_\_\_

2E.9 In the last three years, the mail service in this community has:

- Improved  1
- Worsened  2
- Remained the same  3

2E.10 Currently, the mail service in this community is:

- Very good  1
- Good  2
- Average  3
- Poor  4
- Very poor  5

2E.11 What are the two main problems with the mail service in this community?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

2E.12 What fraction of the community has access to public Internet service?

- The entire community [ ] 1
- Most of the community [ ] 2
- About half the community [ ] 3
- Less than half/very few [ ] 4
- No one in the community [ ] 5 (go to question 2E.14)

2E.13 Where are public Internet access services available?

- Local school [ ] 1
- Library [ ] 2
- Community center [ ] 3
- Training center [ ] 4
- Internet café [ ] 5
- Other (specify) [ ] 6

2E.14 What is the distance from this community to the nearest public Internet access service?

Distance (in walking minutes) \_\_\_\_\_

**2F. Sewage**

2F.1 What fraction of the community is served by a public sewage system?

- The entire community [ ] 1
- Most of the community [ ] 2
- About half the community [ ] 3
- Less than half/very few [ ] 4
- No one in the community [ ] 5

2F.2 In the last three years, the quality of the public sewage system in this community has:

- Improved [ ] 1
- Worsened [ ] 2
- Remained the same [ ] 3

2F.3 Currently, the public sewage system is:

- Very good [ ] 1
- Good [ ] 2
- Average [ ] 3
- Poor [ ] 4
- Very poor [ ] 5

2F.4 What are the two main problems with the public sewage system in this community?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

2F.5 Do the streets of this community have sufficient sewers and drains to handle excess water and prevent flooding when it rains?

Yes [ ] 1  
 No [ ] 2

2F.6 What other sewage and waste water systems are used in this community?

	<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>
a. Latrine	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
b. Septic tanks	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
c. River or sea	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
d. Other (specify)	[ ] 1	[ ] 2

2G. *Garbage Collection*

2G.1 What fraction of the community is served by a garbage collection service?

The entire community [ ] 1  
 Most of the community [ ] 2  
 About half the community [ ] 3  
 Less than half/very few [ ] 4  
 No one in the community [ ] 5

2G.2 In the last three years, the quality of the garbage disposal in this community has:

Improved [ ] 1  
 Worsened [ ] 2  
 Remained the same [ ] 3

2G.3 In the homes that do not receive garbage collection service, what is the main solid waste disposal method?

Burn it [ ] 1  
 Throw on own lot [ ] 2  
 Throw on others' lots [ ] 3  
 Throw into river/sea [ ] 4  
 Bury it [ ] 5  
 Pay to haul away [ ] 6  
 Other (specify) [ ] 7

2H. *Recreation*

2H.1 Does this community have sports fields or recreational areas?

Yes [ ] 1  
 No [ ] 2

2H.2 In the last three years, the condition of the sports fields and recreational areas has:

Improved [ ] 1  
 Worsened [ ] 2  
 Remained the same [ ] 3

2H.3 Does this community have separate children's play areas?

Yes [ ] 1  
 No [ ] 2

2H.4 In the last three years, the condition of these children's play areas has:

Improved [ ] 1  
 Worsened [ ] 2  
 Remained the same [ ] 3

*2I. Security*

2I.1 Does this community have a security or police force?

Yes [ ] 1  
 No [ ] 2

2I.2 This service is provided by:

The police [ ] 1  
 The community [ ] 2  
 A private company [ ] 3

2I.3 This security service is provided to:

The entire community [ ] 1  
 Most of the community [ ] 2  
 About half the community [ ] 3  
 Less than half/very few [ ] 4

2I.4 In the last three years, the quality of the security service has:

Improved [ ] 1  
 Worsened [ ] 2  
 Remained the same [ ] 3

**3. LABOR MIGRATION**

3.1 Are there members of this community who go to other places to work during certain periods of the year?

Yes [ ] 1  
 No [ ] 2

3.2 Do more women than men leave to work? Do more men than women leave to work? Or equal numbers of women and men?

More women than men [ ] 1  
 More men than women [ ] 2  
 Equal numbers [ ] 3

3.3 Where do they go to work primarily?

- To a city in this region  1
- To a city in another region  2
- To a city in another country  3
- To a rural area in this region  4
- To a rural area in another region  5
- To a rural area in another country  6

3.4 What are the two principal jobs women leave for?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

3.5 What are the two principal jobs men leave for?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

3.6 Are there people from other communities who come to work in this community?

- Yes  1
- No  2

3.7 What are the two principal jobs they come for?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

4. EDUCATION

4A. *Preschool*

4A.1 Does this community have a public preschool?

- Yes  1 (go to question 4A.3)
- No  2

4A.2 How far from the community is the nearest public preschool?

Distance (in walking minutes) \_\_\_\_\_

4A.3 Is the number of preschools in this community sufficient to serve the number of young children in the community?

- Yes  1
- No  2

4A.4 Is the number of teachers in these preschools sufficient for the number of children?

- Yes  1
- No  2

4A.5 The physical condition of the preschool is:

- |           |     |   |
|-----------|-----|---|
| Very good | [ ] | 1 |
| Good      | [ ] | 2 |
| Average   | [ ] | 3 |
| Poor      | [ ] | 4 |
| Very poor | [ ] | 5 |

4A.6 What percentage of young children attend public preschools?

- |                            |     |                      |
|----------------------------|-----|----------------------|
| All children               | [ ] | 1 (go to section 4B) |
| Most children              | [ ] | 2                    |
| About half of the children | [ ] | 3                    |
| Less than half             | [ ] | 4                    |
| Very few/none              | [ ] | 5                    |

4A.7 What are the two principal reasons that young children from this community do not attend public preschool?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

**4B. Primary School**

4B.1 Does this community have a public primary school?

- |     |     |   |
|-----|-----|---|
| Yes | [ ] | 1 |
| No  | [ ] | 2 |

4B.2 How far from the community is the nearest public primary school?

Distance (in walking minutes) \_\_\_\_\_

4B.3 Is the number of primary schools in this community sufficient to serve the number of school-age children in the community?

- |     |     |   |
|-----|-----|---|
| Yes | [ ] | 1 |
| No  | [ ] | 2 |

4B.4 Is the number of teachers in these schools sufficient for the number of students?

- |     |     |   |
|-----|-----|---|
| Yes | [ ] | 1 |
| No  | [ ] | 2 |

4B.5 The physical condition of the primary school is:

- |           |     |   |
|-----------|-----|---|
| Very good | [ ] | 1 |
| Good      | [ ] | 2 |
| Average   | [ ] | 3 |
| Poor      | [ ] | 4 |
| Very poor | [ ] | 5 |

4B.6 What percentage of eligible school-age children attend public primary schools?

- All children [ ] 1
- Most children [ ] 2
- About half of the children [ ] 3
- Less than half [ ] 4
- Very few/none [ ] 5

4B.7 What are the two principal reasons that school-age children from this community do not attend public primary school?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

**4C. Secondary School**

4C.1 Does this community have a public secondary school?

- Yes [ ] 1
- No [ ] 2

4C.2 How far from the community is the nearest public secondary school?

Distance (in walking minutes) \_\_\_\_\_

4C.3 Is the number of secondary schools in this community sufficient to accommodate the number of secondary-school-age students in the community?

- Yes [ ] 1
- No [ ] 2

4C.4 Is the number of teachers in the secondary schools sufficient for the number of students?

- Yes [ ] 1
- No [ ] 2

4C.5 The physical condition of the secondary school is:

- Very good [ ] 1
- Good [ ] 2
- Average [ ] 3
- Poor [ ] 4
- Very poor [ ] 5

4C.6 What percentage of secondary-school-age children attend public secondary schools?

- All children [ ] 1
- Most children [ ] 2
- About half of the children [ ] 3
- Less than half [ ] 4
- Very few/none [ ] 5

4C.7 What are the two principal reasons that secondary-school-age children from this community do not attend public secondary school?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

**4D. Adult Education**

4D.1 Is there an adult literacy campaign or program for the community?

Yes [ ] 1  
 No [ ] 2

4D.2 Are there job training programs for this community?

Yes [ ] 1  
 No [ ] 2

**5. HEALTH**

5.1 What are the three principal health problems affecting children under six years of age in this community?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (b) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (c) \_\_\_\_\_

5.2 What are the two principal health problems affecting adult men in this community?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (b) \_\_\_\_\_

5.3 What are the two principal health problems affecting adult women in this community?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (b) \_\_\_\_\_

5.4 Does this community have a health clinic or hospital?

Yes [ ] 1  
 No [ ] 2

5.5 How far is the nearest public health clinic or hospital?

Distance (in walking minutes) \_\_\_\_\_

5.6 Does the health clinic or hospital regularly have sufficient:

	<u>Sufficient</u>	<u>Insufficient</u>	<u>None</u>
a. Basic medicines	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	[ ] 3
b. Equipment/instruments	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	[ ] 3
c. Patient beds	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	[ ] 3
d. Ambulances	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	[ ] 3
e. Physicians	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	[ ] 3



- f. Nurses  1  2  3  
 g. Other health staff  1  2  3

5.7 Does this community have a family planning program?

- Yes  1  
 No  2

5.8 Who offers the program?

- Government  1  
 NGO  2  
 Private facility  3  
 Other (specify)  4

**6. ENVIRONMENTAL ISSUES**

6.1 Does this community have:

- |   | <u>Yes</u>                 | <u>No</u>                  |
|---|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| c. Junk yards or scrap heaps                        | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> 2 |
| d. Standing water or stagnant pools                 | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> 2 |
| e. Slaughterhouses that dump waste in public places | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> 2 |
| f. Mechanics who dump waste oil in soil or water    | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> 2 |
| j. Other (specify)                                  | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> 2 |

6.2 Overall, the current environmental condition of the community is:

- Very good  1  
 Good  2  
 Average  3  
 Poor  4  
 Very poor  5

6.3 In the last three years, the environmental conditions in the community have:

- Improved  1  
 Worsened  2  
 Remained the same  3

6.4 What are the two main actions that could be taken to improve the environmental conditions in this community?

- (a) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (b) \_\_\_\_\_

7. SMME's

7.1 What are the three principal SMME activities undertaken in this community?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

(c) \_\_\_\_\_

7.2 Where do the inhabitants of this community generally sell their products? (*List up to three venues by order of importance.*)

a	b	c

- Local community 1
- Market in neighboring areas 2
- Domestic middlemen 3
- Exporters 4
- Public institutions 5
- Cooperatives 6
- Local stores and shops 7
- Other (specify) 8
- Only self-consumption/  
no outside sales 9

7.3 What are the two most important problems facing members of this community for getting their products to the market and earning a profit?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

7.4 Do the SMME workers/producers in this community receive technical assistance?

- Yes [ ] 1
- No [ ] 2

7.5 Who is the main provider of this technical assistance? (*Probe whether the institution is public or private.*)

\_\_\_\_\_

7.6 Does this community have any type of SMME cooperative?

- Yes [ ] 1
- No [ ] 2

7.7 Does this community have any institution or person (either in the community or nearby) that provides credit and loans to SMMEs?

- Yes [ ] 1
- No [ ] 2

7.8 What are the three main persons or institutions that provide credit or loans to SMMEs in this community?

a	b	c
---	---	---

- National banks 1
- Development banks 2
- Private institutions 3
- GAUMAC 4
- Private individuals 5
- Export businesses 6
- DTI 7
- Cash Loans 8
- Warehouses or middlemen 9
- Other (specify) 10

7.10 What percentage of the SMMEs in this community use loans or credits to support their activities?

\_\_\_\_\_

7.11 What are the two principal problems facing the SMMEs of this community in terms of receiving loans and credits?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

7.12 In the last three years, the SMME productst have:

- Increased [ ] 1
- Decreased [ ] 2
- Remained the same [ ] 3

7.13 In the last three years, the sales of SMME products in this community have:

- Increased [ ] 1
- Decreased [ ] 2
- Remained the same [ ] 3

## 8. COMMUNITY SUPPORT

8.1 Which of the following organizations exist in this community?

	<u>Yes</u>		<u>No</u>	
a. Community development committee	[ ]	1	[ ]	2
b. LED Group	[ ]	1	[ ]	2
c. Parent-teacher association	[ ]	1	[ ]	2
d. Health committee	[ ]	1	[ ]	2
e. Youth group	[ ]	1	[ ]	2
f. Sports group	[ ]	1	[ ]	2
g. Cultural group	[ ]	1	[ ]	2
h. Civic group	[ ]	1	[ ]	2

i. Other (specify) [ ] 1 [ ] 2

8.2 Which persons or organizations help or support these community-based organizations?

	<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>
a. Local government	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
b. National government	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
c. Politicians	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
d. Religious organizations	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
e. School/teachers	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
f. Nongovernmental organizations	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
g. Business group	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
h. Service club	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
i. Prosperous citizens	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
j. The community as a whole	[ ] 1	[ ] 2

8.3 What buildings do people in this community regularly use for meetings and gatherings?

	<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>
a. Community center	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
b. Personal homes	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
c. Homes of political leaders	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
d. Homes of other local leaders	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
e. Churches or religious buildings	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
f. Health center/school	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
g. Government buildings	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
h. Business/commercial buildings	[ ] 1	[ ] 2
i. Other (specify)	[ ] 1	[ ] 2

8.4 Which members of the community participate most in solving the issues facing the community?

(a) By gender	
Men	[ ] 1
Women	[ ] 2
Men and women equally	[ ] 3
Neither participate	[ ] 4
(b) By age	
Youth and adolescents	[ ] 1
Adults	[ ] 2
Older persons	[ ] 3
Youth, adults, and elders equally	[ ] 4
None participate	[ ] 5
(c) By employment status	
Workers	[ ] 1
Unemployed or nonworkers	[ ] 2
Workers and nonworkers equally	[ ] 3
Neither participate	[ ] 4

8.5 In the last three years, has the community organized to address a need or problem?

Yes [ ] 1  
 No [ ] 2

8.6 Around what issue(s) did the community organize?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

8.7 Was/were the initiative(s) successful?

	<u>Yes</u>		<u>No</u>		<u>Ongoing</u>
a. Initiative #1	[ ] 1		[ ] 2		[ ] 3
b. Initiative #2	[ ] 1		[ ] 2		[ ] 3

8.8 What are the two main problems or needs that community members feel must be addressed or solved?

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

8.9 Are there any specific assistance programs to this community?

Yes [ ] 1  
 No [ ] 2

8.10 What are the two main programs and the institutions that support them?

(a) Program/institution \_\_\_\_\_

(b) Program/institution \_\_\_\_\_

8.11 Do any of the following problems exist in this community? If yes, who is the most affected or at-risk group: (by age, gender, ethnic group, etc.)?

	<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>	<u>Most affected group</u> (Old =1, young=2, old&young=3 Men=4, women=5, men&women=6 workers=7, unemployed=8, all=9)
a. Burglaries	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	_____
b. Robberies	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	_____
c. Assaults	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	_____
d. Gangs	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	_____
e. Vandalism	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	_____
f. Violent disputes	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	_____
g. Alcohol abuse	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	_____
h. Substance (drug) abuse	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	_____
i. Teen pregnancy	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	_____
j. Domestic violence	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	_____
k. Child abuse	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	_____
l. Prostitution	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	_____
m. HIV/Aids	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	_____
n. Rapes	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	_____
o. Other problems (specify)	[ ] 1	[ ] 2	_____

**Annexure 4**  
**Respondents to the**  
**Evaton West Community Assessment Questionnaire**

	<b>Name</b>	<b>Portfolio</b>
1	Emmah Moloji	Nurse
2	Tshidi Pule	Educator
3	Zaza Raikane	Community Leader (School governing body)
4	Bias Ntombela	Community Leader
5	Jacob Mhlambi	Community Leader
6	Meisie Maarokganye	Community Leader
7	Mafika Motloung	Businessman
8	Lord Mc Camel	Councillor
9	Jabulani Nkosi	Businessman
10	Palesa Mokoena	Educator
11	Kuni Khumalo	Community Leader
12	Pastor Dube	Pastor/Aids Counsellor
13	Lerato Motsoeneng	Politican/Leader
14	Nkosi	Civic Organisation/Leader
15	Mapule Maarokganye	Business Lady
16	Augrey	Business Lady
17	Jason Mkhwane	Councillor
18	Nono	Business Lady
19	Patela Maarokganye	Businessman
20	Morris Rasegoete (outstanding)	Lawyer

## Annexure 5

### Methodology for the measuring of unemployment

**This annexure contains the methodologies employed in Chapter 4 of this essay. The methodologies have been obtained from Slabbert (2003: 35-39).**

#### METHODS FOR THE MEASUREMENT OF UNEMPLOYMENT

Various methods are used to measure unemployment. The following three are more or less standard methods (Slabbert & Levin, 1997).

**a. The census method**

This method is used for measuring the economic status of the entire population. However, censuses take place only periodically and even then only a limited number of questions pertaining to employment can be included.

**b. Registration method**

This method provides for the unemployed to register at placement offices - in South Africa these are offices of the Department of Labour. Registration is compulsory to qualify for unemployment benefits. In South Africa some categories of civil servants, domestic workers, farm workers, casual and seasonal workers, those earning more than the ceiling income and those whose period of benefit (6 months) has run out, are excluded from the fund. Many persons, therefore, have no reason to register. Registered unemployment figures published by the Department of Labour in South Africa consequently do not show the level of unemployment accurately.

**c. Sample surveys**

Surveys are undertaken on a sample basis to obtain the data required to calculate unemployment rates for specific groups of people. In earlier years the Central Statistical Services conducted surveys on a monthly basis for Blacks, Coloureds and Asians. It was called the Current Population Survey (CPS). However, since the figures obtained for Blacks were found to be inaccurate, their results have not been



published since April 1990 (Baker, 1992: 83). In 1994, the CPS was terminated and the October Household Survey was introduced. Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) has conducted October Household Surveys (OHS) since 1996. It is an annual survey, based on a probability sample of a large number of households. It covers a range of development and poverty indicators, including unemployment (official and expanded), according to the definitions of the International Labour Organisation (ILO).

Because of the lack of reliable sources of information on a regional basis, surveys were conducted in the Vaal Triangle by Slabbert *et al* (1987; 1988; 1991; 1994 and 1999) to determine the unemployment and poverty rate. The method used to determine the unemployment rate in Sedibeng district is explained below.

### **Definition of unemployment**

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) uses the following definition of unemployment as its official definition:

*The unemployed are those people within the economically active population who:*

- a) *did not work during the seven days prior to the interview;*
- b) *want to work and are available to start within a week of the interview; and*
- c) *have taken active steps to look for work or to start some form of self-employment in the four weeks prior to the interview.*

These general criteria are translated into statistically meaningful criteria, namely:

- the population of potential working age (i.e. 15 years and older);
- the economically non-active (i.e. those who prefer not to or who cannot work – for instance housewives, persons 65 years and older, the disabled, etc);
- the economically active population (all those who are fit to work, wish to work, have no employment and are ready for and actively looking for work, plus the employed and self-employed).

The unemployment rate (Ur) then, is calculated according to the standard equation:

$$\frac{\text{number of unemployed}}{\text{Economically active population (EAP)}} \times \frac{100}{1} = Ur$$

In developed countries this definition is relatively simple to apply. The criteria for measuring unemployment are straight and definite, i.e. a person is out of work, and is actively looking for a job by means of a listing at a placement or other government office. However, in developing countries circumstances are very different, and it is not always clear whether or not a person is seeking employment. In South Africa some unemployed persons become discouraged and therefore refrain from taking active steps to seek employment.

In the survey for this section only one criterion was taken as an indication of seeking work, namely if a person "has the desire to work and to take up employment or self-employment". The question asked was simply: "Do you want to work?" When the standard Stats SA definition is used, but its strict criteria are relaxed - as was done in this survey - it is referred to as an expanded definition of unemployment. The expanded definition includes (a) and (b) but not (c) (Stats SA, 2000: xv).

Stats SA's definition for employment which defines 'employed' as those who performed work for pay, profit or family gain in the seven days prior to the household survey interview, or who were absent from work during these seven days, but had some form of paid work to which they can return (Stats SA, 2000) was also simplified. The question was simply asked: "Do you work for a business, for yourself or for your family?" Working for a business was regarded as formal employment. Self-employment and family employment were taken as working in the informal sector.

Source: Slabbert & Slabbert, 2002: 17.

## Methodology for the measuring of poverty

Following the guidelines of the World Bank, a poor household is defined as a household of which the combined income of all its members is less than the Household subsistence Level (HSL) as determined for the specific household. If the combined income of a household is described by  $y_i$  and the poverty line (HSL) of the same household is described by  $z_i$ , the extent of poverty,  $P_i$ , of this household is described by  $P_i(y_i; z_i)$ .

The headcount index is defined as the fraction of the population below the poverty line. The higher the index the higher the number of the poor within a given population. For example an index of 0.53 would indicate that 53% of the population lies below the given poverty line (or are poor). In this thesis the headcount index is adapted to indicate the fraction of households that fall below their individual poverty lines, and is described by means of the equation:

$$H(y; z) = M/N$$

Where:  $H$  = the fraction of households below the poverty line;  
 $y$  = household income;  
 $z$  = the poverty line of households;  
 $M$  = the number of households with incomes less than  $z$ ;  
 $N$  = the total number of households.

The poverty gap usually measures the average shortfall of the incomes of the poor from the poverty line while the poverty gap index measures the extent of the shortfall of incomes below the poverty line at a given time period. In this report the poverty gap index is adapted to be a measure of a specific household, described by the equation:

$$R_i(y; z) = (z_i - y_i)/z_i$$

Where:  $R_i$  = the income shortfall of a household expressed as a proportion of the household's poverty line;

- $y_i$  = the income of a specific household; and  
 $z_i$  = the poverty line of a specific household.

The poverty gap of an individual household (in monetary terms) can therefore be expressed by the equation:

$$G_i(y; z) = z_i - y_i$$

- Where:  $G_i$  = the income shortfall of a household;  
 $y_i$  = the income of a specific household; and  
 $z_i$  = the poverty line of a specific household.

From the three equations above it is clear that the poverty gap can only be reduced by increasing household income.

Source: Slabbert, 1997: 47.

## **Annexure 6**

### **Transcript of the Focus Group Interview held in Evaton West on the 20<sup>th</sup> November 2003 at 18H00 to 19H30.**

**Interviewer:** TD Mokoena

**Participants:** 8 Evaton West Community Development Forum Members:

**Interviewer:** Interview eo re tlo bang le yona, e nale question tse twelve, tseo ke tlo di botsang. Ke kopa hore re be relaxed, re qoqeng feela ne, through the questions. Di tloba based haholo around mosebetsi o entsweng ke Coltapia ho ba neng ba attenda, ne le attenda kaofela?

**Respondent A:** Ho attendile 1,2,3,4

**Interviewer:** Bathong ban a ba attenda, and then le mosebetsi o etsuwang ke Eindhoven Municipality. Ee hore ba e tsang Coltapia e ne e etsang hoya ka lona, and then may be dibenefits tsa teng e bile difeng the same le ka Eindhoven, mara ke tla le guider ka diquestion seka la wara ha Manini a ntse a ngola o tlo nka di notes, and then re tlo le nka di TV tape, re ne re shebile ho spenda one and half hour, mara ka baka la nako re tlo spenda about an hour. Ho lokile?

**Interviewees:** E!

**Interviewer:** And re be relaxed so forget hore re nale camera. OK, question ya pele ke hore.

**Respondent A:** Before ha eba re araba, ka camereng o tlo tseba jwang hore ke ya araba kapa ke bua feela?

**Interviewer:** E le hlahisitse kaofela hona jwale so o tla hlahella hore o ho bua wena.

**Respondent A:** Re bua feela?

**Interviewer:** Ya ho tlo hlahella hore ke mang a buang. Ene ke ne ke kopa re bueng kaofela. O mong le o mong a be le chance.

**Interviewee:** Correct, kaofela

**Interviewer:** Ya, ho tlo thusa jwalo, cause ke ya tseba ho na le ntho eo batlang ho e bua tloha ya ba bate feela mona.

**Respondent A:** That's why ke tlile ka morao

**Interviewer:** Ok, ha re qaleng he. Over the past three years the are number of programmes has been established in a written work. This programmes has been initiated particularly by Coltapia and the Eindhoven Municipality, I would like to ask few questions based on this two groups.

### **Question 1**

Ha ke botsa question tseo ka English mara ha ho thwe o arabe ka English. Ee re batho ba batsho kaofela, ha ke nahane re na le bothata. Ke tla yak e nke ke dise RCL. Now question one "tell me what you understand Coltapia to be, ho ya ka lona Coltapia ene e le eng?

**Respondent A:** According to the understanding that you had. A Coltapia o understadile the institution that Coltapia is the abbreviation for Centre for Learning to alleviate poverty, so it had programmes that they want to run, or they ran in community should contribute in alleviating poverty.

**Interviewer:** Alright, Ee how do they go about

**Respondent A:** Normally for a short period that we had with them together with the Technikon they taught us the leadership, at the same time they gave us some assignment to go and find out from the community. What are their needs or

what do they plan about their community. And it is that the community wants to do or we can do to alleviate poverty in our community. Normally most of the time they would give us some assignment to go and execute in our community, and come back to the classroom and there they capacitate you the leadership, on how to go about dealing with the community.

**Interviewer:** Oe, ee what is their approach to poverty alleviation

**Respondent A:** Their approach is based on establishing small groups and empowering them so that those groups can sustain themselves. Normally they call that they want to establish small industries that will work from that particular area with other groups in other areas, so that at the end of the day they can have a bigger group, where if they have something that they could do, they can be able to meet the target that is in the, for example if we talk about sewing. In sewing they will establish groups of sewing from one region to other regions, so that where they go about in a to deal with programmes on the community internationally then they can have a tender and they can be able to reach the requirements of that tender because if they want per day 6 000, then they will go from one group to the other group. Give them task to do such to meet the target that is the administrative

**Respondent B:** Mm I think that because one way of approaching poverty is to the reckon community and people won't just follow us, who want just to do what they think is right for the community, but who will go to the community and ask them what do they need and implement those needs unlike doing what you think is right for the community.

**Interviewer:** Ok ee so in other words the community driven approach. Ok you wanted to say something.

**Respondent C:** Yes, in an instance that means to engage the community itself, and to empower itself and not only just sit there and look at things happen so that's how, here I think the influence came about in helping the community in our area.

**Interviewer:** Ee the next question. In your opinion how did Coltapia benefit your community kapo do you think transailor or business how did you benefit.

**Respondent B:** Specifically I will focus on the dealers that, on the course of call a propratiers ee, most of the people can now stand in public and still, because of that course and we a no longer afraid of anything we a capable of bringing up change in Evaton West, although projects we didn't have projects in Evaton West.

**Respondent A:** And just to add on that Coltapia ya, we did a lot in volunteer the only thing is that we never see the change so we never reach our main objective, and I think there that's how I see failure because they never reach their objective that we all hope for it.

**Interviewer:** Ee Ok

**Respondent C:** And it did unblock the minds of those who think they cannot do anything for themselves. They did saw that the reason for them to go out there and see what is it that they can do for themselves in empowering their community and themselves.

**Interviewer:** Ok ee let's say it went up to the end, what do you think is worth in the benefit.

**Respondent A:** We are going to our areas in the sense that the locking time that we spend at the Technikon with Coltapia it had a lot of impact to us, especially the leaders hip which was attending to that institution and then we were so impressed, that the others they even wanted buying other leadership books and we had this thing of a (what do we call that thing) Ok. I will come back to that question. There's some words the word that I want specifically.

**Interviewer:** Ok



**Respondent A:** That describes the calibre of a person that is went to assist the course.

**Respondent B:** And I think It's good again, because what we had from that course, we transfer it to other people. We share with other people who could'nt manage to attend the course. It is not something that we can keep to ourselves.

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent C:** And it did benefit our organization. As we can see it is the one who is the most effective especially in the Vaal Triangle, because it has set an example to other NGO's to see that there is a need for them to work and deliver for their community.

**Interviewer:** Ok do you think they would have been a impact on poverty alleviation had the proper agenda accomplished.

**Respondent A:** A lot because it produced movers and sinkers.

**Respondent B:** And since we had different groups, all of us we are going to specialize in different things.

**Interviewer:** Ok ee which way, for example?

**Respondent B:** Gardens, Decorations

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent C:** And manager

**Interviewer:** Ok, An the next question, in your opinion, what are the short comings of Coltapia and how can they be overcome? Ke eng se le nahanang ne se ka lokiswa in Coltapia?

**Respondent A:** The shortcomings are that when they are teaching, they don't give us materials. Their information is not jotted down so that we can be able to read it by ourselves and do something about that. That is their shortcoming and secondly, their shortcoming was that they mainly concentrated on their business only. I would simply say that in a sense that, by the time when they fail to get their money, they stopped the course and we the people who were so inspired and coming from the poor community, we are just being dropped there.

**Respondent B:** To add on what Bias just said I think it was a question of business, because when they bring people should start by saying they are coming to observe, and at the end they end up working together, so we don't understand what is going on, as if they say there is a lot of money you can come and add something in the community.

**Interviewer:** Ok, how can this thing be overcome

**Respondent A:** By approaching them and tell them about their weak points, because thing they take the are looking un to poverty alleviation/ alleviate poverty in the community. What happened there is still going to happen in other areas so it is better to approach them and tell them about their programmes.

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent B:** And the position of the people who did it must be clear.

**Interviewer:** Ee Meisie the point about visitors you mean people who come in as if they are observers?

**Respondent B:** Ya that is started as an observer.

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent B:** At the end I didn't understand his position, and I think there is going to be the same in Veronica if she didn't say she had a lot of work to do.

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent B:** And I think that is the question of colour again.

**Interviewer:** Ok the programme itself apart from this problem, is it a good programme, would it have worked?

**Interviewees:** Yes

**Interviewer:** If this problem could have been sorted out the programme would work?

**Interviewees:** Ya

**Interviewer:** How do you think the Technikon should be involved in this problem?

**Respondent A:** Ah, I think the Technikon was involved initially by sponsoring the part of that programme but at the same time a, by meaning the other part failing to contribute more like the municipality, because the Technikon was supposed to hand in the document to the municipality probably they should have looked for other sponsors to sponsor the course so that we can finish it.

**Respondent B:** And we still need the value because it's a learning environment and can feel that you are studying.

**Respondent C:** An they should have made sure that they monitor that course until it come to an end.

**Interviewer:** Ok you mean they should have been there to see what is going on.

**Respondent C:** Yes

**Interviewer:** Ok Ah next question was or is the Eindhoven municipality involvement in Evaton West community, how is the Eindhoven being involved in Evaton West community? Now all of you now can answer because all of you are interviewed.

**Respondent D:** Ya no a involvement ya Eindhoven ka hara Evaton West, Eindhoven e bapala a big role because haholo-holo, e tlile ka idea le ho tlo empower batho ba Evaton West, hore bas eke ba ithola ba nahana hore ke, the community e ke se kgone ho iketsetsa niks. Like ha ba hathwe ba dula mo di two rooms because end of the day ba tshwanetse ba tsebe hore na bona ba ka tla ka di projects tse ka reng hosane le ha Eindhoven ele siyo ka hara this area, kappa ka mora dilemo tseo e tlabeng e le siyo ho ba thusa, hobane e ya ba trainer, e ya ba kopanya, e ba bontsha hore bophelo ba boan e bo tsamaisa jwang, because e ruta motho hore a ka nna, hore a itjhehele fish, e sen hore all the time a dule a ntse a fuwa fish, ke tseo Eindhoven e tlileng ka yona ka kwano ka hara Evaton West, because e startile this groups tsena tseo e naleng tsona mona ka hara Evaton West, like LED groups, environment and cleaning, health and then HIV and AIDS and then sports and then safety, e startile le empower tse ka reng old age and then le ya di-creche, le yak e nahana ke tsona di groups tseo, hore batho ba Evaton West ba kopane ba kgone ho ba tseba, ba ka nne ba kgona hore ho be ne le something eo ba etsang, le ha e entse ele bona feela, because discourse tseo ba di tholang di bafa idea yah ore ha ba kopane bona ka bona self ba etse hore ba nahane. Bat le ba fihlella mosebetsi e itseng. E tle be ere le government ha a fihla wa mo this country mo South Africa o fumane ele hore batho ba mona ho nale something eo ba e etsang ka area eo ba dulang ho yona.

**Interviewer:** Ee project tse di groups tse difongwe ke bo-mang.

**Respondent D:** Di groups tsee di fonngwe ke bona

**Interviewer:** Ok ene di ranwa ke mang? Dia irana?

**Respondent D:** Di groups tseno di a irana tsona ka bo tsona, mara di irana ka tlasa lepheyo la Eindhoven.

**Respondent A:** Yak e hore di a irana bo tsona ho na le dico-ordinator.

**Respondent D:** Co-ordinator ya

**Respondent D:** E dinkang le bona ya

**Respondent A:** In a sense that di ranwa, you look unto provincial programmes tsa government on all aspects tse mentioned kaofela.

**Interviewer:** Co-ordinator ke motho wa hokae?

**Interviewees:** Ke motho wa mono

**Interviewer:** Ke motho wa mona

**Interviewees:** Ya

**Respondent D:** O tswa ka hara NGO ya Evaton West Community Development Forum co-ordinator.

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent B:** Ke vise

**Respondent D:** Ke vise

**Interviewer:** Alright anything else eo le ka e etsang ka Eindhoven.

**Respondent A:** So normally Eindhoven, its involvement is also empowering our municipality in a sense that its area as it is Evaton West, it's not made mostly in a budget of the municipality so municipality doesn't have capacity to render

service. In this area that is something inspiring Eindhoven to can say they will help the community of this area to can be able to do something about, the services. When I am talking about services, I am talking about waste removal; health issues anything, those issues that are mentioned by Jacob, because if you can see this area you can see only houses in this area. There are no community facilities, so they came on that note. They will empower us, and they also capacitate the municipality because their saying is that they empowering our municipality and governing the local municipality.

**Respondent B:** People who are in the group they are also expected to grow and give other people a chance. It is not only people who are still in a group who benefit in a project. They must grow and give other people a chance, so it is going to be a community thing, it won't have a lot to do with people who will benefit from the project.

**Respondent C:** And is bringing down the government down to the community, to that they should link, have a relationship a working relationship.

**Interviewer:** So you mean they got to bring people into the government or the community.

**Interviewee:** Ya

**Interviewer:** Government including the people

**Interviewee:** Ya

**Respondent A:** In a sense that all the communities that are formed, they have people who are from the municipality and communities. Sitting down together planning and ensuring that what is being planned differently put there by them together.

**Interviewer:** Ok now that's interesting, tell me di-groups tsena how are they constituted?

**Respondent A:** Mainly those groups they are formed by people from this community.

**Interviewer:** So it's the community

**Respondent A:** The officials from the municipality who are being deployed to work with those groups, they meet once in a week as individual groups.

**Interviewer:** Are there any specialists in the groups, say for health diseases, nurses or doctors

**Interviewees:** Yes

**Respondent A:** Those are the officials receible for programmes with by cocas were community groups. That's on the health group we have a see some form Emma from our neighbouring and Doctor Stephen was there as well.

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent A:** And even the sustainment that was going to take place in that group.

**Interviewer:** Meisie o thini

**Respondent B:** A kere ne ke nahana except from my group wa bo n eke tsheha nthwe bjalo, ko group ya ka ha re na nthwe clean.

**Interviewer:** Ya

**Respondent B:** Voluntary Economic development.

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent D:** An another thing eo re e ratang ka hara issue ya bona dispecialists, di hloakang ka hara ward committee ya bona. E nka karolo ka hare dicommunity tse ding ke hore department e nngwe le e nngwe e teng ya ward committee, e nka part moo ka hara digroups tseo. Ward committee hona le motho ya headang health o teng ka hara group yeo ya health. Motho ya headang ntho e environment of teng ka hara kaofela digroups tseo di ya representiwa.

**Interviewer:** Ok so digroups tsee din ale matlo a makae? Ha o etsa dintlo.

**Respondent A:** A maholo because obviously they could treat about the community, and the municipality. And the people who are there on those groups are ordinary people.

**Interviewer:** Ok, and then all this big institutions.

**Respondent A:** Yes

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent A:** They are empowered to take those teams as they consult to the entire community for example if they have to plant trees. They go and do a small research to ask people do they want trees, where and what kind of trees, so that means they do a prior consultation with the community.

**Interviewer:** Ok is there a lot of support in the community for the Eindhoven.

**Interviewees:** Ya

**Respondent A:** More than a lot.

**Interviewer:** Alright benefits have been raised by the community from this involvement with Eindhoven.



**Respondent A:** What?

**Interviewer:** Benefits tse tlileng ka baka la involvement ya lona le Eindhoven. Mona re ka bua ka diproject mohlomong tse seng di etsahetse, all those.

**Respondent A:** The benefits are that I'm sorry can I give someone at least.

**Interviewer:** Ha o so bua, ene o ka pele ke shebile wena

**Respondent E:** Community e ya , kore ba ho na le di eish Sotho sa ka.

**Interviewer:** Bua seshangane or Afrikaans

**Respondent E:** Ha e sale, re etsa diproject tse di etsang tse hodisang community le especially like hence, ke bua ka hara digroups. Ho na le project e re e etsan ya kitchen makes you clean, so ne re etsa bo diposter mo re di plakang teng. Batho ba kgone ho tseba ka tsatsi le itseng re tlo etsa eng. And then ha community e re re kopane le bona be re ba hlaloesetsa, re ba approacha re etsa so le so, he ba undestander like, ba ban makgowa a mangata ha ba ba tsebe but pele re ne re starta re etsa diprojecteng tsa rona. Ba kgona ho tswa motho a sa tshabe ho bua jwalo, a kgona ho yak o cliniking re tjeke le mafu ana ba nang le ona, and the ba re supporter haholo. Le ha ho tlile batho ba Eindhoven, ba shower support ya bona like the time environment nurse e tlile campaigning community. E ne e le teng ho na moo di re supporter haholo.

**Respondent C:** And in sports an event like June 16 tse re assistang ka ho etsa, ka ho tlisa di price tse e le ho reng, well give out to the community in price giving.

**Respondent A:** In addition to that, like as I said we work according to calendar of our government. Again in days like About week they manage to contribute about eight hundred and twenty five trees that are already been planted there, and they also donated about three thousand trees that are to be planted here. On top of all trees that we got from the Technikon, so their impact is so much

contributing because they community only proposed, what they think is needed and when both functions, we can find the return back.

**Interviewer:** Ok so the process that the community proposes.

**Respondent A:** Ya

**Interviewer:** What it needs?

**Respondent A:** What it needs?

**Interviewer:** O k n o w t h i s c o m e s f r o m t h e g r o u p s . T h e g r o u p s w o u l d d o t h e c o n s u l t a t i o n w i t h t h e c o m m u n i t y .

**Interviewees:** Ya

**Interviewer:** Alright, and then after the community agrees on what it needs then you would act by where you can, and for the rest, do the groups have other sources of funding and staff.

**Respondent A:** No we don't have any source of funding, because our municipality stopped bank cards. Everything that is being done from the Eindhoven. We are holding functions to be financially embarrassed.

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent A:** So the other way I would see is that at the same stage with local team, we also come to the Technikon and I guess we met with the department of community service industry irientator, to see if what time actually they can help locally here to empower people. That's the last time we shared when they said that together in partnership with the Eindhoven municipality.

**Interviewer:** Ok, but do people understand Eindhoven could be giving them something or could be empowering them to do things on their own. What is their understanding.

**Respondent A:** Initially they didn't understand they thought that the Eindhoven are just donors, who are coming with lots of money. To can just give to anybody whether you take it or do wonders, but later they realized that its not that way Eindhoven is here to try and empower people, educae them give them most education because they don't fund things like buildings int eh Tech. They mainly concerntrate on spending and funding small projects that would bring awareness to the community, so that they made people aware what is their role here, because they are so transparent that we managed to share their presence here with people from different political organizations, church groups, NGO's to tell them why they are here and what are they doing so that merely show motivate and show people what is their involvement here.

**Interviewer:** Ok so that's what they are understanding now that it's about empowerment.

**Interviewees:** Yes

**Interviewer:** Ok next question. In your opinion what are the short comings of this involvement and how can it be overcome? Ha re sheba ntho ya Eindhoven, di short comings tsa yona ke tse feng? Moo e le hore ho ka ba le improvement ka ntho tse etsahalang.

**Respondent A:** The shortcomings that we are better to be improved, mostly are on the side of our municipality. In terms of making the other constitutions including the municipality to understand especially the counsellors to understand how this things work and also to be committed in this churning, because mostly is the community that shows much commitment than the municipality, hence the Technikon is based on municipal to municipality and NGO to NGO's, but on the sudden they still lack the way of making this thing and appreciating it.

**Respondent C:** And one more thing is that they just give us a go ahead, because we are still lacking facilities for an example, multipurpose center whereby our community would engage itself in everyday activities so we don't not that is one other thing that we would still lack in a future to come because we won't have those substations we are going to use.

**Interviewer:** Who should provide them systems NYP purpose community centre?

**Respondent C:** I should think it's our local municipality

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent C:** Ya, so in doing that I think the municipality from Eindhoven is altering our own government at issues engaged to hold the resources at our community because they have made an awareness in our community, so as to stand on its own.

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent A:** In addition to that what are we saying on the municipality. There should be improvements when coming to the programmes that our national government have like in terms of multi-purpose centres, in terms of business centres community halls, all those staffs. The municipality department that is responsible for that they should't make applications, so the relevant department like public works or to the premiers office in the provincial government so that they can be able to buy the product we got here, so that the people who are from the Eindhoven can just come and find the other parts, because they come as partners. But so we don't find some start saying that were expected those reports to give d epartments. Y ou c an a ccess the v aluable r esources t hat a re here, and then you will have a bit of information and partner, so that you could have a complete thing.

**Respondent B:** Our grievances are mostly considered in any offence that being followed.

**Interviewer:** Ok, how can these be overcome?

**Respondent A:** In order to overcome this thing we just need more commitment on the side of the municipality although much has been done. But the nation has been giving up on the municipality, like for example. There are things that have been done in the province and people who are in the department they are educating to such things and they are also being put down say how is their commitment. They only agree when the every person is here and here or when they are there Eindhoven when they come back home they start concentrating on mostly on their areas, where they come from of which they from the areas of where they got education.

**Respondent B:** And again they seem to be they seem to differentiate between us and them. They refer to us as community they are not part of us if they were part of us they were going to feel what feel down here and referring to us, as the community and them being different. I don't know what.

**Respondent C:** And they've been too of politics not bringing down the delivery.

**Interviewer:** Ok so lack of delivery but that point, I like that point. You are saying this is us and them mentality where the counselors don't always see themselves like others, the community.

**Interviewees:** Like others

**Interviewer:** Alright, lack of delivery

**Respondent C:** Lack of delivery

**Interviewer:** So you're saying promise are made

**Respondent C:** They promised us, but they never keep their promises

**Respondent E:** Even those that we elect

**Interviewer:** Ok, promised to buy us a car but never deliver, then Ok how much community participation happened during this initiating? Do you think the community participates a lot. I mean do just these groups or the office, do the community at large also participates improving.

**Respondent D:** Ya community e ya participator a lot like last ha re ne re tswile ka this thing ya environment ba ne etseha grand mo officing ya bona, le ha departemente ya municipality e nee le teng community e ne e tswile ka bongata, because re ile ra etsa invitation almost about tsa batho ba fifty, mare e la re at the end of the day re ile re fumana community e nale a lmost batho ba bang, more than three hundred. Ban eng ba tlile contracting le campaigning ena, and then secondly saeteng ya community mo youthing always ha re entse tournament tsa di sports. Re fumana hore youth e participator on that ntho tseo ka bongata bo makatsang because ele letsatsi la bona, mm eke ho re participate. Thirdly last ne re entse this thing ya bana ba le bangata ka mokgwa o makatsang mono, and then ba fumana di present, whatever ntho tse tshwanang le tseo. Hoo re boning hore all departments tse nang le tsona di ya participator on behalf of the community, le di old age, le bona ba participator haholo mo di activities tse re batlang hore bat lo di kenela. Hoba re ba kenyeditse role ya community e re fumanang hore no, ntho tse kang tse re di etsang mona ba di amohela haholo from the Eindhoven and ntho ena e re leng ho yona.

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent D:** Ya

**Interviewer:** O no o batla ho bua?

**Respondent E:** A-a ha ke bue

**Interviewer:** Ok o thotse

**Respondent F:** In addition ho e buuwang ke chief ne, eitse ma Russia a na le teng ne, re bona batjha haholoholo ba kgutlie crimeng wa bona, then batjha ke batho ba e leng ho ba nkile part ho tsona ho ntho tsena tsa digroup tse teng, especially ho health le ho environment wa bona. So batjha ba participator haholo le community e nkile bohato.

**Interviewer:** Actually nka nna ka seke ka re o behelle pelo yaka ka ntle.

**Interviewees:** No

**Respondent C:** In addition to that I can say we've bring some co-students in the community because also deductions they can work around here in Evaton West without any fear of being hijacked, or doing what so ever. So that I think is an achievement.

**Respondent A:** They work with their stupidity, they just work without being encouraged and they interact with anybody at anywhere to ask how are you doing? How is life? So they should be together.

**Interviewer:** Ok do you personally prefer that authorities decide what the community needs, and provide it or do you prefer that the community itself decide what it needs. And decide how to deal with their different needs?

**Respondent C:** I think the community will decide for itself.

**Interviewer:** Why

**Respondent C:** Because they are ones who can identify where the problem is, and in order for the problem to be rectified. It is the community who'll have to take responsibility of its own.

**Respondent A:** Ownership is very important

**Respondent B:** In most cases when the authorities decide for the community, they end up having like for instance dibuilding tse sa tlo hirwang ke community its waste of money.

**Interviewer:** Ok so what other things, Ok le dumela jwalo kaofela kappa hona le batho ba nang le di differences

**Interviwees:** Ya, re dumela jwalo

**Interviewer:** Why?

**Respondent G:** No because as re se re tjholo hore if the community e sa decide for bona ka bo bona diauthorities always di dula di etsa dintho tse e leng hore, ha re kgone ho ban a le participation. As the community ho tsona, since ho na le this thing yah ore community and it's the authority. Usually we are owned by the community.

**Respondent D:** Ho edela hape moo ke hore why ho tshwanetse community e decide kapa e nke karolo haholo because nako e leng hore ha dintho di etsahala, because community e tshwanetse e be yona security se tlo ba securing ka property, hobane ba tlabe ba ba tseba hore ke nthwe e leng hore rona re le community re decidileng, because if ha o ka community e ka bona feela se re nka palo re e hloma mane unknown. Hore na palo eo e tlo etsang e tlo sebetsang hosane re tlo fumana hore community eo ba e pota ka thoko kapa ba fihla ba entsha palo eo ba tsamaya ka yona. Hobane ha ba tsebe hore na e bolelang taba ya palo eo.

**Respondent B:** Le di authorities bat la be bare jwetsa hore ba etsa hostel, empa ba ntse ba tseba hore ha re batle hostel mona.

**Respondent D:** Re batla di hotel





motho a wetseng e re ha a mo tlohela a ba wela hape fatshe a robala. That's why di volunteers di tsamaellana le nthwe ho thweng ke moketa ho tsoswa o itekang.

**Respondent C:** And what is interesting about Evaton West the leaders themselves they lead by example, they don't just say do this. They are the ones who are moving on the forth again of the delivery of the thing. So that is why most of us infact most of the leaders they are growing in thought for the community.

**Interviewer:** So the community is motivated

**Interviewees:** Ya, it's motivated

**Interviewer:** Now ke tjhentjha track ha nyane, In your opinion what is poverty? And when do you think people are poor?

**Respondent A:** I think when people are poor is when they can't...

**Respondent C:** Is when they don't think of possibilities, because if you can see they don't think of the possibilities that you can see as a person. That's when you become poor, but if you of thing on your own that I must. I should start something and need an invite from people around you, and that way you, ll get direction and that's how you move forward.

**Respondent A:** So it's very brought this thing of poverty like as they put it, and also has to do with something to do with rand as well.

**Interviewer:** With?

**Respondent A:** With Rand, Ranta

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent A:** Ya in a sense that, we think people are poor, that you find one family with about a number of about seven maintained ne.

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent A:** And they are depending on the grants lets say one person on that family that comes once in a month, and when they eat when they get people bay a ja. You find that ba ja dijo tse ka etsang four rand ka letsatsi.

**Respondent D:** Ee hobane ha o re o poor, ke hore o destroya motho yono le ho feta, because once o bolela hore of poor, o tshwanetse hore wena o kgone ho thola because mo democracying, re batjha mo democracying e ne ha o re motho of poor. Ke hore of mo bolaya maikutlo hore a nahane hore of poor. Ho na le ntho e re ka reng mo bophelong, like ha ne ba tjho ke re, ho na le hore o rute motho ho ja tlhapi, o ka mpa wa mo ruta ho e tjeha, and then o tlosa kelello yah ore o poor, kappa ke bona bofuma moo kelellong because re dutse dilemo tse telele haholo ka hara this country. Re feptjwa re se na understanding yah ore re le rona ka hara country, re ka nna ra bapala karolo yah ore re ithole. Ho na le dintlha kapa kelello e re ka tlang ka yona hore re participate on this country. That's why ho thwe this country ke democracy because e batla hore motho o mong le o mong a tle ka ho developer countrying ena, jwale ha ke dumellane le haholo, because ho tswana le ha o kare rona mona, nako e nngwe ho thwe re batho ba tshwanang le ho thwe teng the poor and the poorest, ke tlhapa ho rona, Ke tlhapa ho rona nthwena. Ha ke le rate lentswe leno, because batho ba tswanang le rona, re batla di workshops that is why re qalang ka di training tsena tse ka hara Evaton West, because re batla ho itokisa hore re dule mona hobane government o re file di shelter tsa hore, re na le marulelo. Re na le dijarete ka hara dijarete tsa rona re ka nna ra ithola re jala di vegetables, tse di ka nna tsa hore re robale re jele, like ha ba ntse ba re ruta hore na meroho e na le bophelo bo bottle. Ntho e neng re di etsa bohoholong ba rona ko mahaeng. ka ntle re ne re dula dipolasing re dula bo kaekae mara mo dijareteng mona ho ne ho lenngwe meroho ntho tse kaofela, le bo masimong ho lenngwe bo mahapu bo mekopu ntho tseo kaofela and then ne re di qeta ntho tseno, re ne re sa feptjwe ko dipolasing ne re iphepa hobane ka kgwedi mme wa hao le nkgono wa hao

kapa ntatemoholo wa hao one a fumana mokotla wa phoofo le di beans ka mora ha ho qetwa ho etsa separation jwale mona batho ban a le dijarete. Ba na le mobunyana o ba ka o sebedisang and then ba na le shelter, ban a le metsi wa utlwisisa, jwale ke nahana hore ba batla hore ba fumane the training e ne ntseng re bua ka yona. Hona jwale tjena ha ho na bofuma mo bathing ba rona. The only thing ba batla training le ho hlokomelwa hore now is the time, yah ore motho a itshwarele ka matsoho a hae, a inahanele ka kelello ya hae.

**Interviewer:** Ok ba bang ba ka reng?

**Respondent E:** Nna ho ya ka nna ke bona ho sen bofuma especially ho motho ya phetseng hantle, ntle le motho eo e leng hore ke motho ya sa pheleng hantle hobane mmuso o a kgona ho re o ka mo thusa ka tse ding tsa dintho, tse etsang hore mohlomong a thole tjhelete ya grant kappa a etse eng. Mara motho a nang le kelello a ka kgona ho sebedisa kelello ya hae a etse recycling a nke mathini mona a kopanye le bo diciment ke part e nngwe yah ore motho a iempoware bo yena, kapa motho a nahane hore a be le batjha ba kopaneng. Re etse di contribution tsa bo closed co-operation then re kgone ho iketsetsa mesebetsi for rona le batjha ba bang. Ha ke nahane poverty e le ntho e leng hore re ke e etsa nthwe serious ha kalo re le batho.

**Respondent A:** The only important thing is to have access to the information and to have resources available, so that we can empower ourselves and also be empowered and be able to come up with something to address this problem of unemployment the so called poverty.

**Respondent C:** And our leaders they are dealers, so if they start preaching that people are poor, then they will know that the very same people of which tomorrow will be the official leaders.

**Respondent B:** The people who don't have information they are the one's who will be very poor although some people feel good about it, and it's a question of education and then our backgrounds they contribute a lot mo maphelong a rona kajeno. I've seen people who eat everyday, but because they lack information

about their surroundings where they can obtain. I mean things that they need on daily basis, then they end up being poor. Ha ba kgone ho engager ntho tse ban a le tsona, and they are not even aware hore di teng ntho tseo and that is poverty.

**Respondent D:** Wa tseba nna n eke nahana hore lentswe lena la poverty, ne re le poor nakong ya mmuso wa apartheid hobane ne re le poor hore re inahanele. Now today re ka se sebedise lentswe leo because re mo democracing ke rona re tswanetseng re nahane and you can't hore of bites lebitso la hore o ntse o le poor, because o lo affectuwa ke yena a poor, because a poor minded hore o ka etsa bokamoso mo kelellong. And now ha e sale nako ya apartheid ho thwe ho na le motho ya o hatelletseng ho sebedisa that word, ya hore of poor because lentswe la poor le tswa mmusong wa kgale wa apartheid, and hona jwale tjena. I don't know if ho na le motho ya poor minded, not hore of poor o le poor ke poor-minded, not hore o poor o le o tlohe o sa robale o jele, but o poor-minded hore o ka hloleha hore o inahanele.

**Respondent A:** Ya, but that's why we're saying people are poor because even if you don't know about the information and you don't access to other things, then you are poor because you can be poor spiritually you ca be poor physically, you can be poor with many other mentally and other wise as well as you are not empowered with education or you are not empowered with information. I'm not saying information in a sense that you can have access to the available resources from our government for example if I'm saying I'm employed, department of labour is there, If I have problems I don't know that labour is there then I'm poor because I don't have that information if we don't have like for example we don't have access to internet we won't know about the available resources that are here in our country. We cant even have an access to computer, so h at we can be able to work on other things so that d efinition of poverty is very broad, in sense that you have to accept that as long as we are not having that necessary education or we are not having that information about available resources. It is then that we usually tell you that you are poor, poverty is there.

**Interviewer:** Alright, now let's talk the situation of a family of two parents and three children, which is a family of five. How much do you think that this family must earn per month. Just make estimate.

**Respondent A:** An no other income, that way.

**Interviewer:** Ya, where we say this is how much he must earn to make arrangements, to meet their basic needs, food for example. How much do you think they must earn?

**Respondent A:** N ot more t han two thousand five hundred (R2500) when we combine both the salaries of the parents, both parents.

**Interviewer:** The household income, ya

**Respondent A:** Ya it should not be less than two thousand five.

**Interviewer:** It is interesting, let us just go from person to person and let's hear, what you have to say. He said two five.

**Respondent A:** Ya not less that two five

**Interviewer:** I just wan't the minimum

**Respondent A:** Ya the minimum is two five

**Interviewer:** The minimum they can use to buy what they need

**Respondent A:** Ya, two point five, looking at the costs of living and the costs of transport

**Interviewer:** And looking at after deduction, the take home pay, that we need per month to survive. You think two five will be fine. Ok

**Respondent B:** I'm saying four thousand, looking at the area that we are in. How much does it cost to cover the Evaton West expenses thinking of the things that we don't have in Evaton West. We need to go to town for other services that we don't have like we could only have one family. If you, we to spend for transport and three kids and yourself, and the husband you'll be spending too much.

**Respondent C:** Going through the needs of individual is really tough especially, they are five I should think three and a half should be enough.

**Interviewer:** Three thousand five hundred

**Respondent C:** Ya

**Interviewer:** Ok, what to do you think?

**Respondent E:** Ya, le nna ke nahana jwalo Three thousand e right.

**Respondent G:** Noh, I think three thousand

**Interviewer:** Three thousand

**Respondent G:** Ya

**Interviewer:** Ok what do you think?

**Respondent F:** Three thousand five hobane ba bang ba palama ha bedi.

**Respondent D:** Hey, nna kore ha ka understanda hantle potso, hore re ke tsebe tjhelete ho ya the way nka estimating, hore o ka e fumana from the, kore a ka phelang ka yona a sebetsa kapa e be ya ba e fumanang, kapa ya ka phelang ka yona feela e be e le hore ha a sebetse.

**Interviewer:** Ha re re ho sebetsa maybe batho ba babedi ka mo ntlong. Combine income ya bona. Lelapa le le kalo le ka nahana ka hore bat hole tjhelete e kae nahana ka hore ba hloka bo kae?

**Respondent D:** Four thousand five

**Interviewer:** Hore ba tswellele, you think four thousand ho na le batho ba family e kalo ba tswelang pele ba na le four hundred ranta feela. O ipotsa hore ba kgona jwang, so ha se ha kaalo hore tjhelete ho batho bao.

**Respondent F:** It all depends hore oo e spenda jwang

**Interviewer:** Wa bona wena o tla be o etsa bo moriri, bo mme ba batla tjhelete e hodimo because o sa nahanne hore eish, tshwanetse ke ye salon hona moo.

**Respondent B:** Ke bona batho ba bolawang ke fashion. Nna ke tla ka morao mara bona ba ka ba tswanetse ba be le dintlo tse ban eng di ya kgotsofatsa.

**Interviewer:** That's why you say.

**Respondent B:** Four thousand.

**Interviewer:** E re mohlang o no nahanne ka koloi, e ne koloi e etsa bokae, Ok. How do you think poverty can be evaluated in Evaton West? If re re ke acceptor ntho e ntate Mhlambi a buwang mara batho ba ba sa kgoneng ba ka thuseha jwang? Re ka fedisa bofuma jwang?

**Respondent B:** Education

**Interviewer:** You think education, ha re through the whole lot tackle that question. Ok you think educating

**Respondent C:** The mind set



**Interviewer:** You're saying change the mind set.

**Respondent E:** Ke re Education le nna.

**Interviewer:** Alright

**Respondent D:** Le nna ntse ke dumellana le nthwe ya Education

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent F:** Thuto eo o e thotseng o le motho, o le an individual. O e fitisetsa ho motho o mong le yena a tlo kgona ho e fitisetsa ho o mong le twelleng pele.

**Interviewer:** Ok we are going to each one

**Respondent G:** It is not everyone a ka kgonang ho kena sekolo in Evatong West, batho ba bangata ba hloka different things like ho sebetsa ka matsoho.

**Interviewer:** Ok, so o na le di skills

**Respondent A:** And also to have the centre which will help the community with access to the information that is available

**Interviewer:** E re ke botse potso ha nyane feela. Education ye, batho ba nang le education e, how do you think this people can help to fight poverty.

**Respondent D:** Ya, education ke hore, e ho education or ha se hore ho rutwa ke ho ya sekolong feela. Ha se ho ya sekolong feela hore of tshwanetse hore o ka phela, because o ka nna ruta motho like ho na jwale tjena. Mona o ruta motho hore ha o jala, o ka nna wa ruta motho ho lokisa tsela, o ka nna wa ruta motho ko re ho na le dintho tse ngata tse batlang hore motho a ka ithuta tsona, tse batho ba dutseng ka tsona feela. Tseo ba believing hore no, nna ha ken a hona, nna ha ke na bophelao. Ha ke kgone ho ja ka tlung mara a tshwere ke

hore, a ka iphedisa ka tlung, ke hore motho ono ha o tla ho yena o bua le yena, ke hore oa mo hlabolla e bile wa mo ruta hore no bona, bona ho nka pipe ho nwesetsa, ho nka peo ho e jala fatshe ho nka trofelo ho haha ke ho ruta hore motho eo hore ha o morutile ntho eo o tla kgona hore ha a tsamaya mona ha a fihla mona, hore ba a nka spitforoko le haraka, ho sebetsa ke ho educator ho o ruta hore a kgone hore a iphedise, hore no poverty eno e ne alleviation e kgone hore e fele mona ho yena.

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent F:** Taba ya bo dijalo, oa kgona ho direkisa, then o kgone income e kgone ho iphedisa ka yona.

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Ma Likhetho:** An then hao hloke hore o reke di vegetables hobane o se ntse o na le tsona

**Interviewer:** Ok, question ya MaLikhetho o bolela jwang?

**Respondent C:** If people they can, you know free their mind they will be able to think of possibilities. They can be able to think that now is the time that I use, the resources that I have and go out there and do something about them.

**Respondent B:** And to add on that I think again that, people should stop blaming apartheid the other time that they spend, and do something about their lives because we are now free and it seems as if they are not aware.

**Respondent A:** Then if the dependence syndrome is what we mainly that what we have to give it from the people. People have this thing of thing somebody will come and do something for myself for example if I have to throw the paper down I am expecting the government to come and collect that paper. Hence, I'm not saying, we government yourself and we are the government is the people by the look by people all those institution. So people have to understand that, there is

one who should bring change. The one who come there are free people; they will take responsibilities every thing is happening to communities, so that's what David is saying.

**Interviewer:** Free their mind

**Respondent A:** Ya because if you can, you can during the apartheid days we were fighting another battle, and even today when we were governing things that things should happen like they did happen in that time we where making things happen.

**Respondent F:** Le hore ba, ba tlohele ho sheba di qualifications tseo ba nang le tsona, like re a tseba hore motho o bare yena o tswa University o na le BA, MA but ha ho kgethwa batho ba yo sebetsang matlakala mane, a bare yena ha a yela ntho eno sekolong. So motho ke hore a bule kelello feela, hore o batla mosebetsi a phedise then a nke mosebetsi o hlahileng feela from there o tla bona feela hore o ya kae moo.

**Respondent D:** Haholoholo hape ho ntho ya eduation, ke nahana hore now is the time ya hore batho ba bo rona, ba tshwanetse ba nahane culture ya bona. E ne e na le something e ka ba etsang hore no, ha ba iphedisa ko re ho nale dintho tse ngata tseo re ileng re dilahla cultureng ya rona. Tseo re neng re phela ka tsona kgale-kgale. Ha ba ka kgutlela hape haholo sethong , and then ba sheba hore na ho nale dintho tse feng tse lahlehileng, tseo rona re neng re phela ka tsona, and then tseo e leng ka sheno lena ha dile siko be re re no, ha re ke re se kgone ho phela.

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent D:** Re ne re etsa motoho ko hae, then bana ba neb a kgone hoja, like today se re batla ho phela renwa tee, and then pele nkgono o ne a, bo diplokwane kore ntho tse tshwanang le tseo kore batho ba ka nna ba rutwa ka ntho tseo tse ngata, hore no dijo tse ngata o ka nna wa iketsetsa tsona ka ko tlung. Motoho ha o ritetse o o behile mane o kwahetse, today re na le difridge ha

o kentse ka mane everyday bana ha ba tsoha ba ka nna ba nwa motoho, ba ya sekolong, ko re rather than hore o dule o ntse of fura ngwana metsi everyday e leng tee. O a utlwisisa kapa of dula o mo fura borotho, ke hore o a ba educator hore no batho ba tsebe no re ka fetsa ntho ena jwang. Le ka phetoho dintho tsena di ka nna tsa feela.

**Respondent G:** Ha re shebang ho batho ba sebetsang ka matsoho. I think batho bao those who are qualified hore they should also work together, because working as an individual they end up not doing any work.

**Interviewer:** Mmh

**Respondent G:** Because whoever is also doing something on that, that are near somewhere.

**Interviewer:** Ok

**Respondent D:** Ha ba ka tlohella pride, le boikgomoso then ke o na mantswe ao Jeff a buang, and then batswa mo priding, ko re ntho e no e costwa keng. Re na le pride too much le boikgokgomoso too much, that is why re sa batleng hore always re e tse dintho together, ke nahana hore ha ke di etsa ke le mong ke tla succeeda, and then ke hona moo ke ipakelang mathata teng.

**Interviewer:** Alright in other words you are saying the idea is difficult?

**Interviewees:** Ya

**Interviewer:** Ke yona e ka thusang.